

CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS  
PROJECT MANUAL  
INCLUDING SPECIFICATIONS FOR

**SOUTH CAROLINA EDUCATION LOTTERY  
4TH FLOOR UPFIT/1333 MAIN STREET**



**COLUMBIA, SOUTH CAROLINA  
SCEL PROJECT NUMBER: Y20-N001-CB**

Prepared by:



SSOE - STEVENS & WILKINSON  
1501 MAIN STREET STE 730  
COLUMBIA, SOUTH CAROLINA 29201

**ISSUE DATE: August 6, 2021**



**DIVISION 00 - PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS**

000101.....PROJECT TITLE PAGE  
000107.....SEALS PAGE  
000115.....LIST OF DRAWING SHEETS  
002113.....INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS (AIA A701)  
.....SE-311 INVITATION FOR MINOR CONSTRUCTION QUOTES  
.....SE-331 QUOTE FORM  
.....SE-355 PERFORMANCE BOND  
.....SE-357 LABOR AND MATERIAL PAYMENT BOND  
.....SE-377 MINOR CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT  
.....SE-381 CHANGE ORDER TO MINOR CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT  
004313.....BID SECURITY FORMS (AIA A310)

**DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

012500.....SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES  
012600.....CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES  
012900.....PAYMENT PROCEDURES (AIA G702 AND G703)  
013100.....PROJECT MANAGEMENT COORDINATION  
013300.....SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES  
017700.....CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES  
017823.....OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

**DIVISION 02 – EXISTING CONDITIONS**

024119.....SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

**DIVISION 06 - WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITS**

064116.....PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS

**DIVISION 09 – FINISHES**

092216.....NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING  
092900.....GYPSUM BOARD  
095113.....ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS  
096513.....RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES  
096519.....RESILIENT TILE FLOORING  
099123.....INTERIOR PAINTING

**DIVISION 21 – FIRE PROTECTION**

21 05 17.....SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING  
21 05 18.....ESCUTCHEONS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING  
21 05 23.....GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR FIRE PROTECTION PIPING  
21 05 29.....HANGERS & SUPPORTS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION PIPING & EQUIPMENT  
21 05 48.....VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING  
AND EQUIPMENT  
21 05 53.....IDENTIFICATION FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

**DIVISION 21 – FIRE PROTECTION Cont'd**

21 13 13.....WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

**DIVISION 22 - PLUMBING**

22 05 17.....SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING  
22 05 18.....ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING  
22 05 29.....HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT  
22 05 48.....VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND  
EQUIPMENT  
22 05 53.....IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT  
22 07 19.....PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION  
22 11 16.....DOMESTIC WATER PIPING  
22 11 19.....DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES  
22 13 16.....SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING  
22 13 19.....SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES  
22 42.16.....COMMERCIAL SINKS

**DIVISION 23 - HVAC**

23 05 17.....SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING  
23 05 18.....ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING  
23 05 19.....METERS AND GAGES FOR HVAC PIPING  
23 05 23.....BALL VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING  
23 05 29.....HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT  
23 05 48.....VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR HVAC  
23 05 53.....IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT  
23 05 93.....TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC  
23 07 13.....DUCT INSULATION  
23 07 19.....HVAC PIPING INSULATION  
23 21 13.....HYDRONIC PIPING  
23 21 16.....HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES  
23 31 13.....METAL DUCTS  
23 33 00.....AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES  
23 34 23.....HVAC POWER VENTILATORS  
23 37 13.13....AIR DIFFUSERS  
23 37 13.23....REGISTERS AND GRILLES  
23 81 46.....WATER SOURCE UNITARY HEAT PUMPS

**DIVISION 26 – ELECTRICAL**

SPECIFICATIONS INCLUDED ON DRAWINGS

**APPENDIX**

FIRE SPRINKLER SYSTEM SPECIFICATION SHEET  
MECHANICAL STATEMENT OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS

DOCUMENT 000101 - PROJECT TITLE PAGE

1.1 PROJECT MANUAL VOLUME 1

- A. 4th Floor Upfit.
- B. South Carolina Education Lottery 1333 Main Street
- C. Columbia, SC 29201
- D. Owner Project No. Y20-N001-CB
- E. Architect Project No. 021-00531-00
- F.
- G.
- H. SSOE | Stevens & Wilkinson
- I. 1501 Main Street
- J. Columbia, SC 29201
- K. Phone: 803-576-5391
- L. Fax: 803-254-6209
- M. Website: [www.ssoe.com](http://www.ssoe.com)
- N. Issued:08/06/2021
- O. Copyright 2021 SSOE | Stevens & Wilkinson. All rights reserved.

END OF DOCUMENT 000101



DOCUMENT 000107 - SEALS PAGE

DESIGN PROFESSIONALS OF RECORD

**ARCHITECT:**

William J. Fleming, AIA  
#3209



**HVAC / PLUMBING ENGINEER:**

Wesley G. Brown, PE  
PE# 25453



**ELECTRICAL ENGINEER:**

Brian K. Branham, PE  
PE# 16536



END OF SECTION 000107





DOCUMENT 000115 - LIST OF DRAWING SHEETS

**SHEET NO. SHEET NAME**

**GENERAL INFORMATION**

G1-00 COVER SHEET  
G1-02 GENERAL NOTES AND SHEET INDEX  
G2-00 CODE ANALYSIS  
G3-40 LEVEL 4 LIFE SAFETY AND OCCUPANCY LOAD PLANS

**ARCHITECTURE**

A0-50 PARTITION TYPES AND DETAILS  
A1-40 4TH FLOOR OVERALL PLAN  
A1-41 LEVEL 4 FLOOR PLAN  
A5-00A ANSI ADA ACCESSIBLE DETAILS  
A6-40 LEVEL 4 OVERALL REFLECTED CEILING PLAN  
A6-41 LEVEL 4 REFLECTED CEILING PLAN  
A9-40 LEVEL 4 FINISH FLOOR OVERALL PLAN  
A9-41 LEVEL 4 FINISH FLOOR PLAN  
A10-01 MILLWORK SECTIONS AND DETAILS  
AD1-41 LEVEL 4 DEMOLITION PLAN  
AD6-41 LEVEL 4 DEMOLITION REFLECTED CEILING PLAN

**FIRE PROTECTION**

F0.01 FIRE PROTECTION GENERAL  
F1.41 LEVEL 4 FIRE PROTECTION PLAN

**PLUMBING**

P0.01 PLUMBING GENERAL  
P1.41 LEVEL 4 PLUMBING PLAN  
P4.01 PLUMBING SCHEDULES AND DETAILS

**MECHANICAL**

M0.01 HVAC GENERAL  
M1.41 LEVEL 4 HVAC PLAN  
M5.01 HVAC DETAILS  
M6.01 HVAC SCHEDULES

**ELECTRICAL**

E0-01 ELECTRICAL SCHEDULES  
E0-02 ELECTRICAL DETAILS  
E1-41 LIGHTING LEVEL 4 FLOOR PLAN  
E2-41 POWER AND COMMUNICATIONS LEVEL 4 FLOOR PLAN  
ED1-41 ELECTRICAL DEMOLITON LEVEL 4 FLOOR PLAN

END OF DOCUMENT 000115



**South Carolina Division of Procurement  
Services, Office of State Engineer Version of  
 AIA<sup>®</sup> Document A701<sup>™</sup> – 2018**

***Instructions to Bidders***

This version of AIA Document A701<sup>™</sup>–2018 is modified by the South Carolina Division of Procurement Services, Office of State Engineer (“SCOSE”). Publication of this version of AIA Document A701–2018 does not imply the American Institute of Architects’ endorsement of any modification by SCOSE. A comparative version of AIA Document A701–2018 showing additions and deletions by SCOSE is available for review on the SCOSE Web site.

Cite this document as “AIA Document A701<sup>™</sup>– 2018, Instructions to Bidders — SCOSE Version,” or “AIA Document A701<sup>™</sup>–2018 — SCOSE Version.”

# South Carolina Division of Procurement Services, Office of State Engineer Version of AIA Document A701™ – 2018

## Instructions to Bidders

for the following Project:

*(Name, State Project Number, location, and detailed description)*

SC Education Lottery 4th floor Upfit

00-0000-00

1333 Main Street - 4th Floor

### THE OWNER:

*(Name, legal status, address, and other information)*

South Carolina Education Lottery

1333 Main Street, 4th floor

COLUMBIA, SC 29201

The Owner is a Governmental Body of the State of South Carolina as defined by S.C. Code Ann. § 11-35-310.

### THE ARCHITECT:

*(Name, legal status, address, and other information)*

SSOE - Stevens & Wilkinson

1501 Main Street, Suite 730

Columbia, SC 29201

This version of AIA Document A701-2018 is modified by the South Carolina Division of Procurement Services, Office of State Engineer. Publication of this version of AIA Document A701 does not imply the American Institute of Architects' endorsement of any modification by South Carolina Division of Procurement Services, Office of State Engineer. A comparative version of AIA Document A701-2018 showing additions and deletions by the South Carolina Division of Procurement Services, Office of State Engineer is available for review on South Carolina state Web site.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

## TABLE OF ARTICLES

- 1 DEFINITIONS
- 2 BIDDER'S REPRESENTATIONS
- 3 BIDDING DOCUMENTS
- 4 BIDDING PROCEDURES
- 5 CONSIDERATION OF BIDS
- 6 POST-BID INFORMATION
- 7 PERFORMANCE BOND AND PAYMENT BOND
- 8 ENUMERATION OF THE PROPOSED CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

Init.

## ARTICLE 1 DEFINITIONS

§ 1.1 Bidding Documents include the Bidding Requirements and the Proposed Contract Documents. The Bidding Requirements consist of the advertisement or invitation to bid, Instructions to Bidders, supplementary instructions to bidders, the bid form, and any other bidding forms. The Proposed Contract Documents consist of the unexecuted form of Agreement between the Owner and Contractor and that Agreement's Exhibits, Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplementary and other Conditions), Drawings, Specifications, all Addenda, and all other documents enumerated in Article 8 of these Instructions.

§ 1.1.1 Any reference in this document to the Agreement between the Owner and Contractor, AIA Document A101, or some abbreviated reference thereof, shall mean the AIA Document A101-2017 Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor, SCOSE Version. Any reference in this document to the General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, AIA Document A201, or some abbreviated reference thereof, shall mean the AIA Document A201-2017 General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, SCOSE Version.

§ 1.2 Definitions set forth in the General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, or in other Proposed Contract Documents apply to the Bidding Documents.

§ 1.3 Addenda are written or graphic instruments issued by the Architect, which, by additions, deletions, clarifications, or corrections, modify or interpret the Bidding Documents.

§ 1.4 A Bid is a complete and properly executed proposal to do the Work for the sums stipulated therein, submitted in accordance with the Bidding Documents.

§ 1.5 The Base Bid is the sum stated in the Bid for which the Bidder offers to perform the Work described in the Bidding Documents, to which Work may be added or deleted by sums stated in Alternate Bids.

§ 1.6 An Alternate Bid (or Alternate) is an amount stated in the Bid to be added to or deducted from, or that does not change, the Base Bid if the corresponding change in the Work, as described in the Bidding Documents, is accepted.

§ 1.7 A Unit Price is an amount stated in the Bid as a price per unit of measurement for materials, equipment, or services, or a portion of the Work, as described in the Bidding Documents.

§ 1.8 A Bidder is a person or entity who submits a Bid.

§ 1.9 A Sub-bidder is a person or entity who submits a bid to a Bidder for materials, equipment, or labor for a portion of the Work.

## ARTICLE 2 BIDDER'S REPRESENTATIONS

§ 2.1 By submitting a Bid, the Bidder represents that:

- .1 the Bidder has read and understands the Bidding Documents;
- .2 the Bidder understands how the Bidding Documents relate to other portions of the Project, if any, being bid concurrently or presently under construction;
- .3 the Bid complies with the Bidding Documents;
- .4 the Bidder has visited the site, become familiar with local conditions under which the Work is to be performed, has correlated the Bidder's observations with the requirements of the Proposed Contract Documents, and accepts full responsibility for any pre-bid existing conditions that would affect the Bid that could have been ascertained by a site visit. As provided in S.C. Code Ann. Reg. 19-445.2042(B), a bidder's failure to attend an advertised pre-bid conference will not excuse its responsibility for estimating properly the difficulty and cost of successfully performing the work, or for proceeding to successfully perform the work without additional expense to the State;
- .5 the Bid is based upon the materials, equipment, and systems required by the Bidding Documents without exception;
- .6 the Bidder has read and understands the provisions for liquidated damages, if any, set forth in the form of Agreement between the Owner and Contractor; and
- .7 the Bidder understands that it may be required to accept payment by electronic funds transfer (EFT).

### § 2.2 Certification of Independent Price Determination

§ 2.2.1 GIVING FALSE, MISLEADING, OR INCOMPLETE INFORMATION ON THIS CERTIFICATION MAY RENDER YOU SUBJECT TO PROSECUTION UNDER SC CODE OF LAWS §16-9-10 AND OTHER APPLICABLE LAWS.

§ 2.2.2 By submitting a Bid, the Bidder certifies that:

- .1 The prices in this Bid have been arrived at independently, without, for the purpose of restricting competition, any consultation, communication, or agreement with any other bidder or competitor relating to:
  - .1 those prices;
  - .2 the intention to submit a Bid; or
  - .3 the methods or factors used to calculate the prices offered.
- .2 The prices in this Bid have not been and will not be knowingly disclosed by the Bidder, directly or indirectly, to any other bidder or competitor before bid opening (in the case of a sealed bid solicitation) or contract award (in the case of a negotiated solicitation) unless otherwise required by law; and
- .3 No attempt has been made or will be made by the Bidder to induce any other concern to submit or not to submit a Bid for the purpose of restricting competition.

§ 2.2.3 Each signature on the Bid is considered to be a certification by the signatory that the signatory:

- .1 Is the person in the Bidder's organization responsible for determining the prices being offered in this Bid, and that the signatory has not participated and will not participate in any action contrary to Section 2.2.2 of this certification; or
- .2 Has been authorized, in writing, to act as agent for the Bidder's principals in certifying that those principals have not participated, and will not participate in any action contrary to Section 2.2.2 of this certification [As used in this subdivision, the term "principals" means the person(s) in the Bidder's organization responsible for determining the prices offered in this Bid];
- .3 As an authorized agent, does certify that the principals referenced in Section 2.2.3.2 of this certification have not participated, and will not participate, in any action contrary to Section 2.2.2 of this certification; and
- .4 As an agent, has not personally participated, and will not participate, in any action contrary to Section 2.2.2 of this certification.

§ 2.2.4 If the Bidder deletes or modifies Section 2.2.2.2 of this certification, the Bidder must furnish with its offer a signed statement setting forth in detail the circumstances of the disclosure.

#### § 2.2.5 Drug Free Workplace Certification

By submitting a Bid, the Bidder certifies that, if awarded a contract, Bidder will comply with all applicable provisions of The Drug-free Workplace Act, S.C. Code Ann. 44-107-10, et seq.

#### § 2.2.6 Certification Regarding Debarment and Other Responsibility Matters

§ 2.2.6.1 By submitting a Bid, Bidder certifies, to the best of its knowledge and belief, that:

- .1 Bidder and/or any of its Principals-
  - .1 Are not presently debarred, suspended, proposed for debarment, or declared ineligible for the award of contracts by any state or federal agency;
  - .2 Have not, within a three-year period preceding this Bid, been convicted of or had a civil judgment rendered against them for: commission of fraud or a criminal offense in connection with obtaining, attempting to obtain, or performing a public (Federal, state, or local) contract or subcontract; violation of Federal or state antitrust statutes relating to the submission of bids; or commission of embezzlement, theft, forgery, bribery, falsification or destruction of records, making false statements, tax evasion, or receiving stolen property; and
  - .3 Are not presently indicted for, or otherwise criminally or civilly charged by a governmental entity with, commission of any of the offenses enumerated in Section 2.2.6.1.1.2 of this provision.
- .2 Bidder has not, within a three-year period preceding this Bid, had one or more contracts terminated for default by any public (Federal, state, or local) entity.
- .3 "Principals," for the purposes of this certification, means officers; directors; owners; partners; and, persons having primary management or supervisory responsibilities within a business entity (e.g., general manager; plant manager; head of a subsidiary, division, or business segment, and similar positions).

§ 2.2.6.2 Bidder shall provide immediate written notice to the Procurement Officer if, at any time prior to contract award, Bidder learns that its certification was erroneous when submitted or has become erroneous by reason of changed circumstances.

§ 2.2.6.3 If Bidder is unable to certify the representations stated in Section 2.2.6.1, Bidder must submit a written explanation regarding its inability to make the certification. The certification will be considered in connection with a review of the Bidder's responsibility. Failure of the Bidder to furnish additional information as requested by the Procurement Officer may render the Bidder non-responsible.

§ 2.2.6.4 Nothing contained in the foregoing shall be construed to require establishment of a system of records in order to render, in good faith, the certification required by Section 2.2.6.1 of this provision. The knowledge and information of a Bidder is not required to exceed that which is normally possessed by a prudent person in the ordinary course of business dealings.

§ 2.2.6.5 The certification in Section 2.2.6.1 of this provision is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed when making award. If it is later determined that the Bidder knowingly or in bad faith rendered an erroneous certification, in addition to other remedies available to the State, the Procurement Officer may terminate the contract resulting from this solicitation for default.

### § 2.2.7 Ethics Certificate

By submitting a Bid, the Bidder certifies that the Bidder has and will comply with, and has not, and will not, induce a person to violate Title 8, Chapter 13 of the SC Code of Laws, as amended (Ethics Act). The following statutes require special attention: S.C. Code Ann. §8-13-700, regarding use of official position for financial gain; S.C. Code Ann. §8-13-705, regarding gifts to influence action of public official; S.C. Code Ann. §8-13-720, regarding offering money for advice or assistance of public official; S.C. Code Ann. §8-13-755 and §8-13-760, regarding restrictions on employment by former public official; S.C. Code Ann. §8-13-775, prohibiting public official with economic interests from acting on contracts; S.C. Code Ann. §8-13-790, regarding recovery of kickbacks; S.C. Code Ann. §8-13-1150, regarding statements to be filed by consultants; and S.C. Code Ann. §8-13-1342, regarding restrictions on contributions by contractor to candidate who participated in awarding of contract. The State may rescind any contract and recover all amounts expended as a result of any action taken in violation of this provision. If the contractor participates, directly or indirectly, in the evaluation or award of public contracts, including without limitation, change orders or task orders regarding a public contract, the contractor shall, if required by law to file such a statement, provide the statement required by S.C. Code Ann. §8-13-1150 to the Procurement Officer at the same time the law requires the statement to be filed.

### § 2.2.8 Restrictions Applicable To Bidders & Gifts

Violation of these restrictions may result in disqualification of your Bid, suspension or debarment, and may constitute a violation of the state Ethics Act.

§ 2.2.8.1 After issuance of the solicitation, Bidder agrees not to discuss this procurement activity in any way with the Owner or its employees, agents or officials. All communications must be solely with the Procurement Officer. This restriction may be lifted by express written permission from the Procurement Officer. This restriction expires once a contract has been formed.

§ 2.2.8.2 Unless otherwise approved in writing by the Procurement Officer, Bidder agrees not to give anything to the Owner, any affiliated organizations, or the employees, agents or officials of either, prior to award.

§ 2.2.8.3 Bidder acknowledges that the policy of the State is that a governmental body should not accept or solicit a gift, directly or indirectly, from a donor if the governmental body has reason to believe the donor has or is seeking to obtain contractual or other business or financial relationships with the governmental body. SC Regulation 19-445.2165(C) broadly defines the term donor.

### § 2.2.9 Open Trade Representation

By submitting a Bid, the Bidder represents that Bidder is not currently engaged in the boycott of a person or an entity based in or doing business with a jurisdiction with whom South Carolina can enjoy open trade, as defined in S.C. Code Ann. §11-35-5300.

## ARTICLE 3 BIDDING DOCUMENTS

### § 3.1 Distribution

§ 3.1.1 Bidders shall obtain complete Bidding Documents from the issuing office designated in the advertisement or invitation to bid, for the deposit sum, if any, stated therein.

§ 3.1.2 Any required deposit shall be refunded to all plan holders who return the paper Bidding Documents in good condition within ten (10) days after receipt of Bids. The cost to replace missing or damaged paper documents will be deducted from the deposit. A Bidder receiving a Contract award may retain the paper Bidding Documents, and the Bidder's deposit will be refunded.

### § 3.1.3 Reserved

§ 3.1.4 Bidders shall use complete Bidding Documents in preparing Bids. Neither the Owner nor Architect assumes responsibility for errors or misinterpretations resulting from the use of incomplete Bidding Documents.

§ 3.1.5 The Bidding Documents will be available for the sole purpose of obtaining Bids on the Work. No license or grant of use is conferred by distribution of the Bidding Documents.

§ 3.1.6 All persons obtaining Bidding Documents from the issuing office designated in the advertisement shall provide that office with Bidder's contact information to include the Bidder's name, telephone number, mailing address, and email address.

### § 3.2 Modification or Interpretation of Bidding Documents

§ 3.2.1 The Bidder shall carefully study the Bidding Documents, shall examine the site and local conditions, and shall notify the Architect of errors, inconsistencies, or ambiguities discovered and request clarification or interpretation pursuant to Section 3.2.2. Failure to do so will be at the Bidder's risk. Bidder assumes responsibility for any patent ambiguity that Bidder does not bring to the Architect's attention prior to Bid Opening.

§ 3.2.2 Requests for clarification or interpretation of the Bidding Documents shall be submitted by the Bidder in writing and shall be received by the Architect at least ten (10) days prior to the date for receipt of Bids.

§ 3.2.3 Modifications, corrections, changes, and interpretations of the Bidding Documents shall be made by Addendum. Modifications, corrections, changes, and interpretations of the Bidding Documents made in any other manner shall not be binding, and Bidders shall not rely upon them.

§ 3.2.4 As provided in S.C. Code Ann. Reg. 19-445.2042(B), nothing stated at the Pre-bid conference shall change the Bidding Documents unless a change is made by Addendum.

### § 3.3 Substitutions

§ 3.3.1 The materials, products, and equipment described in the Bidding Documents establish a standard of required function, dimension, appearance, and quality to be met by any proposed substitution. Where "brand name or equal" is used in the Bidding Documents, the listing description is not intended to limit or restrict competition.

#### § 3.3.2 Substitution Process

§ 3.3.2.1 Written requests for substitutions shall be received by the Architect at least ten (10) days prior to the date for receipt of Bids. Requests shall be submitted in the same manner as that established for submitting clarifications and interpretations in Section 3.2.2.

§ 3.3.2.2 Bidders shall submit substitution requests on a Substitution Request Form if one is provided in the Bidding Documents.

§ 3.3.2.3 If a Substitution Request Form is not provided, requests shall include (1) the name of the material or equipment specified in the Bidding Documents; (2) the reason for the requested substitution; (3) a complete description of the proposed substitution including the name of the material or equipment proposed as the substitute, performance and test data, and relevant drawings; and (4) any other information necessary for an evaluation. The request shall include a statement setting forth changes in other materials, equipment, or other portions of the Work, including changes in the work of other contracts or the impact on any Project Certifications (such as LEED), that will result from incorporation of the proposed substitution.

§ 3.3.2.4 No request to substitute materials, products, or equipment for materials, products, or equipment described in the Bidding Documents and no request for addition of a manufacturer or supplier to a list of approved manufacturers or suppliers in the Bidding Documents will be considered prior to receipt of Bids unless written request for approval has been received by the Architect at least ten (10) days prior to the date for receipt of Bids established in the invitation to bid.



Any subsequent extension of the date for receipt of Bids by addendum shall not extend the date for receipt of such requests unless the addendum so specifies. A statement setting forth changes in other materials, equipment or other portions of the Work, including changes in the Work of other contracts that incorporation of the proposed substitution would require, shall be included.

§ 3.3.3 The burden of proof of the merit of the proposed substitution is upon the proposer. The Architect's decision of approval or disapproval of a proposed substitution shall be final.

§ 3.3.4 If the Architect approves a proposed substitution prior to receipt of Bids, such approval shall be set forth in an Addendum. Approvals made in any other manner shall not be binding, and Bidders shall not rely upon them.

§ 3.3.5 No substitutions will be considered after the Contract award unless specifically provided for in the Contract Documents.

#### § 3.4 Addenda

§ 3.4.1 Addenda will be transmitted to Bidders known by the issuing office to have received complete Bidding Documents.

§ 3.4.2 Addenda will be available where Bidding Documents are on file.

§ 3.4.3 Addenda will be issued at least five (5) business days before the day of the Bid Opening, except an Addendum withdrawing the request for Bids or one which includes postponement of the date for receipt of Bids. A business day runs from midnight to midnight and excludes weekends and state and federal holidays.

§ 3.4.4 Prior to submitting a Bid, each Bidder shall ascertain that the Bidder has received all Addenda issued, and the Bidder shall acknowledge their receipt in the Bid.

§ 3.4.5 When the date for receipt of Bids is to be postponed and there is insufficient time to issue an Addendum prior to the original Bid Date, the Owner will notify prospective Bidders by telephone or other appropriate means with immediate follow up with an Addendum. This Addendum will verify the postponement of the original Bid Date and establish a new Bid Date. The new Bid Date will be no earlier than the fifth (5th) business day after the date of issuance of the Addendum postponing the original Bid Date.

§ 3.4.6 If an emergency or unanticipated event interrupts normal government processes so that Bids cannot be received at the government office designated for receipt of Bids by the exact time specified in the solicitation, the time specified for receipt of Bids will be deemed to be extended to the same time of day specified in the solicitation on the first work day on which normal government processes resume. In lieu of an automatic extension, an Addendum may be issued to reschedule Bid Opening. If state offices are closed in the county in which Bids are to be received at the time a pre-bid or pre-proposal conference is scheduled, an Addendum will be issued to reschedule the conference. Bidders shall visit <https://www.scemd.org/closings/> for information concerning closings.

### ARTICLE 4 BIDDING PROCEDURES

#### § 4.1 Preparation of Bids

§ 4.1.1 Bids shall be submitted on the forms included with or identified in the Bidding Documents.

§ 4.1.2 All blanks on the Bid Form shall be legibly executed. Paper bid forms shall be executed in a non-erasable medium.

§ 4.1.3 Sums shall be expressed in numbers.

§ 4.1.4 Interlineations, alterations and erasures must be initialed by the signer of the Bid. Bidder shall not make stipulations or qualify his Bid in any manner not permitted on the Bid Form. An incomplete Bid or information not requested that is written on or attached to the Bid Form that could be considered a qualification of the Bid, may be cause for rejection of the Bid.

§ 4.1.5 All requested Alternates shall be bid. The failure of the Bidder to indicate a price for an Alternate shall render the Bid non-responsive. Indicate the change to the Base Bid by entering the dollar amount and marking, as appropriate, the box for "ADD TO" or "DEDUCT FROM". If no change in the Base Bid is required, enter "ZERO" or "No Change".

Init.

§ 4.1.6 Pursuant to S.C. Code Ann. § 11-35-3020(b)(i), as amended, Section 7 of the Bid Form sets forth a list of proposed subcontractors for which the Bidder is required to identify those subcontractors the Bidder will use to perform the work listed. Bidder must follow the instructions in the Bid Form for filling out this section of the Bid Form. Failure to properly fill out Section 7 may result in rejection of Bidder's bid as non-responsive.

§ 4.1.7 Contractors and subcontractors listed in Section 7 of the Bid Form who are required by the South Carolina Code of Laws to be licensed, must be licensed as required by law at the time of bidding.

§ 4.1.8 Each copy of the Bid shall state the legal name and legal status of the Bidder. Each copy of the Bid shall be signed by the person or persons legally authorized to bind the Bidder to a contract.

§ 4.1.9 A Bidder shall incur all costs associated with the preparation of its Bid.

#### § 4.2 Bid Security

§ 4.2.1 If required by the invitation to bid, each Bid shall be accompanied by a bid security in an amount of not less than five percent of the Base Bid. The bid security shall be a bid bond or a certified cashier's check.

§ 4.2.2 The Bidder pledges to enter into a Contract with the Owner on the terms stated in the Bid and shall, if required, furnish bonds covering the faithful performance of the Contract and payment of all obligations arising thereunder. Should the Bidder refuse to enter into such Contract or fail to furnish such bonds if required, the amount of the bid security shall be forfeited to the Owner as liquidated damages, not as a penalty.

§ 4.2.3 If a surety bond is required as bid security, it shall be written on AIA Document A310™, Bid Bond and the attorney-in-fact who executes the bond on behalf of the surety shall affix to the bond a certified and current copy of an acceptable power of attorney. The Bid Bond shall:

- .1 be issued by a surety company licensed to do business in South Carolina;
- .2 be issued by a surety company having, at a minimum, a "Best Rating" of "A" as stated in the most current publication of "Best's Key Rating Guide, Property-Casualty", which company shows a financial strength rating of at least five (5) times the contract price.
- .3 be enclosed in the bid envelope at the time of Bid Opening, either in paper copy or as an electronic bid bond authorization number provided on the Bid Form and issued by a firm or organization authorized by the surety to receive, authenticate and issue binding electronic bid bonds on behalf the surety.

§ 4.2.4 The Owner will have the right to retain the bid security of Bidders to whom an award is being considered until either (a) the Contract has been executed and performance and payment bonds, if required, have been furnished; (b) the specified time has elapsed so that Bids may be withdrawn; or (c) all Bids have been rejected.

§ 4.2.5 By submitting a Bid Bond via an electronic bid bond authorization number on the Bid Form and signing the Bid Form, the Bidder certifies that an electronic bid bond has been executed by a Surety meeting the standards required by the Bidding Documents and the Bidder and Surety are firmly bound unto the State of South Carolina under the conditions provided in this Section 4.2.

#### § 4.3 Submission of Bids

§ 4.3.1 A Bidder shall submit its Bid as indicated below:

§ 4.3.2 All paper copies of the Bid, the bid security, and any other documents required to be submitted with the Bid shall be enclosed in a sealed opaque envelope. The envelope shall, unless hand delivered by the Bidder, be addressed to the Owner's designated purchasing office as shown in the invitation to bid. The envelope shall be identified with the Project name, the Bidder's name and address, and, if applicable, the designated portion of the Work for which the Bid is submitted. If the Bid is sent by mail, or special delivery service (UPS, Federal Express, etc.), the sealed envelope shall be labelled "SEALED BID ENCLOSED" on the face thereof. Bidders hand delivering their Bids shall deliver Bids to the place of the Bid Opening as shown in the invitation for bids. Whether or not Bidders attend the Bid Opening, they shall give their Bids to the Owner's Procurement Officer or his/her designee as shown in the invitation to bid prior to the time of the Bid Opening.

§ 4.3.3 Bids shall be submitted by the date and time and at the place indicated in the invitation to bid. Bids submitted after the date and time for receipt of Bids, or at an incorrect place, will not be accepted.

Init.

§ 4.3.4 The Bidder shall assume full responsibility for timely delivery at the location designated for receipt of Bids.

§ 4.3.5 A Bid submitted by any method other than as provided in this Section 4.3 will not be accepted. Oral, telephonic, telegraphic, facsimile or other electronically transmitted bids will not be considered.

§ 4.3.6 The official time for receipt of Bids will be determined by reference to the clock designated by the Owner's Procurement Officer or his/her designee. The Procurement Officer conducting the Bid Opening will determine and announce that the deadline has arrived and no further Bids or bid modifications will be accepted. All Bids and bid modifications in the possession of the Procurement Officer at the time the announcement is completed will be timely, whether or not the bid envelope has been date/time stamped or otherwise marked by the Procurement Officer.

#### § 4.4 Modification or Withdrawal of Bid

§ 4.4.1 Prior to the date and time designated for receipt of Bids, a Bidder may submit a new Bid to replace a Bid previously submitted, or withdraw its Bid entirely, by notice to the party designated to receive the Bids. Such notice shall be received and duly recorded by the receiving party on or before the date and time set for receipt of Bids. The receiving party shall verify that replaced or withdrawn Bids are removed from the other submitted Bids and not considered. Notice of submission of a replacement Bid or withdrawal of a Bid shall be worded so as not to reveal the amount of the original Bid.

§ 4.4.2 Withdrawn Bids may be resubmitted up to the date and time designated for the receipt of Bids in the same format as that established in Section 4.3, provided they fully conform with these Instructions to Bidders. Bid security shall be in an amount sufficient for the Bid as resubmitted.

### ARTICLE 5 CONSIDERATION OF BIDS

#### § 5.1 Opening of Bids

Bids received on time will be publicly opened and read aloud. The Owner will not read aloud Bids that the Owner determines, at the time of opening, to be non-responsive.

§ 5.1.1 At Bid Opening, the Owner will announce the date and location of the posting of the Notice of Intend to Award. If the Owner determines to award the Project, the Owner will, after posting a Notice of Intend to Award, send a copy of the Notice to all Bidders.

§ 5.1.2 The Owner will send a copy of the final Bid Tabulation to all Bidders within ten (10) working days of the Bid Opening.

§ 5.1.3 If only one Bid is received, the Owner will open and consider the Bid.

#### § 5.2 Rejection of Bids

§ 5.2.1 The Owner shall have the right to reject any or all Bids. A Bid not accompanied by a required bid security or by other data required by the Bidding Documents, or a Bid which is in any way incomplete or irregular is subject to rejection.

§ 5.2.2 The reasons for which the Owner will reject Bids include, but are not limited to:

- .1 Failure by a Bidder to be represented at a Mandatory Pre-Bid Conference or site visit;
- .2 Failure to deliver the Bid on time;
- .3 Failure to comply with Bid Security requirements, except as expressly allowed by law;
- .4 Listing an invalid electronic Bid Bond authorization number on the Bid Form;
- .5 Failure to Bid an Alternate, except as expressly allowed by law;
- .6 Failure to list qualified subcontractors as required by law;
- .7 Showing any material modification(s) or exception(s) qualifying the Bid;
- .8 Faxing a Bid directly to the Owner or Owner's representative; or
- .9 Failure to include a properly executed Power-of-Attorney with the Bid Bond.

§ 5.2.3 The Owner may reject a Bid as nonresponsive if the prices bid are materially unbalanced between line items or sub-line items. A Bid is materially unbalanced when it is based on prices significantly less than cost for some work and prices which are significantly overstated in relation to cost for other work, and if there is a reasonable doubt that the Bid

will result in the lowest overall cost to the Owner even though it may be the low evaluated Bid, or if it is so unbalanced as to be tantamount to allowing an advance payment.

### § 5.3 Acceptance of Bid (Award)

§ 5.3.1 It is the intent of the Owner to award a Contract to the lowest responsive and responsible Bidder, provided the Bid has been submitted in accordance with the requirements of the Bidding Documents and does not exceed available funds. The Owner shall have the right to waive informalities and irregularities in a Bid received and to accept the Bid which, in the Owner's judgment, is in the Owner's best interests.

§ 5.3.2 The Owner shall have the right to accept Alternates in any order or combination, unless otherwise specifically provided in the Bidding Documents, and to determine the lowest responsive and responsible Bidder on the basis of the sum of the Base Bid and Alternates accepted.

## ARTICLE 6 POST-BID INFORMATION

### § 6.1 Contractor's Responsibility

Owner will make a determination of Bidder's responsibility before awarding a contract. Bidder shall provide all information and documentation requested by the Owner to support the Owner's evaluation of responsibility. Failure of Bidder to provide requested information is cause for the Owner, at its option, to determine the Bidder to be non-responsible.

### § 6.2 Reserved

### § 6.3 Submittals

§ 6.3.1 After notification of selection for the award of the Contract, the Bidder shall, as soon as practicable or as stipulated in the Bidding Documents, submit in writing to the Owner through the Architect:

- .1 a designation of the Work to be performed with the Bidder's own forces;
- .2 names of the principal products and systems proposed for the Work and the manufacturers and suppliers of each; and
- .3 names of persons or entities (including those who are to furnish materials or equipment fabricated to a special design) proposed for the principal portions of the Work.

### § 6.4 Posting of Intent To Award

The Notice of Intent to Award will be posted at the following location:

**Room or Area of Posting:**

**Building Where Posted:**

**Address of Building:**

**WEB site address (if applicable):**

**Posting date will be announced at Bid Opening.** In addition to posting the Notice, the Owner will promptly send all responsive Bidders a copy of the Notice of Intent to Award and the final bid tabulation

### § 6.5 Protest of Solicitation or Award

§ 6.5.1 If you are aggrieved in connection with the solicitation or award of a contract, you may be entitled to protest, but only as provided in S.C. Code Ann. § 11-35-4210. To protest a solicitation, you must submit a protest within fifteen (15) days of the date the applicable solicitation document is issued. To protest an award, you must (i) submit notice of your intent to protest within seven (7) business days of the date the award notice is posted, and (ii) submit your actual protest within fifteen (15) days of the date the award notice is posted. Days are calculated as provided in Section 11-35-310(13). Both protests and notices of intent to protest must be in writing and must be received by the State Engineer within the time provided. The grounds of the protest and the relief requested must be set forth with enough particularity to give notice of the issues to be decided.

§ 6.5.2 Any protest must be addressed to the CPO, Office of State Engineer, and submitted in writing:

- .1 by email to [protest-ose@mmo.sc.gov](mailto:protest-ose@mmo.sc.gov),
- .2 by facsimile at 803-737-0639, or
- .3 by post or delivery to 1201 Main Street, Suite 600, Columbia, SC 29201.

By submitting a protest to the foregoing email address, you (and any person acting on your behalf) consent to receive communications regarding your protest (and any related protests) at the e-mail address from which you sent your protest.

§ 7.1.2 If the furnishing of such bonds is stipulated in the Bidding Documents, the cost shall be included in the Bid.

§ 7.1.3 The Bidder shall provide surety bonds from a company or companies lawfully authorized to issue surety bonds in the state of South Carolina.

§ 7.1.4 Unless otherwise indicated below, the Penal Sum of the Payment and Performance Bonds shall be the amount of 100% of the Contract Sum.

**§ 7.2 Time of Delivery of Contract, Certificates of Insurance, and Form of Bonds**

§ 7.2.1 Following expiration of the protest period, the Owner will forward the Contract for Construction to the Bidder for signature. The Bidder shall return the fully executed Contract for Construction to the Owner within seven (7) days. The Bidder shall deliver the required bonds and certificate of insurance to the Owner not later than three (3) days following the date of execution of the Contract. Failure to deliver these documents as required shall entitle the Owner to consider the Bidder's failure as a refusal to enter into a contract in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Bidder's Bid and to make claim on the Bid Security for re-procurement cost.

§ 7.2.2 Unless otherwise provided, the bonds shall be written on the Performance Bond and Payment Bond forms included in the Bid Documents.

§ 7.2.3 The bonds shall be dated on or after the date of the Contract.

§ 7.2.4 The Bidder shall require the attorney-in-fact who executes the required bonds on behalf of the surety to affix to the bond a certified and current copy of the power of attorney.

**ARTICLE 8 ENUMERATION OF THE PROPOSED CONTRACT DOCUMENTS**

§ 8.1 Copies of the proposed Contract Documents have been made available to the Bidder and consist of the following documents:

- .1 AIA Document A101™–2017, Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor, SCOSE Version.
- .2 AIA Document A101™–2017, Exhibit A, Insurance and Bonds, SCOSE Version.
- .3 AIA Document A201™–2017, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, SCOSE Version.
- .4 Drawings

Number	Title	Date
--------	-------	------

- .5 Specifications

Section	Title	Date	Pages
---------	-------	------	-------

.6 Addenda:

Number	Date	Pages
--------	------	-------

.7 Other Exhibits:

*(Check all boxes that apply and include appropriate information identifying the exhibit where required.)*

- AIA Document E203™–2013, Building Information Modeling and Digital Data Exhibit, dated as indicated below:
- AIA Document E204™–2017, Sustainable Projects Exhibit, dated as indicated below:
- The Sustainability Plan:
- Supplementary and other Conditions of the Contract:

.8 Other documents listed below:

*(List here any additional documents that are intended to form part of the Proposed Contract Documents.)*

**ARTICLE 9 Miscellaneous**

**§ 9.1 Nonresident Taxpayer Registration Affidavit Income Tax Withholding Important Tax Notice - Nonresidents Only**

**§ 9.1.1** Withholding Requirements for Payments to Nonresidents: SC Code of Laws §12-8-550 requires persons hiring or contracting with a nonresident conducting a business or performing personal services of a temporary nature within South Carolina to withhold 2% of each payment made to the nonresident. The withholding requirement does not apply to (1) payments on purchase orders for tangible personal property when the payments are not accompanied by services to be performed in South Carolina, (2) nonresidents who are not conducting business in South Carolina, (3) nonresidents for contracts that do not exceed \$10,000 in a calendar year, or (4) payments to a nonresident who (a) registers with either the S.C. Department of Revenue or the S.C. Secretary of State and (b) submits a Nonresident Taxpayer Registration Affidavit - Income Tax Withholding, Form I-312 to the person letting the contract.

**§ 9.1.2** For information about other withholding requirements (e.g., employee withholding), contact the Withholding Section at the South Carolina Department of Revenue at 803-898-5383 or visit the Department's website at:

[www.sctax.org](http://www.sctax.org)

**§ 9.1.3** This notice is for informational purposes only. This Owner does not administer and has no authority over tax issues. All registration questions should be directed to the License and Registration Section at 803-898-5872 or to the South Carolina Department of Revenue, Registration Unit, Columbia, S.C. 29214-0140. All withholding questions should be directed to the Withholding Section at 803-898-5383.

PLEASE SEE THE "NONRESIDENT TAXPAYER REGISTRATION AFFIDAVIT INCOME TAX WITHHOLDING" FORM (Available through SC Department of Revenue).

Init.

## § 9.2 Submitting Confidential Information

§ 9.2.1 For every document the Bidder submits in response to or with regard to this solicitation or request, the Bidder must separately mark with the word "CONFIDENTIAL" every page, or portion thereof, that the Bidder contends contains information that is exempt from public disclosure because it is either (a) a trade secret as defined in Section 30-4-40(a)(1), or (b) privileged & confidential, as that phrase is used in SC Code of Laws §11-35-410.

§ 9.2.2 For every document the Bidder submits in response to or with regard to this solicitation or request, the Bidder must separately mark with the words "TRADE SECRET" every page, or portion thereof, that the Bidder contends contains a trade secret as that term is defined by SC Code of Laws §39-8-20.

§ 9.2.3 For every document the Bidder submits in response to or with regard to this solicitation or request, the Bidder must separately mark with the word "PROTECTED" every page, or portion thereof, that the Bidder contends is protected by SC Code of Laws §11-35-1810.

§ 9.2.4 All markings must be conspicuous; use color, bold, underlining, or some other method in order to conspicuously distinguish the mark from the other text. Do not mark your entire Bid as confidential, trade secret, or protected! If your Bid, or any part thereof, is improperly marked as confidential or trade secret or protected, the State may, in its sole discretion, determine it nonresponsive. If only portions of a page are subject to some protection, do not mark the entire page.

§ 9.2.5 By submitting a response to this solicitation, Bidder (1) agrees to the public disclosure of every page of every document regarding this solicitation or request that was submitted at any time prior to entering into a contract (including, but not limited to, documents contained in a response, documents submitted to clarify a response, & documents submitted during negotiations), unless the page is conspicuously marked "TRADE SECRET" or "CONFIDENTIAL" or "PROTECTED", (2) agrees that any information not marked, as required by these bidding instructions, as a "Trade Secret" is not a trade secret as defined by the Trade Secrets Act, & (3) agrees that, notwithstanding any claims or markings otherwise, any prices, commissions, discounts, or other financial figures used to determine the award, as well as the final contract amount, are subject to public disclosure.

§ 9.2.6 In determining whether to release documents, the State will detrimentally rely on the Bidders' marking of documents, as required by these bidding instructions, as being either "Confidential" or "Trade Secret" or "PROTECTED".

§ 9.2.7 By submitting a response, the Bidder agrees to defend, indemnify & hold harmless the State of South Carolina, its officers & employees, from every claim, demand, loss, expense, cost, damage or injury, including attorney's fees, arising out of or resulting from the State withholding information that Bidder marked as "confidential" or "trade secret" or "PROTECTED".

## § 9.3 Solicitation Information From Sources Other Than Official Source

South Carolina Business Opportunities (SCBO) is the official state government publication for State of South Carolina solicitations. Any information on State agency solicitations obtained from any other source is unofficial and any reliance placed on such information is at the Bidder's sole risk and is without recourse under the South Carolina Consolidated Procurement Code.

## § 9.4 Builder's Risk Insurance

Bidders are directed to Exhibit A of the AIA Document A101, 2017 SCOSE Version, which, unless provided otherwise in the Bid Documents, requires the contractor to provide builder's risk insurance on the project.

## § 9.5 Tax Credit For Subcontracting With Minority Firms

§ 9.5.1 Pursuant to S.C. Code Ann. §12-6-3350, taxpayers, who utilize certified minority subcontractors, may take a tax credit equal to 4% of the payments they make to said subcontractors. The payments claimed must be based on work performed directly for a South Carolina state contract. The credit is limited to a maximum of fifty thousand dollars annually. The taxpayer is eligible to claim the credit for 10 consecutive taxable years beginning with the taxable year in which the first payment is made to the subcontractor that qualifies for the credit. After the above ten consecutive taxable years, the taxpayer is no longer eligible for the credit. The credit may be claimed on Form TC-2, "Minority Business Credit." A copy of the subcontractor's certificate from the Governor's Office of Small and Minority Business (OSMBA) is to be attached to the contractor's income tax return.

§ 9.5.2 Taxpayers must maintain evidence of work performed for a State contract by the minority subcontractor. Questions regarding the tax credit and how to file are to be referred to: SC Department of Revenue, Research and Review, Phone: (803) 898-5786, Fax: (803) 898-5888.

§ 9.5.3 The subcontractor must be certified as to the criteria of a "Minority Firm" by the Governor's Office of Small and Minority Business Assistance (OSMBA). Certificates are issued to subcontractors upon successful completion of the certification process. Questions regarding subcontractor certification are to be referred to: Governor's Office of Small and Minority Business Assistance, Phone: (803) 734-0657, Fax: (803) 734-2498. Reference: S.C. Code Ann. §11-35-5010 – Definition for Minority Subcontractor & S.C. Code Ann. §11-35-5230 (B) – Regulations for Negotiating with State Minority Firms.

#### § 9.6 Other Special Conditions Of The Work



DOCUMENT 002113 - INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS

1.1 INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS

- A. AIA Document A701, "Instructions to Bidders," is hereby incorporated into the Procurement and Contracting Requirements by reference.
  - 1. A copy of AIA Document A701, "Instructions to Bidders," is bound in this Project Manual.

END OF DOCUMENT 002113



**SE-331  
QUOTE FORM**

**QUOTE SUBMITTED BY:** \_\_\_\_\_  
(Offeror's Name)

**QUOTE SUBMITTED TO:** South Carolina Education Lottery  
(Agency's Name)

**FOR: PROJECT NAME:** 4<sup>th</sup> Floor Upfit/1333 Main Street  
**PROJECT NUMBER:** Y20-N001-CB

**OFFER**

§ 1. In response to the Invitation for Minor Construction Quotes for the above-named Project, the undersigned **OFFEROR** proposes and agrees, if this Quote is accepted, to enter into a Contract with the Agency in the form included in the Solicitation Documents, and to perform all Work as specified or indicated in the Solicitation Documents, for the prices and within the time frames indicated in the Solicitation and in accordance with the other terms and conditions stated.

§ 2. **OFFEROR** acknowledges the receipt of the following Addenda to the Solicitation documents and has incorporated the effects of said Addenda into its Quote (*Check only boxes that apply.*):

**ADDENDA:**                     #1                     #2                     #3                     #4                     #5

§ 3. **OFFEROR** agrees that this Quote, including all alternates, if any, may not be revoked or withdrawn after the opening of quotes, and shall remain open for acceptance for a period of 60 Days following the Quote Date, or for such longer period of time that **OFFEROR** may agree to in writing upon request of the Agency.

§ 4. **OFFEROR** agrees that the Date of Commencement of the Work shall be established in a Notice to Proceed to be issued by the Agency. Offeror agrees to substantially complete the Work within 120 Calendar Days from the Date of Commencement, subject to adjustments as provided in the Contract Documents.

§ 5. **OFFEROR** agrees that from the compensation to be paid, the Agency shall retain as Liquidated Damages the amount of \$ 250.00 for each calendar day the actual construction time required to achieve Substantial Completion exceeds the specified or adjusted Contract Time for Substantial Completion, as provided in the Contract Documents.

§ 6. **OFFEROR** herewith submits its offer to provide all labor, materials, equipment, tools of trades and labor, accessories, appliances, warranties and guarantees, and to pay all royalties, fee, permits, licenses and applicable taxes necessary to complete the following items of construction work:

§ 6.1 **BASE QUOTE** \$ \_\_\_\_\_  
(enter **BASE QUOTE** in figures only)

§ 6.1.1 **ALTERNATE NO. 1** \$ \_\_\_\_\_ to be **ADDED / DEDUCTED** from **BASE QUOTE**.  
(circle one)

§ 6.1.2 **ALTERNATE NO. 2** \$ \_\_\_\_\_ to be **ADDED / DEDUCTED** from **BASE QUOTE**.  
(circle one)

**SC Contractor's License Number:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Classification(s) & Limits:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Address:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Telephone:** \_\_\_\_\_

**E-mail:** \_\_\_\_\_

**This Quote is hereby submitted on behalf of the Offeror named above.**

**BY:** \_\_\_\_\_  
(Signature of Offeror's Representative)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Print or Type Name of Offeror's Representative)

**TITLE:** \_\_\_\_\_



# SE-311 INVITATION FOR MINOR CONSTRUCTION QUOTES

AGENCY/OWNER: South Carolina Education Lottery

PROJECT NAME: 4<sup>th</sup> Floor Upfit/1333 Main Street

PROJECT NUMBER: Y20-N001-CB CONSTRUCTION COST RANGE: \$ 75,000 to \$ 100,000

PROJECT LOCATION: 1333 Main Street, Suite 400, Columbia, SC 29201

DESCRIPTION OF PROJECT: Selective demolition of existing walls and finishes, installation of new metal stud and drywall partitions, new HM frames and wood doors with hardware, new acoustical lay-in ceiling system, minor HVAC system scope and minor electrical system work consisting of new devices in new partitions and ceilings.

QUOTE DUE DATE: 11/16/2021 TIME: 3:00PM

AGENCY PROJECT COORDINATOR: Petrina F. Marsh

EMAIL: Petrina.Marsh@sclot.com TELEPHONE: 803-737-2808

DOCUMENTS MAY BE OBTAINED FROM: https://www.sceducationlottery.com/Lottery/Procurement

DOCUMENT DEPOSIT AMOUNT: \$ 0.00 IS DEPOSIT REFUNDABLE Yes  No  N/A

PERFORMANCE BOND REQUIRED? Yes  No  PAYMENT BOND REQUIRED? Yes  No

Contractors must obtain Documents/Plans from the above listed source(s) to be listed as an official plan holder. All written communications with official plan holders & Contractors submitting quotes will be via email or website posting.

PUBLIC NOTICES: All notices (Notice of Award) shall be posted at the following location: https://www.sceducationlottery.com/Lottery/Procurement

**RIGHT TO PROTEST (SC Code § 11-35-4210) (This only applies to contracts exceeding \$50,000.)**

Any actual bidder, offeror, contractor or subcontractor who is aggrieved in connection with this solicitation or the intended award or award of a contract under this solicitation may protest to the State Engineer in accordance with Section 11-35-4210 at: CPO, Office of State Engineer, 1201 Main Street, Suite 600, Columbia, SC 29201. EMAIL: protest-ose@mso.sc.gov

*All questions & correspondence concerning this Invitation shall be addressed to the A/E.*

A/E NAME: SSEO | Stevens & Wilkinson

A/E CONTACT: Michael Delinsky

EMAIL: mdelinsky@sseo.com TELEPHONE: 803-576-5394

PRE-QUOTE CONFERENCE: Yes  No  DATE: 10/28/2021 TIME: 2:00PM

PRE-QUOTE CONFERENCE LOCATION: 1333 Main Street, Suite 400, Columbia, SC 29201

**QUOTE DELIVERY ADDRESSES:**

**HAND-DELIVERY:**

Attn: SCEL Procurement - Petrina F. Marsh, CPPB  
1333 Main Street, Suite 400 - 4<sup>th</sup> Floor Conference Room  
Columbia, SC 29201-3377

**MAIL SERVICE:**

Attn: SCEL Procurement - Petrina F. Marsh, CPPB  
PO Box 11949  
Columbia, SC 29211-1949

IS PROJECT WITHIN AGENCY CONSTRUCTION CERTIFICATION? (Agency MUST check one) Yes  No

APPROVED BY:  DATE: 10.19.21

(CSE Project Manager)



**SE-377**  
**MINOR CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT**

**AGENCY:** South Carolina Education Lottery

**PROJECT NAME:** 4<sup>th</sup> Floor Upfit/1333 Main Street

**PROJECT NUMBER:** Y20-N001-CB

THIS AGREEMENT is made this the \_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_ in the year Two Thousand \_\_\_\_ by and between

**NAME:** South Carolina Education Lottery

**ADDRESS:** 1333 Main Street, Suite 400  
Columbia, SC 29201

hereinafter called the "Agency", and

**NAME:** \_\_\_\_\_

**ADDRESS:** \_\_\_\_\_

hereinafter called the "Contractor."

WHEREAS, the Agency solicited for construction services, for the work description below:

**WORK DESCRIPTION:** Selective demolition and interior upfit of general office space and print room.

WHEREAS, Contractor submitted the lowest responsive and responsible quote to provide the services described above.

NOWHEREFORE, in consideration of the mutual covenants and obligations set forth herein, the Agency and Contractor (hereinafter jointly referred to as the "parties") agree as follows:

**1. CONTRACT TERMS AND EXTENSIONS:**

- 1.1 The effective date of this agreement shall be the date at the top of this page. The Date of Commencement of the Work shall be \_\_\_\_, 20\_\_ . The Contract Time is established as **120** calendar days and shall be measured from the Date of Commencement.
- 1.2 The Contractor agrees that the Agency shall be entitled to withhold or recover from the Contractor Liquidated Damages in the amount of **\$250.00** for each Calendar Day the Contractor fails to achieve Substantial Completion of the Work within the Contract Time specified or adjusted as provided in the Contract Documents.
- 1.3 The Agency shall pay the Contractor the Contract Sum in current funds for the Contractor's performance of the Contract. The Contract Sum shall be \_\_\_\_, subject to additions and deductions as provided in the Contract documents.
- 1.4 The Construction project is subject to the expenditure limits set forth in SC Code § 11-35-1550 and further explained in the Manual for Planning and Execution of State Permanent Improvements, (the "Manual"). The cost for the original scope of the Contract combined with any modification to the Contract purporting to exceed the limit of \$100,000 is null and void.

**2. CONTRACT DOCUMENTS:**

- 2.1 Documents forming a part of the contract are:
  - 2.1.1 This Minor Construction Contract (SE-377);
  - 2.1.2 Agency purchase requisition form dated \_\_\_\_; and any modifications issued by the Agency pursuant to this Contract,
  - 2.1.3 The following other documents:
    - Project Drawings & Specifications dated \_\_\_\_\_
    - \_\_\_\_\_
    - \_\_\_\_\_

- 2.2 The Contract is the entire and integrated agreement between the parties and supersedes prior negotiations, representations, or agreements, whether written or oral.
- 2.3 The Contract can only be modified by written agreement signed by both the Agency and the Contractor. The Contract Documents do not create a contractual relationship between the Contractor and any separate Contractor having a contract with the Agency; between the Agency and any subcontractor to the Contractor of any tier; or between any persons or entities other than the Agency and the Contractor.
- 2.4 The “Work” means the construction and services required by the Contract Documents, whether completed or partially completed, and includes all other labor, materials, equipment, and services provided or to be provided by the Contractor to fulfill the Contractor’s obligations. The Work may constitute the whole or a part of the Project.
- 2.5 The Drawings are the graphic and pictorial portions of the Contract Documents showing the design, location and dimensions of the Work, generally including plans, elevations, sections, details, schedules, and diagrams.
- 2.6 The Specifications are that portion of the Contract Documents consisting of the written requirements for materials, equipment, systems, standards and workmanship for the Work, and performance of related services.
- 2.7 Execution of the Contract by the Contractor is a representation that the Contractor has visited the site, become generally familiar with local conditions under which the Work is to be performed, and correlated personal observations with requirements of the Contract Documents.
  - 2.7.1 The Contractor acknowledges that it has investigated and satisfied itself as to the general and local conditions which can affect the work or its cost, including but not limited to (a) conditions bearing upon transportation, disposal, handling, and storage of materials; (b) the availability of labor, water, electric power, and roads; (c) uncertainties of weather, river stages, tides, or similar physical conditions at the site; (d) the conformation and conditions of the ground; and (e) the character of equipment and facilities needed preliminary to and during work performance.
  - 2.7.2 The Contractor also acknowledges that it has satisfied itself as to the character, quality, and quantity of surface and subsurface materials or obstacles to be encountered insofar as this information is reasonably ascertainable from an inspection of the site, including all exploratory work done by the Agency, as well as from the drawings and specifications made a part of this contract.
  - 2.7.3 Any failure of the Contractor to take the actions described and acknowledged in this Section will not relieve the Contractor from responsibility for estimating properly the difficulty and cost of successfully performing the work, or for proceeding to successfully perform the work without additional expense to the Agency.

**3. AGENCY**

- 3.1 The term “Agency” means the Agency or the Agency’s Representative. Agency designates the individual listed below as its Representative, which individual has the authority and responsibility to bind the Agency with respect to all matters regarding the Contract and requiring the Agency’s approval or authorization:

**NAME:** \_\_\_\_\_

**TITLE:** \_\_\_\_\_

**ADDRESS:** 1333 Main Street, Suite 400 \_\_\_\_\_

**TELEPHONE:** \_\_\_\_\_ **EMAIL:** \_\_\_\_\_

- 3.2 The Agency shall furnish, with reasonable promptness, information requested by the Contractor that is necessary for the performance of the Contract Services and under the Agency’s control. Any information or documentation provided by the Agency to the Contractor relating to the Project or Site is provided only for the convenience of the Contractor. The Agency makes no representation or warranty to as to the sufficiency, completeness, or accuracy of such information.
- 3.3 Utility Access and Use:
  - If this box is checked, the Agency shall allow the Contractor to use reasonable quantities of water and electricity for construction purposes without charge, as long as these utilities are available and in close proximity to the Work area. Contractor shall be conscientious in controlling excessive or frivolous use of the utilities or the Agency may charge the Contractor for wasteful usage.
- 3.4 Sanitary Facilities:
  - The Contractor may use those sanitary facilities designated by the Agency as available for use.
  - The Contractor may not use the Agency’s sanitary facilities. The Contractor shall provide sanitary facilities at the job site and maintain same in a clean and sanitary condition for the use of its employees and employees of its subcontractors for the duration of construction. The sanitary facilities shall conform to the requirements of the South Carolina Department of Health and Environmental Control.



- 3.5 Permits, Assessments, and Easements: The Agency shall secure and pay for all building permits, zoning permits, assessments, and easements except as required by the terms of the Contract.
- 3.6 Agency's Architect-Engineer (A/E): The Agency may retain an independent A/E to prepare design documents for the work. In such event, the A/E will be a representative of the Agency during the performance of such work through final completion of such work. In the absence of an independent A/E, the Agency will assign one of its employees to act as A/E for the work. The Contractor shall cooperate with the A/E in the performance of its duties.
- 3.7 Construction by Agency: The Agency may do work with its own forces or award separate contracts for work on the same project. The Contractor shall allow access to the site by the Agency's work force or separate Contractor(s) and shall cooperate in coordinating the progress of the work with the Agency. The Agency shall have the responsibility to coordinate the activities of the various Contractors working at the project location.

#### 4. CONTRACTOR

- 4.1 The term "Contractor" means the Contractor or the Contractor's Representative. Contractor designates the individual listed below as its Contractor's Representative, which individual has the authority and responsibility to bind the Contractor with respect to all matters regarding the Contract and requiring the Contractor's approval or authorization:  
**NAME:** \_\_\_\_\_  
**TITLE:** \_\_\_\_\_  
**ADDRESS:** \_\_\_\_\_  
**TELEPHONE:** \_\_\_\_\_ **EMAIL:** \_\_\_\_\_
- 4.2 Supervision and Performance of the Work: The Contractor shall supervise, perform, and direct the Work, using the professional skill, care, and attention reasonably required for similar projects. The Contractor shall be solely responsible for and have control over means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures and for coordinating the Work, unless the Contract Documents give other specific instructions concerning these matters. The Contractor agrees to faithfully and fully perform the terms of this Contract and shall complete the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents and deliver the Work to the Agency free and clear of all liens and claims. The Contractor shall, at all times during the progress of the Work, employ enough skilled workers and have on hand and maintain an adequate supply of materials and equipment to complete the Work in accordance with the agreed to construction schedules.
- 4.3 Employee Discipline: The Contractor shall enforce discipline and good order among the Contractor's and subcontractors' employees, and other persons carrying out the Work. Contractor shall be responsible to the Agency for acts and omissions of the Contractor's employees, subcontractors and their agents and employees, and other persons or entities performing portions of the Work for, or on behalf of, the Contractor or any of its Subcontractors.
- 4.4 Safety: The Contractor shall comply with all federal and state work site safety requirements and shall be responsible for initiating, maintaining, and supervising reasonable safety precautions and programs in connection with the performance of the Contract Services. The Contractor shall take reasonable precautions for safety of, and shall provide reasonable and appropriate protection to prevent damage, injury or loss to (1) employees on the Work and other persons who may be affected thereby; (2) the Work and materials and equipment to be incorporated therein; and (3) other property at the site of the Work or adjacent thereto.
- 4.5 Waste Materials and Rubbish: The Contractor shall keep the premises and surrounding areas free from accumulation of waste materials or rubbish caused by the Work. Upon Final Acceptance of the Work, the Contractor shall, to the Agency's satisfaction, remove from and about the site, all waste materials, rubbish, surplus material, and Contractor's tools, equipment, machinery.
- 4.6 Recycling: The Contractor shall give preference to the use of products containing recycled content in the performance of the Work. The Contractor shall cooperate with any recycling program established for the site of the work or available through the state or a political subdivision of the state.
- 4.7 Access to the Work: The Contractor shall provide the Agency with unrestricted access to the Work in preparation and progress wherever located.
- 4.8 Use of Site: The Contractor shall confine its operations to the portions of the site identified in the Drawings or otherwise approved by the Agency and shall not unreasonably encumber the portions of the site used for the Work with materials, equipment, or similar items. The Contractor and all subcontractors shall use only such entrances to the Site as are designated by the Agency. During occupied hours, Contractor shall limit construction operations to methods and procedures that do not adversely affect the environment of occupied spaces within the site, including but not limited to creating noise, odors, air pollution, ambient discomfort, or poor lighting.

- 4.9 Correction of the Work:
- 4.9.1 The Agency shall have the right and authority to reject Work that does not conform to the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall promptly correct Work rejected by the Agency for failing to conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents, whether or not fabricated, installed or completed. The provisions of this Section apply to Work done by subcontractors as well as to Work done by direct employees of the Contractor.
- 4.9.2 If the Contractor fails to correct the Work, or any portion thereof, that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents or fails to carry out Work or provide information in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Agency may make written demand upon the Contractor to cure its defaults within seven days. Within seven days after receipt of the Agency's demand, the Contractor shall cure its defaults unless the default is such that it is not capable of cure within seven days. If the default is such that it is not capable of cure within seven days, the Contractor shall reach an agreement with the Agency on a plan to cure its defaults within five days after receipt of the Agency's demand. The Contractor shall commence and diligently and continuously pursue the cure of such defaults in accordance with the agreed plan. If the Contractor fails to cure its defaults as heretofore provided, the Agency may order the Contractor, in writing, to stop the Work, or any portion thereof, until the Contractor has eliminated the cause for such order or has provided the Agency with a plan for corrective action acceptable to the Agency. The right of the Agency to stop the Work shall not give rise to a duty on the part of the Agency to exercise this right for the benefit of the Contractor or any other person or entity.
- 4.9.3 Correction after Substantial Completion: If, within one year after the date of Substantial Completion of the Work, any of the Work is found to be not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall correct it promptly after receipt of written notice from the Agency to do so. The Contractor's obligation set forth in this Section 4.9.3 is in addition to the Contractor's obligations under Section 4.11.
- 4.9.4 Nothing contained in this Section 4.9 shall be construed to establish a period of limitation with respect to other obligations the Contractor has under the Contract Documents. Establishment of such time period as described in this Section 4.9 relates only to the specific obligation of the Contractor to correct the Work, and has no relationship to the time within which the obligation to comply with the Contract Documents may be sought to be enforced, nor to the time within which proceedings may be commenced to establish the Contractor's liability with respect to the Contractor's obligations other than specifically to correct the Work.
- 4.10 Manufacturers' Warranties: At Final Completion of the Work, the Contractor shall furnish the Agency two original complete sets of all manufacturers' warranties, guarantees, parts lists, and literature applicable to equipment, systems, fittings, and furnishings included in the Work (collectively referred to as "*Manufacturers' Warranties*"), completed in favor of the Agency. These Manufacturers' Warranties are in addition to and not in lieu of the Contractor's warranty set forth in Section 4.11, and the Agency is entitled to look to the Contractor for remedy in all cases where the Contractor's warranty applies regardless of whether a Manufacturer's Warranty also applies. The Agency shall acknowledge receipt of the sets of Manufacturers' Warranties on the set itself, and the Contractor shall cause six (6) copies of an acknowledged set to be made and furnished to the Agency. All Manufacturers' Warranties will be for applicable periods and contain terms not less favorable to the Agency than those terms that are standard for the applicable industries and will either be issued in the first instance in the name of and for benefit of the Agency or be in a freely assignable form and be assigned to the Agency without limitations.
- 4.11 Contractor Warranty: The Contractor warrants to the Agency that materials and equipment furnished under the Contract will be of good quality and new unless otherwise required or permitted by the Contract Documents, that the Work will be free from faults and defects not inherent in the quality required or permitted, that the materials, equipment and Work will conform with the requirements of the Contract Documents, and that the Work will be free from any encumbrances, liens, security interests, or other defects in title upon conveyance of title to the Agency. The Contractor's warranty excludes remedy for damage or defect to the extent caused by (i) abuse by anyone other than the Contractor or those for whose acts the Contractor is responsible, (ii) modifications not approved or executed by the Contractor or subcontractors, (iii) improper or insufficient maintenance or operation not the fault of the Contractor or those for whose acts the Contractor is responsible, or (iv) normal wear and tear under normal usage. If required by the Agency, the Contractor shall furnish satisfactory evidence as to the kind and quality of materials and equipment and the recommended maintenance thereto to meet the requirements of this Section.
- 4.12 After completion of the Work but no later than the date of Substantial Completion, the Contractor shall submit operation and maintenance manuals, recommended spare parts lists, and copies of all warranties to the Agency. As-Built drawings shall be submitted no later than the Final Completion Date.
- 4.13 Compliance with Law:
- 4.13.1 The Contractor shall comply with and give all notices required by federal, state, county, and municipal laws, ordinances, regulations, and orders bearing on the performance by the Contractor of the duties or responsibilities under this Contract.

- 4.13.2 The Contractor shall promptly remedy any violation of any such law, ordinance, rule, regulation, or order that comes to its attention to the extent that the same results from its performance of the Work. The Contractor shall promptly, and in no event later than the close of the next business day following receipt, give notice to the Agency by telephone, with confirmation in writing, of receipt by the Contractor of any information relating to violations of laws, ordinances, rules, regulations, and orders.
- 4.14 Subcontractors:
- 4.14.1 The Contractor shall furnish in writing to the Agency for its approval the names of the subcontractors to whom the Contractor plans to award any portion of the Contract Services.
- 4.14.2 Contracts between the Contractor and subcontractors shall require each subcontractor, to the extent of the Contract Services to be performed by the subcontractor, to be bound to the Contractor by the terms of the Contract Documents, and to assume toward the Contractor all the obligations and responsibilities which the Contractor, by the Contract Documents, assumes toward the Agency.
- 4.14.3 The Contractor shall be responsible to the Agency for acts and omissions of the subcontractors, their agents and employees, and any other persons performing portions of the Contract Services, to the same extent as the acts or omissions of the Contractor hereunder.
- 4.15 Publicity: Contractor shall not publish any comments or quotes by State employees or include the State in either news releases or a published list of agencies, without the prior written approval of the Agency.
- 4.16 Indemnification
- 4.16.1 To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless the Agency and the Agency's agents and employees from and against claims, damages, losses and expenses, including, but not limited to, reasonable attorney's fees, arising out of or resulting from performance of the Work, provided that such claim, damage, loss or expense is attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease or death, or to injury to or destruction of tangible property (other than the Work itself), including loss of use resulting therefrom, but only to the extent caused by negligent acts or omissions of the Contractor, a subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, regardless of whether or not such claim, damage, loss or expense is caused in part by a party indemnified hereunder.
- 4.16.2 In claims against any person or entity indemnified under Section 4.16.1 by an employee of the Contractor, a subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, the indemnification obligation under this Section 4.16 shall not be limited by a limitation on amount or type of damages, compensation or benefits payable by or for Contractor or a subcontractor under workers' or workmen's compensation acts, disability benefit acts, or other employee benefit acts.
- 4.17 Shop Drawings and Samples:
- 4.17.1 Contractor shall prepare or cause to be prepared shop drawings for fabricated items. Shop drawings shall consist of drawings, diagrams, illustrations, schedules, brochures, and other data which are prepared by the Contractor, sub-Contractor, manufacturer, supplier, or distributor and depict that portion of the work. Shop drawings shall be submitted, reviewed, and approved by the Contractor prior to submitting to the Agency and A/E. Shop drawings approved by the Contractor shall bear a stamp denoting that they have been review and are "approved" or "approved as noted" or similar designation. Contractor shall submit the number of sets as specified in the plans or specifications or in the absence of a specification submit enough copies for the Agency to retain two copies plus the number desired to be returned to the Contractor. The Agency and A/E will review the shop drawings with reasonable promptness but only for conformity with the design.
- 4.17.2 Contractor shall submit samples as required by the Drawings and Specifications. Samples are physical examples furnished by the Contractor of sufficient size and quantity to provide a good representation of the material proposed to be installed. Samples submitted will not be returned unless requested by Contractor and agreed to by the A/E. The Contractor shall pay shipping costs. The final installed product shall match the approved sample.
- 4.18 Inspection and Testing of Materials:
- 4.18.1 The Contractor shall leave uncovered all areas of work that will be covered that are called out in the construction documents to be left uncovered, or the Agency or A/E requests to be left uncovered prior to being inspected. The Contractor shall give adequate notice to the Agency and A/E of the time requested for an inspection of areas to be covered.
- 4.18.2 If the Contractor covers areas that were to be left uncovered, the Contractor shall cause the area to be uncovered for inspection. After being inspected, the Contractor shall repair the area with craftsmen skilled in the appropriate trades needed for the repair at no additional cost to the Agency.

- 4.19 Substitutions:
- 4.19.1 The Contractor shall submit proposed substitutions to the Agency for the Agency's approval prior to execution of the Work.
- 4.19.2 Reference in the Contract Documents to a designated material, product, thing, or service by specific brand or trade name followed by the words "or equal" and "or approved equal" shall be interpreted as establishing a standard of quality and shall not be construed as limiting competition. The Contractor may use the products of other another manufacturer provided it is an 'approved equal' that meets or exceeds the specification for the specified product. The Contractor must submit adequate information about the product to show that the submitted product meets the level of quality as the product specified.
- 4.19.3 The Contractor shall not substitute any product, article, appliance, equipment, or material that is specified without prior written approval of the Agency.
- 4.20 Receiving and Storing Materials and Equipment: The Contractor shall have an authorized person or persons to receive all items delivered to the site of the Work and shall properly unload, check for completeness of shipment, and in-transit damage. The Contractor shall properly handle and store materials, supplies, equipment etc. in accordance with the Contract documents or manufacturer's printed instructions for each product.
- 4.21 Schedule and Reports: Promptly after the award of the Contract, the Contractor shall present a construction schedule in a form satisfactory to the Agency. The schedule shall not exceed the time limits current under the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall update the schedule at appropriate intervals as required by the conditions of the Work, showing the actual progress of the Work and adjustment in completion dates. If the Work falls behind schedule, the Contractor shall present a plan for completion of the Work by the scheduled date for completion.
- 4.22 Time for Completion:
- 4.22.1 If the Contractor is delayed at any time in the commencement or progress of the Work, the Contractor shall make a request for extension of time within seven days of the event giving rise to the request. The Contractor shall adequately document delays of the work that are due to circumstances beyond the control of the Contractor and shall submit the documentation to the Agency with a request for an extension. In the event of ongoing delay, the Contractor shall notify the Agency in its request for an extension of time that the cause of delay is ongoing. In such case, the Contractor shall supplement its request when the cause of delay ends or the project is completed, whichever is sooner.
- 4.22.2 The Agency will review each request for time extension and equitably adjust the time for completion where (1) the event of delay actually impacted the critical path of the project and was beyond the control of the Contractor, and (2) completion of the Work was actually delayed.

## 5. INSURANCE AND BONDS

- 5.1 Commercial General Liability, Business Automobile Liability, and Worker's Compensation: The Contractor shall purchase from and maintain, in a company or companies lawfully authorized to do business in South Carolina, such insurance as will protect Contractor from claims set forth below, which may arise out of or result from Contractor's operations and completed operations under the Contract and for which the Contractor may be legally liable, whether such operations be by the Contractor or by a subcontractor or by anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them, or by anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable:
- a. claims under workers' compensation, disability benefit and other similar employee benefit acts which are applicable to the Work to be performed;
  - b. claims for damages because of bodily injury, occupational sickness or disease, or death of the Contractor's employees;
  - c. claims for damages because of bodily injury, sickness or disease, or death of any person other than the Contractor's employees;
  - d. claims for damages insured by usual personal injury liability coverage;
  - e. claims for damages, other than to the Work itself, because of injury to or destruction of tangible property, including loss of use resulting therefrom;
  - f. claims for damages because of bodily injury, death of a person or property damage arising out of ownership, maintenance or use of a motor vehicle;
  - g. claims for bodily injury or property damage arising out of completed operations; and
  - h. claims involving contractual liability insurance applicable to the Contractor's obligations under Section 3.17, Indemnification.

5.1.1 The insurance required by Section 5.1 shall be written for not less than the limits of liability specified below or required by law, whichever is greater. Coverage shall be written on an occurrence basis and shall be maintained without interruption from the date of commencement of the Work until date of final payment and termination of any coverage required to be maintained after final payment and, with respect to the Contractor’s completed operations coverage, until the expiration of the period for correction of Work set forth in Section 4.9 or for such other period for maintenance of completed operations coverage as specified in the Contract Documents.

a. COMMERCIAL GENERAL LIABILITY:

- (1) General Aggregate (per project)..... \$1,000,000
- (2) Products/Completed Operations..... \$1,000,000
- (3) Personal and Advertising Injury..... \$1,000,000
- (4) Each Occurrence ..... \$1,000,000
- (5) Fire Damage (Any one fire)..... \$50,000
- (6) Medical Expense (Any one person) ..... \$5,000

b. BUSINESS AUTO LIABILITY (including All Owned, Non-owned, and Hired Vehicles):

- (1) Combined Single Limit .....\$1,000,000 OR
- (2) Bodily Injury & Property Damage (each) ..... \$750,000

c. WORKER’S COMPENSATION:

- (1) State Statutory
- (2) Employers Liability .....\$100,000 per Acc.  

\$500,000 Disease, Policy Limit

\$100,000 Disease, Each Employee

In lieu of separate insurance policies for Commercial General Liability, Business Auto Liability, and Employers Liability, the Contractor may provide an umbrella policy meeting or exceeding all coverage requirements set forth in this Section 5.1. The umbrella policy limits shall not be less than \$5,000,000.

5.1.2 Prior to commencement of the Work, and thereafter upon replacement of each required policy of insurance, Contractor shall provide to the Agency a written endorsement to the Contractor’s general liability insurance policy that:

- a. names the Agency as an additional insured for claims caused in whole or in part by the Contractor’s negligent acts or omissions during the Contractor’s operations;
- b. provides that no material alteration, cancellation, non-renewal, or expiration of the coverage contained in such policy shall have effect unless all additional insured have been given at least ten (10) days prior written notice of cancellation for non-payment of premiums and thirty (30) days prior written notice of cancellation for any other reason; and
- c. provides that the Contractor’s liability insurance policy shall be primary, with any liability insurance of the Agency as secondary and noncontributory.

5.1.3 Before commencement of the Work, and thereafter upon renewal or replacement of each required policy of insurance, Contractor shall provide to the Agency a signed, original certificate of liability insurance (ACORD 25). Consistent with this Section 5.1, the certificate shall identify the types of insurance, state the limits of liability for each type of coverage, name the Agency as Certificate Holder, provide that the general aggregate limit applies per project, and provide that coverage is written on an occurrence basis. Both the certificates and the endorsements must be received directly from either the Contractor’s insurance agent or the insurance company. An additional certificate evidencing continuation of liability coverage, including coverage for completed operations, naming the Agency as an additional insured for claims made under the Contractor’s completed operations, and otherwise meeting the above requirements, shall be submitted with the Contractor’s final request for payment for the Work and thereafter upon renewal or replacement of such coverage until the expiration of the time required by Section 5.1. Information concerning reduction of coverage on account of revised limits or claims paid under the General Aggregate, or both, shall be furnished by the Contractor with reasonable promptness.

5.1.4 A failure by the Agency either (i) to demand a certificate of insurance or written endorsement required by Section 5.1, or (ii) to reject a certificate or endorsement on the grounds that it fails to comply with Section 5.1, shall not be considered a waiver of Contractor’s obligations to obtain the required insurance.

## 5.2 Property Insurance:

If this box is checked, Contractor shall provide the following:

- 5.2.1 **Builder's Risk Insurance:** Contractor shall purchase property insurance written on a builder's risk "all risk" or equivalent policy form on a replacement cost basis. Contractor shall maintain such property insurance until the Agency has made final payment for the Work or until no person or entity other than the Agency has an insurable interest in the property required by this Section 5.2 to be covered, whichever is later. This insurance shall include and be in an amount sufficient to cover at all times during the performance of the Work, the interests of the Contractor, Subcontractors and Sub-subcontractors in the Project. The property insurance shall include, without limitation, insurance against the perils of fire (with extended coverage) and physical loss or damage including, without duplication of coverage, theft, vandalism, malicious mischief, collapse, earthquake, flood, windstorm, false work, testing and startup, temporary buildings and debris removal including demolition occasioned by enforcement of any applicable legal requirements, and shall cover reasonable compensation for Architect's and Contractor's services and expenses required as a result of such insured loss.
- 5.2.2 **Equipment Breakdown Insurance:** In the event the Contractor installs and runs and/or operates (whether for testing or other purposes) heating, air conditioning, and electrical machinery and equipment, the Contractor shall purchase and maintain equipment breakdown (boiler and machinery) insurance, which shall specifically cover such objects during installation and until final acceptance by the Agency. This insurance shall include interests of the Agency, Contractor, and subcontractors at any tier in the Work, and the Agency and Contractor shall both be named insured.
- 5.2.3 Before an exposure to loss may occur, the Contractor shall file with the Agency a copy of each policy that includes insurance coverage required by this Section 5.2. Each policy shall contain all generally applicable conditions, definitions, exclusions and endorsements related to this Project.
- 5.2.4 **Waiver of Subrogation:** The Agency and Contractor waive all rights against (1) each other and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents and employees, each of the other, for damages caused by fire or other causes of loss to the extent the property insurance provided by the Contractor pursuant to this Section 5.2 covers and pays for the damage, except such rights as they have to proceeds of such insurance held by the Contractor. The Agency or Contractor, as appropriate, shall require of the subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents and employees, each of the other, by appropriate written agreements, similar waivers each in favor of other parties enumerated herein. The policies shall provide such waivers of subrogation by endorsement or otherwise. A waiver of subrogation shall be effective as to a person or entity even though that person or entity would otherwise have a duty of indemnification, contractual or otherwise, did not pay the insurance premium directly or indirectly, and whether or not the person or entity had an insurable interest in the property damaged.

## 5.3 Performance and Payment Bonds:

If this box is checked, prior to beginning work, the Contractor shall deliver to the Agency a Performance Bond and a Labor & Material Payment Bond. Each bond shall be in the amount of 100% of the Contract Sum. The Contractor's Performance Bond shall be in the form of the SE-355, Performance Bond, and the Labor & Material Payment Bond shall be in the form of the SE-357, Labor & Material Payment Bond. The surety company providing the Bonds shall have, at a minimum, a "Best Rating" of "A" as stated in the most current publication of "Best's Key Rating Guide, Property - Casualty." Contractor's failure to provide bonds as herein required shall be an event of default justifying the Agency, in its sole discretion, in terminating this Contract for cause.

## 6. CONTRACT ADMINISTRATION

### 6.1 Changes in the Work:

- 6.1.1 Any changes in the work must be approved by the Agency and executed by a modification to the Agency purchase requisition form. The modification must be signed by the Contractor and Agency.
- 6.1.2 At the Agency's request, the Contractor shall prepare a proposal to perform the work of a proposed modification setting forth the amount of the proposed adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum; and the extent of the proposed adjustment, if any, in the Contract Time. The Agency's request shall include any revisions to the Drawings or Specifications necessary to define the changes in the Work. Within fifteen days of receiving the request, the Contractor shall submit the proposal to the Agency and Architect along with all substantiating documentation.
- 6.1.3 In the absence of a total agreement concerning the item(s) for a contract modification, a Construction Change Directive shall be used.

#### 6.1.4 Agreed Overhead and Profit Rates:

For any adjustment to the Contract Sum for which overhead and profit may be recovered, the Contractor agrees to charge and accept, as full payment for overhead and profit, the following percentages of costs attributable to the change in the Work. The percentages cited below shall be considered to include all indirect costs including, but not limited to: field and office managers, supervisors and assistants, incidental job burdens, small tools, and general overhead allocations. The allowable percentages for overhead and profit are as follows:

- a. To the Contractor for work performed by the Contractor's own forces, 17% of the Contractor's actual costs.
- b. To each Subcontractor for work performed by the Subcontractor's own forces, 17% of the subcontractor's actual costs.
- c. To the Contractor for work performed by a subcontractor, 10% of the subcontractor's actual costs (not including the subcontractor's overhead and profit).

#### 6.2 Payments:

- 6.2.1 Contractor may submit monthly applications for payment for the Work scheduled to last two months or more in duration. Contractor shall submit only one application for payment for the Work scheduled to last less than two months in duration.
- 6.2.2 If the Contractor intends to submit more than one application for payment, the Contractor shall submit to the A/E, within ten days of Contract award, a schedule of values allocating the entire Contract Sum to the various portions of the Work and prepared in such form and supported by such data to substantiate its accuracy as the A/E may require. This schedule, unless objected to by the A/E, shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's Applications for Payment. Contractor shall base its monthly applications for payment on work completed up to the date of the application using the approved schedule of values. The sum of all payments to the Contractor shall not exceed the agreed upon cost of the work set forth in the Minor Construction Contract as adjusted by subsequent modifications to the Contract, if any.
- 6.2.3 Contractor's applications for payment may include materials suitably stored on site for use in the Work provided the Contractor submits:
  - a. Proof of purchase & delivery;
  - b. Documentation showing the location of the material;
  - c. Certificate of insurance for the material with adequate coverage showing the Agency as the certificate holder.
- 6.2.4 The Agency will make payments to the Contractor for completed work based on the actual units or quantity of work completed. The Agency will make payments on the undisputed amounts of an application for payment within 21 days of receipt of the application.
- 6.2.5 Subcontractor Payments (Chapter 6 of Title 29 of the South Carolina Code of Laws, as amended): The Contractor shall pay each subcontractor no later than seven (7) days after receipt of payment from the Agency the amount to which the subcontractor is entitled, reflecting percentages actually retained from payments to the Contractor on account of the subcontractor's portion of the Work. By appropriate agreement with its subcontractors, the Contractor shall require each subcontractor to make payments to Sub-subcontractors in a similar manner.
- 6.2.6 If the Agency does not pay the Contractor within seven (7) days after the time established in Section 6.2.4 the undisputed amount of a payment request, then upon seven (7) additional days written notice to the Agency, the Contractor may stop the Work until the Contractor has received payment of the undisputed amount owing. The Contract Time and the Contract Sum shall be equitably adjusted by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable costs of shut down, delay and start-up, plus interest as provided for in the Contract Documents.
- 6.2.7 Retainage: The Agency, at its option, may withhold retainage as provided in SC Code § 11-35-3030(4).
- 6.2.8 Final Payment: Upon final payment by the Agency to the Contractor for the Work, all rights, title, and interest in and to all improvements and equipment constructed or installed on the premises shall vest in the Agency at no additional cost, free and clear of all any liens and encumbrances created or caused by the Contractor.
- 6.2.9 Withholding of Payments: Payments may be withheld to the extent of, and on account of:
  - a. defective Work not remedied, or Work not performed in accordance with the Contract Documents;
  - b. claims filed by third parties;
  - c. failure of the Contractor to make payments promptly to the subcontractors for labor, materials, or equipment;
  - d. persistent failure to carry perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents;

- e. failure by the Contractor to perform its obligations under the Contract Documents; or
- f. a default by the Contractor under the Contract Documents.

The Agency shall promptly notify the Contractor of any reason for withholding payment.

- 6.3 Completion and Closeout: Upon Final Completion of all Work, the Contractor shall notify the Agency of its completion. The Agency shall schedule a Final Inspection and allow the Contractor to demonstrate that all equipment and systems operate as designed. The Agency may elect to have other persons, firms or agencies participate in the inspections. Projects exceeding the Agency's construction procurement certification level shall require an inspection by the Office of State Engineer (OSE) and the State Engineer's issuance of a Certificate of Occupancy. (The Contractor may find Agency construction certification limits on Procurement Services website at <https://procurement.sc.gov/agency/audits/cert-limits>) Final payment will not be due nor retained funds released until:
- a. the Agency agrees that the project is complete;
  - b. OSE or the Agency, which ever has authority, issues a Certificate of Occupancy (SE-585); and
  - c. the Agency receives from the Contractor the following:
    - (1) Affidavit of payment of debts and claims;
    - (2) Consent of Surety, if any, to final payment.

## 7. DISPUTE RESOLUTION

- 7.1 Both parties shall attempt to resolve disputes through good faith negotiations.
- 7.2 All disputes, claims, or controversies relating to the Contract, that cannot be resolved through good faith negotiations between the parties shall be resolved exclusively by the appropriate Chief Procurement Officer in accordance with Title 11, Chapter 35, Article 17 of the South Carolina Code of Laws, or in the absence of jurisdiction, only in the Court of Common Pleas for, or a federal court located in, Richland County, State of South Carolina. Contractor agrees that any act by the State regarding the Contract is not a waiver of either the State's sovereign immunity or the State's immunity under the Eleventh Amendment of the United States Constitution. As used herein, "the State" includes the Agency and the State Fiscal Accountability Authority.
- 7.3 Interest: Payments due to the Contractor and unpaid under the Contract Documents shall bear interest only if and to the extent allowed by Title 29, Chapter 6, Article 1 of the South Carolina Code of Laws. Amounts due to the Agency shall bear interest at the rate of one percent a month or a pro rata fraction thereof on the unpaid balance as may be due.
- 7.4 Contractor consents that any papers, notices, or process necessary or proper for the initiation or continuation of any claims or controversies relating to the Contract; for any court action in connection therewith; or for the entry of judgment on any award made, may be served on Contractor by certified mail (return receipt requested) addressed to Contractor at the address provided for the Contractor's Representative or by personal service or by any other manner that is permitted by law, in or outside South Carolina. Notice by certified mail is deemed duly given upon deposit in the United States mail.
- 7.5 Continuation of Work: Pending final resolution of any dispute under this Contract, the Contractor will proceed diligently with the performance of its duties and obligations under the Contract Documents, and the Agency will continue to make payments of undisputed amounts in accordance with the Contract Documents.

## 8. LIMITATION OF LIABILITY

- 8.1 Notwithstanding any other provision of the Contract Documents, but subject to a duty of good faith and fair dealing, the Contractor and Agency waive Claims against each other for listed damages arising out of or relating to this Contract. This mutual waiver includes:
- 8.1.1 For the Agency, listed damages are (i) lost revenue and profit, (ii) losses resulting from injury to business or reputation, (iii) additional or escalated overhead and administration expenses, (iv) additional financing costs, (v) costs suffered by a third party unable to commence work, (vi) reasonable attorney's fees, (vii) any interest, except to the extent allowed by Section 6.3 (Interest), (viii) lost revenue and profit for lost use of the property, (ix) costs resulting from lost productivity or efficiency, and (x) damages incurred by the Agency for rental expenses, for losses of use, income, profit, financing, business and reputation, and for loss of management or employee productivity or of the services of such persons; and
- 8.1.2 For the Contractor, listed damages are (i) lost revenue and profit, (ii) losses resulting from injury to business or reputation, (iii) additional or escalated overhead and administration expenses, (iv) additional financing costs, (v) reasonable attorney's fees, (vi) any interest, except to the extent allowed by Section 6.3 (Interest); (vii) unamortized equipment costs; and (viii) losses incurred by subcontractors for the types of damages the Contractor has waived as against the Agency.



- 8.2 This mutual waiver is applicable, without limitation, to all listed damages due to either party's termination in accordance with Section 11. Nothing contained in this Section 8 shall be deemed to preclude an award of liquidated damages, when applicable, in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents. This mutual waiver is not applicable to amounts due or obligations under Section 4.16 (Indemnification).

## 9. HAZARDOUS MATERIALS

- 9.1 Contractor's Responsibilities with Respect to Hazardous Materials:
- 9.1.1 The Contractor is responsible for compliance with any requirements included in the Contract Documents regarding hazardous materials or substances. If the Contractor encounters a hazardous material or substance which was not discoverable as provided in Section 2.7 and not addressed in the Contract Documents, and if reasonable precautions will be inadequate to prevent foreseeable bodily injury or death to persons or serious loss to real or personal property resulting from such a material or substance encountered on the site by the Contractor, the Contractor shall, upon recognizing the condition, immediately stop Work in the affected area and notify the Agency of the condition. Hazardous materials or substances are those hazardous, toxic, or radioactive materials or substances subject to regulations by applicable governmental authorities having jurisdiction, such as, but not limited to, the S.C. Department of Health and Environmental Control, the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, and the U.S. Nuclear Regulatory Commission.
- 9.1.2 Upon receipt of the Contractor's notice, the Agency shall obtain the services of a licensed laboratory to verify the presence or absence of the material or substance reported by the Contractor and, in the event such material or substance is found to be present, to cause it to be rendered harmless. When the material or substance has been rendered harmless, Work in the affected area shall resume upon written agreement of the Agency and Contractor. By Change Order, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately, and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable additional costs of shutdown, delay, and start-up.
- 9.2 Hazardous Materials Introduced to the Site by Contractor: If the Contractor, its subcontractors, and any party for whom they may be liable, introduces any Hazardous Materials to the Site then the Contractor, at its sole cost and expense, shall be responsible for any response, removal, cleanup, and/or other remedial action required by applicable law. If any Mold occurs within the Site as the result of the negligent implementation of the Project or the improper functioning of the Conservation Measures, then the Contractor, at its sole cost and expense, shall be responsible for any response, removal, cleanup, or other remedial action required by applicable law. Except as to the Contractor's initial response to an emergency, any such remedial action(s) shall require the prior review and approval of the Agency.

## 10. MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

- 10.1 Governing Law: This Contract shall be governed by the laws of South Carolina, except its choice of law rules.
- 10.2 Severability: If any provision of this Contract shall be held to be invalid, illegal, or unenforceable, the validity, legality and enforceability of the remaining provisions shall not be affected or impaired thereby.
- 10.3 No Waiver: No course of dealing or failure of the Agency and/or the Contractor to enforce strictly any term, right or condition of this Contract shall be construed as a waiver of such term, right or condition. No express waiver of any term, right, or condition of this Contract shall operate as a waiver of any other term, right, or condition.
- 10.4 Rights Cumulative: Except as otherwise provided in this Contract, (i) rights and remedies available to the Agency and/or the Contractor as set forth in this Contract shall be cumulative with and in addition to, and not in limitation of, any other rights or remedies available to the Parties at law and/or in equity, and (ii) any specific right or remedy conferred upon or reserved to the Agency and/or the Contractor in any provision of this Contract shall not preclude the concurrent or consecutive exercise of a right or remedy provided for in any other provision hereof.
- 10.5 Notices: Any notices required to be given under this Contract shall be in writing and shall be delivered either by (i) certified mail, return receipt requested, in which case notice shall be deemed delivered three (3) business days after deposit, postage prepaid, in the U.S. mail; (ii) a reputable messenger service or a nationally recognized overnight courier, in which case notice shall be deemed delivered one (1) business day after deposit with such messenger or courier; or (iii) personal delivery with receipt acknowledged in writing, in which case notice shall be deemed delivered when received. All notices shall be sent to the representatives identified in the Part G of the Agreement at the addresses provided therein. The foregoing addresses may be changed from time to time by notice to the other Party in the manner herein provided for.

- 10.6 Economic Conflict of Interest: A Contractor shall not have or exercise any official responsibility regarding a public contract in which the Contractor, or a business with which he is associated, has an economic interest. A person working for Contractor shall not have or exercise any official responsibility regarding a public contract in which the person, an individual with whom he is associated, or his family members have an economic interest. If Contractor is asked by any person to violate, or does violate, either of these restrictions, Contractor shall immediately communicate such information to the Agency Representative. The State may rescind, and recover any amount expended as a result of, any action taken, or contract entered in violation of this provision. The terms “business with which he is associated,” “economic interest,” “family member,” “immediate family,” “individual with whom he is associated,” “official responsibility” and “person” have the meanings provided in SC Code § 8-13-100.
- 10.7 Illegal Immigration: Contractor certifies and agrees that it will comply with the applicable requirements of Title 8, Chapter 14 of the South Carolina Code of Laws and agrees to provide to the State upon request any documentation required to establish either: (a) that Title 8, Chapter 14 is inapplicable both to Contractor and its subcontractors or sub-subcontractors; or (b) that Contractor and its subcontractors or sub-subcontractors are in compliance with Title 8, Chapter 14. Pursuant to SC Code § 8-14-60, “A person who knowingly makes or files any false, fictitious, or fraudulent document, statement, or report pursuant to this chapter is guilty of a felony and, upon conviction, must be fined within the discretion of the court or imprisoned for not more than five years, or both.” Contractor agrees to include in any contracts with its subcontractors language requiring its subcontractors to (a) comply with the applicable requirements of Title 8, Chapter 14, and (b) include in their contracts with the sub-subcontractors language requiring the sub-subcontractors to comply with the applicable requirements of Title 8, Chapter 14. (An overview is available at [www.procurement.sc.gov](http://www.procurement.sc.gov))
- 10.8 Drug-Free Workplace: The Contractor certifies to the Agency that Contractor will provide a Drug-Free Workplace, as required by Title 44, Chapter 107 of the South Carolina Code of Laws, as amended.
- 10.9 False Claims: According to the SC Code § 16-13-240, “a person who by false pretense or representation obtains the signature of a person to a written instrument or obtains from another person any chattel, money, valuable security, or other property, real or personal, with intent to cheat and defraud a person of that property is guilty” of a crime.
- 10.10 Non-Indemnification: Any term or condition is void to the extent it requires the State to indemnify anyone. It is unlawful for a person charged with disbursements of state funds appropriated by the General Assembly to exceed the amounts and purposes stated in the appropriations (SC Code § 11-9-20). It is unlawful for an authorized public officer to enter into a contract for a purpose in which the sum is in excess of the amount appropriated for that purpose. It is unlawful for an authorized public officer to divert or appropriate the funds arising from any tax levied and collected for any one fiscal year to the payment of an indebtedness contracted or incurred for a previous year. (SC Code § 11-1-40)
- 10.11 Enforcement and Interpretation of Building Codes: As required by SC Code § 10-1-180), OSE shall determine the enforcement and interpretation of all building codes and referenced standards on state buildings. The Contractor shall refer any questions, comments, or directives from local officials to the Agency and OSE for resolution. When the amount of the contract exceeds the construction procurement certification of the Agency, the Contractor shall not commence the Work before receiving a copy of the Building permit issued by OSE. (The Contractor may find Agency construction certification limits on Procurement Services website at <https://procurement.sc.gov/agency/audits/cert-limits>)
- 10.12 Assignment: The Agency and Contractor respectively bind themselves, their partners, successors, assigns, and legal representatives to covenants, agreements and obligations contained in this Contract. Neither party to the Contract shall assign the Contract as a whole, or in part, without written consent of the other and then only in accordance with and as permitted by SC Regulation 19-445.2180. If either party attempts to make such an assignment without such consent, that party shall nevertheless remain legally responsible for all obligations under the Contract.
- 10.13 Open Trade: During the Contract term, including any renewals or extensions, Contractor will not engage in the boycott of a person or an entity based in or doing business with a jurisdiction with whom South Carolina can enjoy open trade, as defined in SC Code § 11-35-5300.

## 11. SUSPENSION OR TERMINATION

- 11.1 Agency Right of Suspension: The Agency may, at any time, suspend the work, in whole or in part, with or without cause for such period of time as determined by the Agency. Except in the event of suspension due to a default of the Contractor, the Contract sum will be equitably adjusted to reflect reasonable costs actually incurred by the Contractor due to delay or interruption resulting from such suspension.

11.2 Agency Right of Termination:

11.2.1 Termination for Cause: If the Contractor defaults, persistently fails or neglects to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents, or fails to perform a provision of the Contract, the Agency shall provide written notice of such default, failure, or neglect to the Contractor. If the Contractor fails to cure such default, failure, or neglect within fifteen days from receipt of the Agency’s notice, the Agency may, without prejudice to any other right or remedy the Agency may have, terminate the Contract and take possession of the area at the Site affected by the Work.

11.2.2 Termination for Convenience: The Agency may, for its convenience, terminate all or any portion of the Work, or terminate this entire Contract, by ten (10) days written notice stating the effective date of the termination. Thereafter, the Agency shall pay the Contractor for Work actually performed before the date of termination. No payments shall be made for Work not actually performed, and no payment shall be made or due for lost profits on account of Work not performed.

11.3 Contractor Right of Termination:

11.3.1 The Contractor may terminate the Contract if work is stopped through no fault of the Contractor, or other persons performing work either directly or indirectly for the Contractor, for a period of time exceeding 60 consecutive calendar days due to a court order or other public authority having jurisdiction; or a Declared National emergency which requires the work to be stopped.

11.3.2 Agency Failure to Make Payment: Subject to the Agency’s right to withhold payments pursuant to Section 6.2.9, if the Agency fails to make payments to the Contractor as set forth in Section 6.2 and any other applicable provisions of the Contract Documents, the Contractor may, upon thirty (30) days’ prior written notice to the Agency, terminate the Contract and recover from the Agency payment for all Work performed and for proven loss with respect to materials, equipment, tools, and machinery, including reasonable overhead, profit and damages applicable to the Work for the Contract Services performed through the date thereof.

---

**AGENCY:**

**CONTRACTOR:**

**BY:** \_\_\_\_\_  
*(Signature of Representative)*

**BY:** \_\_\_\_\_  
*(Signature of Representative)*

**PRINT NAME:** \_\_\_\_\_

**PRINT NAME:** \_\_\_\_\_

**PRINT TITLE:** \_\_\_\_\_

**PRINT TITLE:** \_\_\_\_\_

**DATE:** \_\_\_\_\_

**DATE:** \_\_\_\_\_



**SE-355**

**PERFORMANCE BOND**

**KNOW ALL MEN BY THESE PRESENTS**, that *(Insert full name or legal title and address of Contractor)*

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

hereinafter referred to as "Contractor", and *(Insert full name and address of principal place of business of Surety)*

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

hereinafter called the "surety", are jointly and severally held and firmly bound unto *(Insert full name and address of Agency)*

Name: South Carolina Education Lottery

Address: 1333 Main Street, 4<sup>th</sup> Floor

Columbia, SC 29201

hereinafter referred to as "Agency", or its successors or assigns, the sum of \_\_\_\_\_ (\$ \_\_\_\_\_), being the sum of the Bond to which payment to be well and truly made, the Contractor and Surety bind themselves, their heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents.

**WHEREAS**, Contractor has by written agreement dated \_\_\_\_\_ entered into a contract with Agency to construct

State Project Name: South Carolina Education Lottery

State Project Number: Y20-N001-CB

Brief Description of Awarded Work: Selective demolition and interior upfit of general office space and printroom

in accordance with Drawings and Specifications prepared by *(Insert full name and address of A/E)*

Name: SSOE / Stevens & Wilkinson

Address: 1501 Main Street, Suite 730, Columbia, SC 29201

which agreement is by reference made a part hereof, and is hereinafter referred to as the Contract.

**IN WITNESS WHEREOF**, Surety and Contractor, intending to be legally bound hereby, subject to the terms stated herein, do each cause this Performance Bond to be duly executed on its behalf by its authorized officer, agent or representative.

**DATED** this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 2\_\_\_\_\_  
*(shall be no earlier than Date of Contract)*

**BOND NUMBER** \_\_\_\_\_

**CONTRACTOR**

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
(Seal)

Print Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Print Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Witness: \_\_\_\_\_

**SURETY**

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
(Seal)

Print Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Print Title: \_\_\_\_\_  
*(Attach Power of Attorney)*

Witness: \_\_\_\_\_

*(Additional Signatures, if any, appear on attached page)*

## SE-355

**PERFORMANCE BOND****NOW, THEREFORE, THE CONDITION OF THIS OBLIGATION IS SUCH THAT:**

- 1 The Contractor and the Surety, jointly and severally, bind themselves, their heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns to the Agency for the full and faithful performance of the contract, which is incorporated herein by reference.
- 2 If the Contractor performs the contract, the Surety and the Contractor have no obligation under this Bond, except to participate in conferences as provided in paragraph 3.1.
- 3 The Surety's obligation under this Bond shall arise after:
  - 3.1 The Agency has notified the Contractor and the Surety at the address described in paragraph 10 below, that the Agency is considering declaring a Contractor Default and has requested and attempted to arrange a conference with the Contractor and the Surety to be held not later than 15 days after receipt of such notice to discuss methods of performing the Contract. If the Agency, the Contractor and the Surety agree, the Contractor shall be allowed a reasonable time to perform the Contract, but such an agreement shall not waive the Agency's right, if any, subsequently to declare a Contractor Default; or
  - 3.2 The Agency has declared a Contractor Default and formally terminated the Contractor's right to complete the Contract.
- 4 The Surety shall, within 15 days after receipt of notice of the Agency's declaration of a Contractor Default, and at the Surety's sole expense, take one of the following actions:
  - 4.1 Arrange for the Contractor, with consent of the Agency, to perform and complete the Contract; or
  - 4.2 Undertake to perform and complete the Contract itself, through its agents or through independent contractors; or
  - 4.3 Obtain bids or negotiated proposals from qualified contractors acceptable to the Agency for a contract for performance and completion of the Contract, arrange for a contract to be prepared for execution by the Agency and the contractor selected with the Agency's concurrence, to be secured with performance and payment bonds executed by a qualified surety equivalent to the Bonds issued on the Contract, and pay to the Agency the amount of damages as described in paragraph 7 in excess of the Balance of the Contract Sum incurred by the Agency resulting from the Contractor Default; or
  - 4.4 Waive its right to perform and complete, arrange for completion, or obtain a new contractor, and:
    - 4.4.1 After investigation, determine the amount for which it may be liable to the Agency and, within 60 days of waiving its rights under this paragraph, tender payment thereof to the Agency; or
    - 4.4.2 Deny liability in whole or in part and notify the Agency, citing the reasons therefore.
- 5 Provided Surety has proceeded under paragraphs 4.1, 4.2, or 4.3, the Agency shall pay the Balance of the Contract Sum to either:
  - 5.1 Surety in accordance with the terms of the Contract; or
  - 5.2 Another contractor selected pursuant to paragraph 4.3 to perform the Contract.
- 5.3 The balance of the Contract Sum due either the Surety or another contractor shall be reduced by the amount of damages as described in paragraph 7.
- 6 If the Surety does not proceed as provided in paragraph 4 with reasonable promptness, the Surety shall be deemed to be in default on this Bond 15 days after receipt of written notice from the Agency to the Surety demanding that the Surety perform its obligations under this Bond, and the Agency shall be entitled to enforce any remedy available to the Agency.
  - 6.1 If the Surety proceeds as provided in paragraph 4.4 and the Agency refuses the payment tendered or the Surety has denied liability, in whole or in part, then without further notice the Agency shall be entitled to enforce any remedy available to the Agency.
  - 6.2 Any dispute, suit, action or proceeding arising out of or relating to this Bond shall be governed by the Dispute Resolution process defined in the Contract Documents and the laws of the State of South Carolina.
  - 7 After the Agency has terminated the Contractor's right to complete the Contract, and if the Surety elects to act under paragraph 4.1, 4.2, or 4.3 above, then the responsibilities of the Surety to the Agency shall be those of the Contractor under the Contract, and the responsibilities of the Agency to the Surety shall those of the Agency under the Contract. To a limit of the amount of this Bond, but subject to commitment by the Agency of the Balance of the Contract Sum to mitigation of costs and damages on the Contract, the Surety is obligated to the Agency without duplication for:
    - 7.1 The responsibilities of the Contractor for correction of defective Work and completion of the Contract; and
    - 7.2 Additional legal, design professional and delay costs resulting from the Contractor's Default, and resulting from the actions or failure to act of the Surety under paragraph 4; and
    - 7.3 Damages awarded pursuant to the Dispute Resolution Provisions of the Contract. Surety may join in any Dispute Resolution proceeding brought under the Contract and shall be bound by the results thereof; and
    - 7.4 Liquidated Damages, or if no Liquidated Damages are specified in the Contract, actual damages caused by delayed performance or non-performance of the Contractor.
  - 8 The Surety shall not be liable to the Agency or others for obligations of the Contractor that are unrelated to the Contract, and the Balance of the Contract Sum shall not be reduced or set-off on account of any such unrelated obligations. No right of action shall accrue on this Bond to any person or entity other than the Agency or its heirs, executors, administrators, or successors.
  - 9 The Surety hereby waives notice of any change, including changes of time, to the contract or to related subcontracts, purchase orders and other obligations.
  - 10 Notice to the Surety, the Agency or the Contractor shall be mailed or delivered to the address shown on the signature page.
  - 11 Definitions
    - 11.1 Balance of the Contract Sum: The total amount payable by the Agency to the Contractor under the Contract after all proper adjustments have been made, including allowance to the Contractor of any amounts to be received by the Agency in settlement of insurance or other Claims for damages to which the Contractor is entitled, reduced by all valid and proper payments made to or on behalf of the Contractor under the Contract.
    - 11.2 Contractor Default: Failure of the Contractor, which has neither been remedied nor waived, to perform the Contract or otherwise to comply with the terms of the Contract.

SE-357

**LABOR & MATERIAL PAYMENT BOND**

KNOW ALL MEN BY THESE PRESENTS, that *(Insert full name or legal title and address of Contractor)*

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

hereinafter referred to as "Contractor", and *(Insert full name and address of principal place of business of Surety)*

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

hereinafter called the "surety", are jointly and severally held and firmly bound unto *(Insert full name and address of Agency)*

Name: South Carolina Education Lottery

Address: 1333 Main Street 4<sup>th</sup> Floor  
Columbia, SC 29201

hereinafter referred to as "Agency", or its successors or assigns, the sum of \_\_\_\_\_ (\$ \_\_\_\_\_), being the sum of the Bond to which payment to be well and truly made, the Contractor and Surety bind themselves, their heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents.

WHEREAS, Contractor has by written agreement dated \_\_\_\_\_ entered into a contract with Agency to construct

State Project Name: South Carolina Education Lottery

State Project Number: Y20-N001-CB

Brief Description of Awarded Work: Selective demolition and interior upfit of general office space and printroom

in accordance with Drawings and Specifications prepared by *(Insert full name and address of A/E)*

Name: SSOE / Stevens & Wilkinson

Address: 1501 Main Street, Suite 730, Columbia, SC 29201

which agreement is by reference made a part hereof, and is hereinafter referred to as the Contract.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, Surety and Contractor, intending to be legally bound hereby, subject to the terms stated herein, do each cause this Labor & Material Payment Bond to be duly executed on its behalf by its authorized officer, agent or representative.

DATED this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 2\_\_\_\_\_  
*(shall be no earlier than Date of Contract)*

BOND NUMBER \_\_\_\_\_

**CONTRACTOR**

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
(Seal)

Print Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Print Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Witness: \_\_\_\_\_

**SURETY**

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
(Seal)

Print Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Print Title: \_\_\_\_\_  
*(Attach Power of Attorney)*

Witness: \_\_\_\_\_

*(Additional Signatures, if any, appear on attached page)*

SE-357

**LABOR & MATERIAL PAYMENT BOND****NOW, THEREFORE, THE CONDITION OF THIS OBLIGATION IS SUCH THAT:**

1. The Contractor and the Surety, jointly and severally, bind themselves, their heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns to the Agency to pay for all labor, materials and equipment required for use in the performance of the Contract, which is incorporated herein by reference.
  2. With respect to the Agency, this obligation shall be null and void if the Contractor:
    - 21 Promptly makes payment, directly or indirectly, for all sums due Claimants; and
    - 22 Defends, indemnifies and holds harmless the Agency from all claims, demands, liens or suits by any person or entity who furnished labor, materials or equipment for use in the performance of the Contract.
  3. With respect to Claimants, this obligation shall be null and void if the Contractor promptly makes payment, directly or indirectly, for all sums due.
  4. With respect to Claimants, and subject to the provisions of Title 29, Chapter 5 and the provisions of §11-35-3030(2)(c) of the SC Code of Laws, as amended, the Surety's obligation under this Bond shall arise as follows:
    - 41 Every person who has furnished labor, material or rental equipment to the Contractor or its subcontractors for the work specified in the Contract, and who has not been paid in full therefore before the expiration of a period of ninety (90) days after the date on which the last of the labor was done or performed by him or material or rental equipment was furnished or supplied by him for which such claim is made, shall have the right to sue on the payment bond for the amount, or the balance thereof, unpaid at the time of institution of such suit and to prosecute such action for the sum or sums justly due him.
    - 42 A remote claimant shall have a right of action on the payment bond upon giving written notice by certified or registered mail to the Contractor within ninety (90) days from the date on which such person did or performed the last of the labor or furnished or supplied the last of the material or rental equipment upon which such claim is made.
    - 43 Every suit instituted upon a payment bond shall be brought in a court of competent jurisdiction for the county or circuit in which the construction contract was to be performed, but no such suit shall be commenced after the expiration of one year after the day on which the last of the labor was performed or material or rental equipment was supplied by the person bringing suit.
  5. When the Claimant has satisfied the conditions of paragraph 4, the Surety shall promptly and at the Surety's expense take the following actions:
    - 51 Send an answer to the Claimant, with a copy to the Agency, within sixty (60) days after receipt of the claim, stating the amounts that are undisputed and the basis for challenging any amounts that are disputed.
    - 52 Pay or arrange for payment of any undisputed amounts.
    - 53 The Surety's failure to discharge its obligations under this paragraph 5 shall not be deemed to constitute a waiver of defenses the Surety or Contractor may have or acquire as to a claim. However, if the Surety fails to discharge its obligations under this paragraph 5, the Surety shall indemnify the Claimant for the reasonable attorney's fees the Claimant incurs to recover any sums found to be due and owing to the Claimant.
  6. Amounts owed by the Agency to the Contractor under the Contract shall be used for the performance of the Contract and to satisfy claims, if any, under any Performance Bond. By the Contractor furnishing and the Agency accepting this Bond, they agree that all funds earned by the contractor in the performance of the Contract are dedicated to satisfy obligations of the Contractor and the Surety under this Bond, subject to the Agency's prior right to use the funds for the completion of the Work.
  7. The Surety shall not be liable to the Agency, Claimants or others for obligations of the Contractor that are unrelated to the Contract. The Agency shall not be liable for payment of any costs or expenses of any claimant under this bond, and shall have under this Bond no obligations to make payments to, give notices on behalf of, or otherwise have obligations to Claimants under this Bond.
  8. The Surety hereby waives notice of any change, including changes of time, to the Contract or to related Subcontracts, purchase orders and other obligations.
  9. Notice to the Surety, the Agency or the Contractor shall be mailed or delivered to the addresses shown on the signature page. Actual receipt of notice by Surety, the Agency or the contractor, however accomplished, shall be sufficient compliance as of the date received at the address shown on the signature page.
  10. By the Contractor furnishing and the Agency accepting this Bond, they agree that this Bond has been furnished to comply with the statutory requirements of the South Carolina Code of Laws, as amended, and further, that any provision in this Bond conflicting with said statutory requirements shall be deemed deleted herefrom and provisions conforming to such statutory or other legal requirement shall be deemed incorporated herein. The intent is that this Bond shall be construed as a statutory Bond and not as a common law bond.
  11. Upon request of any person or entity appearing to be a potential beneficiary of this bond, the Contractor shall promptly furnish a copy of this Bond or shall permit a copy to be made.
  12. Any dispute, suit, action or proceeding arising out of or relating to this Bond shall be governed by the laws of the State of South Carolina.
- 13. DEFINITIONS**
- 131 Claimant: An individual or entity having a direct contract with the Contractor or with a Subcontractor of the Contractor to furnish labor, materials, or equipment for use in the performance of the Contract. The intent of this Bond shall be to include without limitation in the terms "labor, materials or equipment" that part of water, gas, power, light, heat, oil, gasoline, telephone service or rental equipment used in the Contract, architectural and engineering services required for performance of the Work of the Contractor and the Contractor's Subcontractors, and all other items for which a mechanic's lien might otherwise be asserted.
  - 132 Remote Claimant: A person having a direct contractual relationship with a subcontractor of the Contractor or subcontractor, but no contractual relationship expressed or implied with the Contractor.
  - 133 Contract: The agreement between the Agency and the Contractor identified on the signature page, including all Contract Documents and changes thereto.



**SE-381**

CHANGE ORDER NO.: \_\_\_\_\_

**CHANGE ORDER TO MINOR CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT**

**AGENCY:** South Carolina Education Lottery

**PROJECT NAME:** 4<sup>th</sup> Floor Upfit/1333 Main Street

**PROJECT NUMBER:** Y20-N001-CB

**CONTRACTOR:** \_\_\_\_\_ **CONTRACT DATE:** \_\_\_\_\_

**This Contract is changed as follows:** *(Insert description of change in space provided below)*

**ADJUSTMENTS IN THE CONTRACT SUM:**

1. Original Contract Sum:		\$
2. Change in Contract Sum by previously approved Change Orders:		
3. Contract Sum prior to this Change Order		\$ 0.00
4. Amount of this Change Order:		
5. New Contract Sum, including this Change Order:		\$ 0.00

**ADJUSTMENTS IN THE CONTRACT TIME:**

1. Original Substantial Completion Date:		
2. Sum of previously approved increases and decreases in Days:		Days
3. Change in Days for this Change Order		Days
4. Total Number of Days added to this Contract including this Change Order		0 Days
5. New Substantial Completion Date:		

**CONTRACTOR ACCEPTANCE:**

**BY:** \_\_\_\_\_ **Date:** \_\_\_\_\_  
*(Signature of Representative)*

**Print Name of Representative:** \_\_\_\_\_

**A/E RECOMMENDATION FOR ACCEPTANCE:**

**BY:** \_\_\_\_\_ **Date:** \_\_\_\_\_  
*(Signature of Representative)*

**Print Name or Representative:** \_\_\_\_\_

**AGENCY ACCEPTANCE AND CERTIFICATION:**

I certify that the Agency has authorized, unencumbered funds available for obligation to this contract.

**BY:** \_\_\_\_\_ **Date:** \_\_\_\_\_  
*(Signature of Representative)*

**Print Name of Representative:** \_\_\_\_\_

Change is within Agency Construction Contract Change Order Certification of: \$ \_\_\_\_\_ Yes  No

**APPROVED BY:** \_\_\_\_\_ **DATE:** \_\_\_\_\_  
*(OSE Project Manager)*

**SUBMIT THE FOLLOWING TO OSE**

1. SE-381, fully completed and signed by the Contractor, A/E and Agency;
2. Detailed back-up information, with OH&P shown, from the Contractor/Subcontractor(s) that justifies the costs and schedule changes shown.
3. If any item exceeds Agency certification, OSE will approved the SE-381 and return to Agency.



**Bid Bond**

**CONTRACTOR:**

(Name, legal status and address)

« »« »  
« »

**SURETY:**

(Name, legal status and principal place of business)

« »« »  
« »

**OWNER:**

(Name, legal status and address)

«S.C Education Lottery»  
«1333 Main Street, 4<sup>th</sup> Floor  
Columbia, SC 29201»

**BOND AMOUNT:** \$ « »

**PROJECT:**

(Name, location or address, and Project number, if any)

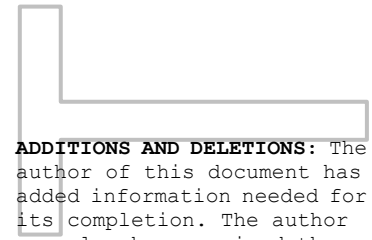
«S.C. Education Lottery 4<sup>th</sup> Floor Upfit  
1333 Main Street, 4<sup>th</sup> Floor  
Columbia, SC 29201

SCEL Project # Y20-N001-CB

The Contractor and Surety are bound to the Owner in the amount set forth above, for the payment of which the Contractor and Surety bind themselves, their heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns, jointly and severally, as provided herein. The conditions of this Bond are such that if the Owner accepts the bid of the Contractor within the time specified in the bid documents, or within such time period as may be agreed to by the Owner and Contractor, and the Contractor either (1) enters into a contract with the Owner in accordance with the terms of such bid, and gives such bond or bonds as may be specified in the bidding or Contract Documents, with a surety admitted in the jurisdiction of the Project and otherwise acceptable to the Owner, for the faithful performance of such Contract and for the prompt payment of labor and material furnished in the prosecution thereof; or (2) pays to the Owner the difference, not to exceed the amount of this Bond, between the amount specified in said bid and such larger amount for which the Owner may in good faith contract with another party to perform the work covered by said bid, then this obligation shall be null and void, otherwise to remain in full force and effect. The Surety hereby waives any notice of an agreement between the Owner and Contractor to extend the time in which the Owner may accept the bid. Waiver of notice by the Surety shall not apply to any extension exceeding sixty (60) days in the aggregate beyond the time for acceptance of bids specified in the bid documents, and the Owner and Contractor shall obtain the Surety’s consent for an extension beyond sixty (60) days.

If this Bond is issued in connection with a subcontractor’s bid to a Contractor, the term Contractor in this Bond shall be deemed to be Subcontractor and the term Owner shall be deemed to be Contractor.

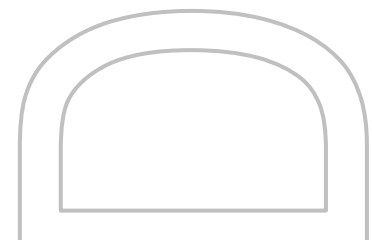
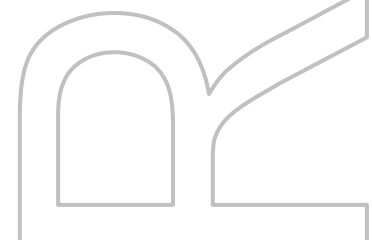
When this Bond has been furnished to comply with a statutory or other legal requirement in the location of the Project, any provision in this Bond conflicting with said statutory or legal requirement shall be deemed deleted herefrom and provisions conforming to such statutory or other legal requirement shall be deemed incorporated herein. When so furnished, the intent is that this Bond shall be construed as a statutory bond and not as a common law bond.



**ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:** The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

Any singular reference to Contractor, Surety, Owner or other party shall be considered plural where applicable.



**ELECTRONIC COPYING** of any portion of this AIA® Document to another electronic file is prohibited and constitutes a violation of copyright laws as set forth in the footer of this document.

Signed and sealed this « » day of « », « »

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Witness)

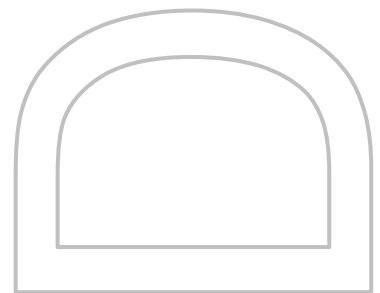
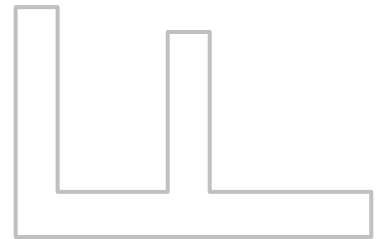
\_\_\_\_\_  
(Witness)

« »  
\_\_\_\_\_  
(Contractor as Principal) (Seal)

« »  
\_\_\_\_\_  
(Title)

« »  
\_\_\_\_\_  
(Surety) (Seal)

« »  
\_\_\_\_\_  
(Title)



## SECTION 012500 - SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for substitutions.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Document 002600 "Procurement Substitution Procedures" for requirements for substitution requests prior to award of Contract.
  - 2. Section 016000 "Product Requirements" for requirements for submitting comparable product submittals for products by listed manufacturers.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents and proposed by Contractor.
  - 1. Substitutions for Cause: Changes proposed by Contractor that are required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms.
  - 2. Substitutions for Convenience: Changes proposed by Contractor or Owner that are not required in order to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor or Owner.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Substitution Requests: Submit three copies of each request for consideration. Identify product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
  - 1. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as applicable:
    - a. Statement indicating why specified product or fabrication or installation method cannot be provided, if applicable.
    - b. Coordination of information, including a list of changes or revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
    - c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitutions with those of the Work specified. Include annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes, such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design

- characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
- d. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
  - e. Samples, where applicable or requested.
  - f. Certificates and qualification data, where applicable or requested.
  - g. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency, indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
  - h. Research reports evidencing compliance with building code in effect for Project, from ICC-ES .
  - i. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitutions with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
  - j. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
  - k. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents, except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials and is appropriate for applications indicated.
  - l. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
2. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within seven days of receipt of a request for substitution. Architect will notify Contractor of acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
- a. Forms of Acceptance: Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or Architect's Supplemental Instructions for minor changes in the Work.
  - b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Substitutions: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution with related products and materials. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.

#### 1.5 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of the approved substitutions.

1.6 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Substitutions for Cause: Submit requests for substitution immediately on discovery of need for change, but not later than 15 days prior to time required for preparation and review of related submittals.
1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
    - a. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
    - b. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
    - c. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
    - d. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
    - e. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
    - f. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
    - g. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012500





## SECTION 012600 - CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Contract modifications.

#### 1.2 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK

- A. Architect will issue supplemental instructions authorizing minor changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time, on AIA Document G710 .
  - 1. Work Change Proposal Requests issued by Architect are not instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.

#### 1.3 PROPOSAL REQUESTS

- A. Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: Architect will issue a detailed description of proposed changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.
  - 1. Work Change Proposal Requests issued by Architect are not instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
  - 2. Within time specified in Proposal Request or 20 days, when not otherwise specified, after receipt of Proposal Request, submit a quotation estimating cost adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time necessary to execute the change.
    - a. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
    - b. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
    - c. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
    - d. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
- B. Contractor-Initiated Proposals: If latent or changed conditions require modifications to the Contract, Contractor may initiate a claim by submitting a request for a change to Architect.

1. Include a statement outlining reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the proposed change on the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.
2. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
4. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
5. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
6. Comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" if the proposed change requires substitution of one product or system for product or system specified.

#### 1.4 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES

- A. On Owner's approval of a Work Change Proposal Request, Architect will issue a Change Order for signatures of Owner and Contractor on AIA Document G701 .

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012600

## SECTION 012900 - PAYMENT PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements necessary to prepare and process Applications for Payment.

#### 1.2 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation of the schedule of values with preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 1. Coordinate line items in the schedule of values with items required to be indicated as separate activities in Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 2. Submit the schedule of values to Architect at earliest possible date, but no later than seven days before the date scheduled for submittal of initial Applications for Payment.

#### 1.3 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

- A. Each Application for Payment following the initial Application for Payment shall be consistent with previous applications and payments as certified by Architect and paid for by Owner.
- B. Payment Application Times: The date for each progress payment is indicated in the Agreement between Owner and Contractor. The period of construction work covered by each Application for Payment is the period indicated in the Agreement.
- C. Application for Payment Forms: Use AIA Document G702 and AIA Document G703 as form for Applications for Payment.
- D. Transmittal: Submit three signed and notarized original copies of each Application for Payment to Architect by a method ensuring receipt within 24 hours. One copy shall include waivers of lien and similar attachments if required.
  - 1. Transmit each copy with a transmittal form listing attachments and recording appropriate information about application.
- E. Waivers of Mechanic's Lien: With each Application for Payment, submit waivers of mechanic's lien from entities lawfully entitled to file a mechanic's lien arising out of the Contract and related to the Work covered by the payment.
  - 1. Submit partial waivers on each item for amount requested in previous application, after deduction for retainage, on each item.

2. When an application shows completion of an item, submit conditional final or full waivers.
  3. Owner reserves the right to designate which entities involved in the Work must submit waivers.
  4. Submit final Application for Payment with or preceded by conditional final waivers from every entity involved with performance of the Work covered by the application who is lawfully entitled to a lien.
  5. Waiver Forms: Submit executed waivers of lien on forms acceptable to Owner.
- F. Initial Application for Payment: Administrative actions and submittals that must precede or coincide with submittal of first Application for Payment include the following:
1. List of subcontractors.
  2. Schedule of values.
  3. Contractor's construction schedule (preliminary if not final).
  4. Products list (preliminary if not final).
  5. Sustainable design action plans, including preliminary project materials cost data.
  6. Schedule of unit prices.
  7. Submittal schedule (preliminary if not final).
  8. List of Contractor's staff assignments.
  9. List of Contractor's principal consultants.
  10. Copies of building permits.
  11. Copies of authorizations and licenses from authorities having jurisdiction for performance of the Work.
  12. Initial progress report.
  13. Report of preconstruction conference.
  14. Certificates of insurance and insurance policies.
  15. Performance and payment bonds.
  16. Data needed to acquire Owner's insurance.
- G. Application for Payment at Substantial Completion: After Architect issues the Certificate of Substantial Completion, submit an Application for Payment showing 100 percent completion for portion of the Work claimed as substantially complete.
1. Include documentation supporting claim that the Work is substantially complete and a statement showing an accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.
  2. This application shall reflect Certificate(s) of Substantial Completion issued previously for Owner occupancy of designated portions of the Work.
- H. Final Payment Application: After completing Project closeout requirements, submit final Application for Payment with releases and supporting documentation not previously submitted and accepted, including, but not limited, to the following:
1. Evidence of completion of Project closeout requirements.
  2. Insurance certificates for products and completed operations where required and proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations were paid.
  3. Updated final statement, accounting for final changes to the Contract Sum.
  4. AIA Document G706.
  5. Evidence that claims have been settled.

6. Final meter readings for utilities, a measured record of stored fuel, and similar data as of date of Substantial Completion or when Owner took possession of and assumed responsibility for corresponding elements of the Work.
7. Final liquidated damages settlement statement.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012900



## SECTION 013100 - PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Project including, but not limited to, the following:
1. General coordination procedures.
  2. Coordination drawings.
  3. RFIs.
  4. Digital project management procedures.
  5. Project meetings.

#### 1.2 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

#### 1.3 GENERAL COORDINATION PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
  2. Coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
  3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
- B. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
  2. Preparation of the schedule of values.
  3. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
  4. Delivery and processing of submittals.
  5. Progress meetings.
  6. Preinstallation conferences.
  7. Project closeout activities.
  8. Startup and adjustment of systems.

#### 1.4 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

- A. Coordination Drawings, General: Prepare coordination drawings according to requirements in individual Sections, and additionally where installation is not completely indicated on Shop Drawings, where limited space availability necessitates coordination, or if coordination is required to facilitate integration of products and materials fabricated or installed by more than one entity.
1. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to a scale large enough to indicate and resolve conflicts. Do not base coordination drawings on standard printed data. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural, structural, civil, mechanical, and electrical systems.
    - b. Indicate dimensions shown on Drawings. Specifically note dimensions that appear to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements. Provide alternative sketches to Architect indicating proposed resolution of such conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered changes to the Contract.
- B. Coordination Digital Data Files: Prepare coordination digital data files according to the following requirements:
1. File Preparation Format:
    - a. DWG , Version 2010 or later , operating in Microsoft Windows operating system.
  2. File Submittal Format: Submit or post coordination drawing files using PDF format.
  3. Architect will furnish Contractor one set of digital data files of Drawings for use in preparing coordination digital data files.
    - a. Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data files as they relate to Drawings.
    - b. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of Agreement included in this Project Manual .

#### 1.5 REQUEST FOR INFORMATION (RFI)

- A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information, clarification, or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.
1. Architect will return without response those RFIs submitted to Architect by other entities controlled by Contractor.
  2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner so as to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.
- B. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing information or interpretation and the following:
1. Owner name.



2. Owner's Project number.
  3. Name of Architect.
  4. Date.
  5. Name of Contractor.
  6. RFI number, numbered sequentially.
  7. RFI subject.
  8. Specification Section number and title and related paragraphs, as appropriate.
  9. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
  10. Field dimensions and conditions, as appropriate.
  11. Contractor's suggested resolution. If Contractor's suggested resolution impacts the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, Contractor shall state impact in the RFI.
  12. Contractor's signature.
  13. Attachments: Include sketches, descriptions, measurements, photos, Product Data, Shop Drawings, coordination drawings, and other information necessary to fully describe items needing interpretation.
- C. RFI Forms: Software-generated form with substantially the same content as indicated above, acceptable to Architect.
- D. Architect's Action: Architect will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow seven days for Architect's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Architect after 1:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day.
1. The following Contractor-generated RFIs will be returned without action:
    - a. Requests for approval of submittals.
    - b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
    - c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
    - d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
    - e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
    - f. Requests for interpretation of Architect's actions on submittals.
    - g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
  2. Architect's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Architect's time for response will date from time of receipt by Architect of additional information.
  3. Architect's action on RFIs that may result in a change to the Contract Time or the Contract Sum may be eligible for Contractor to submit Change Proposal according to Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures."
    - a. If Contractor believes the RFI response warrants change in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, notify Architect in writing within five days of receipt of the RFI response.
- E. RFI Log: Prepare, maintain, and submit a tabular log of RFIs organized by the RFI number. Submit log weekly .
1. Project name.
  2. Name and address of Contractor.

3. Name and address of Architect.
  4. RFI number including RFIs that were returned without action or withdrawn.
  5. RFI description.
  6. Date the RFI was submitted.
  7. Date Architect's response was received.
- F. On receipt of Architect's action, update the RFI log and immediately distribute the RFI response to affected parties. Review response and notify Architect within seven days if Contractor disagrees with response.

## 1.6 DIGITAL PROJECT MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES

- A. Use of Architect's Digital Data Files: Digital data files of Architect's CAD drawings will be provided by Architect for Contractor's use during construction.
1. The following digital data files will be furnished for each appropriate discipline:
    - a. Floor plans.
    - b. Reflected ceiling plans.
- B. PDF Document Preparation: Where PDFs are required to be submitted to Architect, prepare as follows:
1. Assemble complete submittal package into a single indexed file incorporating submittal requirements of a single Specification Section and transmittal form with links enabling navigation to each item.
  2. Name file with submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
  3. Certifications: Where digitally submitted certificates and certifications are required, provide a digital signature with digital certificate on where indicated.

## 1.7 PROJECT MEETINGS

- A. General: Schedule and conduct meetings and conferences at Project site unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Preconstruction Conference: Schedule and conduct a preconstruction conference before starting construction, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 15 days after execution of the Agreement.
1. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. Participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  2. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including the following:
    - a. Responsibilities and personnel assignments.

- b. Tentative construction schedule.
  - c. Phasing.
  - d. Critical work sequencing and long lead items.
  - e. Designation of key personnel and their duties.
  - f. Lines of communications.
  - g. Use of web-based Project software.
  - h. Procedures for processing field decisions and Change Orders.
  - i. Procedures for RFIs.
  - j. Procedures for testing and inspecting.
  - k. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment.
  - l. Distribution of the Contract Documents.
  - m. Submittal procedures.
  - n. Preparation of Record Documents.
  - o. Use of the premises and existing building.
  - p. Work restrictions.
  - q. Working hours.
  - r. Owner's occupancy requirements.
  - s. Responsibility for temporary facilities and controls.
  - t. Procedures for moisture and mold control.
  - u. Procedures for disruptions and shutdowns.
  - v. Construction waste management and recycling.
  - w. Parking availability.
  - x. Office, work, and storage areas.
  - y. Equipment deliveries and priorities.
  - z. First aid.
  - aa. Security.
  - bb. Progress cleaning.
3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- C. Progress Meetings: Conduct progress meetings at biweekly intervals.
- 1. Coordinate dates of meetings with preparation of payment requests.
  - 2. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  - 3. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of previous progress meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
    - a. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting. Determine whether each activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.

- 1) Review schedule for next period.
- b. Review present and future needs of each entity present, including the following:
  - 1) Interface requirements.
  - 2) Sequence of operations.
  - 3) Status of submittals.
  - 4) Deliveries.
  - 5) Off-site fabrication.
  - 6) Access.
  - 7) Site use.
  - 8) Temporary facilities and controls.
  - 9) Progress cleaning.
  - 10) Quality and work standards.
  - 11) Status of correction of deficient items.
  - 12) Field observations.
  - 13) Status of RFIs.
  - 14) Status of Proposal Requests.
  - 15) Pending changes.
  - 16) Status of Change Orders.
  - 17) Pending claims and disputes.
  - 18) Documentation of information for payment requests.
4. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting the meeting will record and distribute the meeting minutes to each party present and to parties requiring information.
  - a. Schedule Updating: Revise Contractor's construction schedule after each progress meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 013100

## SECTION 013300 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Submittal schedule requirements.
2. Administrative and procedural requirements for submittals.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that require Architect's responsive action. Action submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "action submittals."
- B. Informational Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that do not require Architect's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements. Informational submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "informational submittals."

#### 1.3 SUBMITTAL SCHEDULE

- A. Submittal Schedule: Submit, as an action submittal, a list of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates. Include additional time required for making corrections or revisions to submittals noted by Architect and additional time for handling and reviewing submittals required by those corrections.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTAL FORMATS

A. Submittal Information: Include the following information in each submittal:

1. Project name.
2. Date.
3. Name of Contractor.
4. Name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
5. Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
6. Unique submittal number, including revision identifier. Include Specification Section number with sequential alphanumeric identifier; and alphanumeric suffix for resubmittals.
7. Category and type of submittal.

8. Number and title of Specification Section, with paragraph number and generic name for each of multiple items.
  9. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
  10. Other necessary identification.
- B. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Architect.
- C. Deviations and Additional Information: On each submittal, clearly indicate deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations; include relevant additional information and revisions, other than those requested by Architect on previous submittals. Indicate by highlighting on each submittal or noting on attached separate sheet.
- D. Electronic Submittals: Prepare submittals as PDF package, incorporating complete information into each PDF file. Name PDF file with submittal number.
- E. Submittals for Utilizing Web-Based Project Management Software: Prepare submittals as PDF files, or other format indicated by Project management software.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

- A. Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
1. Email: Prepare submittals as PDF package, and transmit to Architect by sending via email. Include PDF transmittal form. Include information in email subject line as requested by Architect.
  2. Web-Based Project Management Software: Prepare submittals in PDF form, and upload to web-based Project management software website. Enter required data in web-based software site to fully identify submittal.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.
1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
  2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are indicated on approved submittal schedule.
  3. Submit action submittals and informational submittals required by the same Specification Section as separate packages under separate transmittals.
- C. Processing Time: Allow time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Architect's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
1. Initial Review: Allow 15 days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Architect will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.

2. Resubmittal Review: Allow 15 days for review of each resubmittal.
- D. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.
- E. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.
- F. Use for Construction: Retain complete copies of submittals on Project site. Use only final action submittals that are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.

## 1.6 SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.
  1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard published data are unsuitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
  2. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
  3. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Manufacturer's product specifications.
    - b. Standard color charts.
    - c. Statement of compliance with specified referenced standards.
    - d. Testing by recognized testing agency.
    - e. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
  4. For equipment, include the following in addition to the above, as applicable:
    - a. Wiring diagrams that show factory-installed wiring.
    - b. Printed performance curves.
    - c. Operational range diagrams.
    - d. Clearances required to other construction, if not indicated on accompanying Shop Drawings.
  5. Submit Product Data before Shop Drawings, and before or concurrent with Samples.
- B. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data.
  1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Identification of products.
    - b. Schedules.
    - c. Compliance with specified standards.
    - d. Notation of coordination requirements.
    - e. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
    - f. Relationship and attachment to adjoining construction clearly indicated.

- g. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
- C. Samples: Submit Samples for review of kind, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other materials.
- 1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components such as accessories together in one submittal package.
  - 2. Identification: Permanently attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:
    - a. Project name and submittal number.
    - b. Generic description of Sample.
    - c. Product name and name of manufacturer.
    - d. Sample source.
    - e. Number and title of applicable Specification Section.
    - f. Specification paragraph number and generic name of each item.
  - 3. Email Transmittal: Provide PDF transmittal. Include digital image file illustrating Sample characteristics, and identification information for record.
  - 4. Web-Based Project Management Software: Prepare submittals in PDF form, and upload to web-based Project software website. Enter required data in web-based software site to fully identify submittal.
  - 5. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.
    - a. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as Owner's property, are the property of Contractor.
  - 6. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.
    - a. Number of Samples: Submit three sets of Samples. Architect will retain two Sample sets; remainder will be returned.
      - 1) Submit a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
- D. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, contact information of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- E. Design Data: Prepare and submit written and graphic information indicating compliance with indicated performance and design criteria in individual Specification Sections. Include list of assumptions and summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Number each page of submittal.



F. Certificates:

1. Certificates and Certifications Submittals: Submit a statement that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that entity. Provide a notarized signature where indicated.
2. Manufacturer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.
3. Material Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that material complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
4. Product Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that product complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.

G. Test and Research Reports:

1. Material Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
2. Product Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating that current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

1.7 DELEGATED DESIGN SERVICES

A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.

1. If criteria indicated are insufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.

B. Delegated Design Services Certification: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit digitally signed PDF file certificate, signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional.

1. Indicate that products and systems comply with performance and design criteria in the Contract Documents. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

## 1.8 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW

- A. Action Submittals and Informational Submittals: Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Architect.
- B. Contractor's Approval: Indicate Contractor's approval for each submittal with a uniform approval stamp . Include name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.
  - 1. Architect will not review submittals received from Contractor that do not have Contractor's review and approval.

## 1.9 ARCHITECT'S REVIEW

- A. Action Submittals: Architect will review each submittal, indicate corrections or revisions required , and return it.
  - 1. PDF Submittals: Architect will indicate, via markup on each submittal, the appropriate action , as follows:
    - a. Code NE - No Exception Taken: The Work covered by the submittal item may proceed .
    - b. Code EN - Exceptions Noted: The Work covered by the submittal item may proceed, provided it complies with the Design Professional's notations and Contract Document requirements.
    - c. Code EN-R - Exceptions Noted - Resubmit: Do not deliver or install the related work until the resubmittal has received Code NE or EN. However, fabrication and other off-site work covered by the submittal item may proceed, at the Construction Professional's risk, provided it complies with the Design Professional's notations and Contract Document requirements.
    - d. Code RR - Revise and Resubmit: The Work covered by the submittal item, including purchasing, fabrication, delivery, and other activity, shall not proceed. Revise the submittal item or prepare a new item in accordance with the Design Professional's notations. Resubmit the corrected or new item without delay; do not permit submittal items marked "Not Accepted" or "Revise and Resubmit" to be used. Work incorporating such items will be rejected.
  - 2. Submittals by Web-Based Project Management Software: Architect will indicate, on Project management software website, the appropriate action.
    - a. Actions taken by indication on Project management software website have the following meanings:
      - 1) Code NE - No Exception Taken: The Work covered by the submittal item may proceed .
      - 2) Code EN - Exceptions Noted: The Work covered by the submittal item may proceed, provided it complies with the Design Professional's notations and Contract Document requirements.
      - 3) Code EN-R - Exceptions Noted - Resubmit: Do not deliver or install the related work until the resubmittal has received Code NE or EN.

However, fabrication and other off-site work covered by the submittal item may proceed, at the Construction Professional's risk, provided it complies with the Design Professional's notations and Contract Document requirements.

- 4) Code RR - Revise and Resubmit: The Work covered by the submittal item, including purchasing, fabrication, delivery, and other activity, shall not proceed. Revise the submittal item or prepare a new item in accordance with the Design Professional's notations. Resubmit the corrected or new item without delay; do not permit submittal items marked "Not Accepted" or "Revise and Resubmit" to be used. Work incorporating such items will be rejected.
- B. Informational Submittals: Architect will review each submittal and will not return it, or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect will forward each submittal to appropriate party.
  - C. Partial submittals prepared for a portion of the Work will be reviewed when use of partial submittals has received prior approval from Architect.
  - D. Incomplete submittals are unacceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned for resubmittal without review.
  - E. Architect will return without review submittals received from sources other than Contractor.
  - F. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents will be returned by Architect without action.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 013300



## SECTION 017700 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for Contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Substantial Completion procedures.
  - 2. Final completion procedures.
  - 3. Warranties.
  - 4. Final cleaning.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for additional operation and maintenance manual requirements.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of cleaning agent.
- B. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Initial submittal at Substantial Completion.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates of Release: From authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Certificate of Insurance: For continuing coverage.

#### 1.4 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Prepare and submit a list of items to be completed and corrected (Contractor's "punch list"), indicating the value of each item on the list and reasons why the Work is incomplete.
- B. Submittals Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
  - 1. Certificates of Release: Obtain and submit releases from authorities having jurisdiction, permitting Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to services and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.

2. Submit closeout submittals specified in other Division 01 Sections, including Project Record Documents, operation and maintenance manuals, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.
  3. Submit closeout submittals specified in individual Sections, including specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
  4. Submit maintenance material submittals specified in individual Sections, including tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items, and deliver to location designated by Architect. Label with manufacturer's name and model number.
  5. Submit testing, adjusting, and balancing records.
  6. Submit changeover information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and maintenance.
- C. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection to determine Substantial Completion a minimum of 10 days prior to date the Work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion after inspection or will notify Contractor of items, either on Contractor's list or additional items identified by Architect, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.

#### 1.5 FINAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Submittals Prior to Final Completion: Before requesting final inspection for determining Final Completion, complete the following:
1. Submit a final Application for Payment in accordance with Section 012900 "Payment Procedures."
  2. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion inspection list of items to be completed or corrected (punch list), endorsed and dated by Architect. Certified copy of the list shall state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.
  3. Certificate of Insurance: Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.
- B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection to determine acceptance a minimum of 10 days prior to date the Work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection or will notify Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.

#### 1.6 SUBMITTAL OF PROJECT WARRANTIES

- A. Time of Submittal: Submit written warranties on request of Architect for designated portions of the Work where warranties are indicated to commence on dates other than date of Substantial Completion, or when delay in submittal of warranties might limit Owner's rights under warranty.

- B. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of Project Manual.
- C. Warranty Electronic File: Provide warranties and bonds in PDF format. Assemble complete warranty and bond submittal package into a single electronic PDF file with bookmarks enabling navigation to each item. Provide bookmarked table of contents at beginning of document.
  - 1. Submit by email to Architect.
- D. Warranties in Paper Form:
  - 1. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper.
- E. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 FINAL CLEANING

- A. Perform final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.
- B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:
    - a. Clean Project site of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
    - b. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid

- disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
- c. Remove debris and surface dust from limited-access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
  - d. Clean flooring, removing debris, dirt, and staining; clean according to manufacturer's recommendations.
  - e. Vacuum and mop concrete.
  - f. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap; clean according to manufacturer's recommendations if visible soil or stains remain.
  - g. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.
  - h. Remove labels that are not permanent.
  - i. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
  - j. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.
  - k. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.
  - l. Clean ducts, blowers, and coils.
  - m. Clean luminaires, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency.
  - n. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.

### 3.2 REPAIR OF THE WORK

- A. Complete repair and restoration operations required by Section 017300 "Execution" before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 017700



## SECTION 017823 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and maintenance manuals, including the following:
  - 1. Operation and maintenance documentation directory manuals.
  - 2. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.
  - 3. Product maintenance manuals.

#### 1.2 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Comply with Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for schedule for submitting operation and maintenance documentation.

#### 1.3 FORMAT OF OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Manuals, Electronic Files: Submit manuals in the form of a multiple file composite electronic PDF file for each manual type required.
  - 1. Electronic Files: Use electronic files prepared by manufacturer where available. Where scanning of paper documents is required, configure scanned file for minimum readable file size.
  - 2. File Names and Bookmarks: Bookmark individual documents based on file names. Name document files to correspond to system, subsystem, and equipment names used in manual directory and table of contents. Group documents for each system and subsystem into individual composite bookmarked files, then create composite manual, so that resulting bookmarks reflect the system, subsystem, and equipment names in a readily navigated file tree. Configure electronic manual to display bookmark panel on opening file.

#### 1.4 REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY, OPERATION, AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Organization of Manuals: Unless otherwise indicated, organize each manual into a separate section for each system and subsystem, and a separate section for each piece of equipment not part of a system. Each manual shall contain the following materials, in the order listed:
  - 1. Title page.
  - 2. Table of contents.
  - 3. Manual contents.

- B. Title Page: Include the following information:
  - 1. Subject matter included in manual.
  - 2. Name and address of Project.
  - 3. Name and address of Owner.
  - 4. Date of submittal.
  - 5. Name and contact information for Contractor.
- C. Table of Contents: List each product included in manual, identified by product name, indexed to the content of the volume, and cross-referenced to Specification Section number in Project Manual.
- D. Manual Contents: Organize into sets of manageable size. Arrange contents alphabetically by system, subsystem, and equipment. If possible, assemble instructions for subsystems, equipment, and components of one system into a single binder.
- E. Identification: In the documentation directory and in each operation and maintenance manual, identify each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment with same designation used in the Contract Documents. If no designation exists, assign a designation according to ASHRAE Guideline 4, "Preparation of Operating and Maintenance Documentation for Building Systems."

## 1.5 PRODUCT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Product Maintenance Manual: Assemble a complete set of maintenance data indicating care and maintenance of each product, material, and finish incorporated into the Work.
- B. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each product, material, and finish. Include source information, product information, maintenance procedures, repair materials and sources, and warranties and bonds, as described below.
- C. Product Information: Include the following, as applicable:
  - 1. Product name and model number.
  - 2. Manufacturer's name.
  - 3. Material and chemical composition.
  - 4. Reordering information for specially manufactured products.
- D. Maintenance Procedures: Include manufacturer's written recommendations and the following:
  - 1. Inspection procedures.
  - 2. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
  - 3. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
  - 4. Schedule for routine cleaning and maintenance.
  - 5. Repair instructions.
- E. Repair Materials and Sources: Include lists of materials and local sources of materials and related services.

F. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.

1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 017823



## SECTION 024119 - SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Demolition and removal of selected portions of building or structure.
2. Salvage of existing items to be reused or recycled.

#### 1.2 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition waste becomes property of Contractor.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

#### 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Owner will occupy portions of building immediately adjacent to selective demolition area. Conduct selective demolition so Owner's operations will not be disrupted.
- B. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by Owner as far as practical.
1. Before selective demolition, Owner will remove the following items:
    - a. Sensitive files and documents stored in project area .
    - b. Electronic Devices: Computers, printers, and any associated devices.
    - c. Storage materials including material and office supply items, paper products, printer inks and toner, and moveable storage racks.
- C. Notify Architect of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with selective demolition.
- D. Storage or sale of removed items or materials on-site is not permitted.
- E. Arrange selective demolition schedule so as not to interfere with Owner's operations.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning selective demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped before starting selective demolition operations.
- B. Inventory and record the condition of items to be removed and salvaged.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

### 3.3 UTILITY SERVICES AND MECHANICAL/ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- A. Existing Services/Systems to Be Removed, Relocated, or Abandoned: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off utility services and mechanical/electrical systems serving areas to be selectively demolished.
  - 1. Owner will arrange to shut off indicated services/systems when requested by Contractor.
  - 2. If services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, provide temporary services/systems that bypass area of selective demolition and that maintain continuity of services/systems to other parts of building.
  - 3. Disconnect, demolish, and remove fire-suppression systems, plumbing, and HVAC systems, equipment, and components indicated on Drawings to be removed.
    - a. Ducts to Be Removed: Remove portion of ducts indicated to be removed and plug remaining ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.

### 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary barricades and protections where hazards no longer exist.

### 3.5 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

- A. General: Demolish and remove existing construction only to the extent required by new construction and as indicated. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:

1. Neatly cut openings and holes plumb, square, and true to dimensions required. Use cutting methods least likely to damage construction to remain or adjoining construction. Use hand tools or small power tools designed for sawing or grinding, not hammering and chopping. Temporarily cover openings to remain.
2. Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces to avoid marring existing finished surfaces.
3. Do not use cutting torches until work area is cleared of flammable materials. At concealed spaces, such as duct and pipe interiors, verify condition and contents of hidden space before starting flame-cutting operations. Maintain portable fire-suppression devices during flame-cutting operations.
4. Maintain fire watch during and for at least 1 hours after flame-cutting operations.
5. Locate selective demolition equipment and remove debris and materials so as not to impose excessive loads on supporting walls, floors, or framing.
6. Dispose of demolished items and materials promptly.

B. Removed and Salvaged Items:

1. Transport items to Owner's storage area designated by Owner .
2. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.

C. Removed and Reinstalled Items:

1. Clean and repair items to functional condition adequate for intended reuse.
2. Pack or crate items after cleaning and repairing. Identify contents of containers.
3. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
4. Reinstall items in locations indicated. Comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make item functional for use indicated.

D. Existing Items to Remain: Protect construction indicated to remain against damage and soiling during selective demolition. When permitted by Architect, items may be removed to a suitable, protected storage location during selective demolition and cleaned and reinstalled in their original locations after selective demolition operations are complete.

### 3.6 CLEANING

A. Remove demolition waste materials from Project site and dispose of them in an EPA-approved construction and demolition waste landfill acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
3. Remove debris from elevated portions of building by chute, hoist, or other device that will convey debris to grade level in a controlled descent.
  - a. Contractor shall coordinate means of debris removal with owner and building landlord.

B. Burning: Do not burn demolished materials.

- C. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by selective demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before selective demolition operations began.

END OF SECTION 024119



## SECTION 064116 - PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Plastic-laminate-clad architectural cabinets and counters.
2. Cabinet hardware and accessories.
3. Wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips for installing plastic-laminate-clad architectural cabinets that are not concealed within other construction.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Show large-scale details.
3. Show locations and sizes of furring, blocking, and hanging strips, including concealed blocking and reinforcement specified in other Sections.
4. Show locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for items installed in plastic-laminate architectural cabinets.

C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer and Installer.

B. Field quality control reports.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Quality Standard Compliance Certificates: AWI Quality Certification Program certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations with Humidity Control: Do not deliver or install cabinets until building is enclosed, wet-work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature between 60 and 90 deg F and relative humidity between 43 and 70 percent during the remainder of the construction period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ARCHITECTURAL CABINET MANUFACTURERS

2.2 PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS

- A. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with the Architectural Woodwork Standards for grades of cabinets indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.
- B. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: Custom.
- C. Type of Construction: Frameless.
- D. Door and Drawer-Front Style: Flush overlay.
- E. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate: NEMA LD 3, grades as indicated or if not indicated, as required by quality standard.
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
- a. Formica Corporation.
  - b. Wilsonart LLC.
- F. Laminate Cladding for Exposed Surfaces:
- 1. Horizontal Surfaces: Grade HGS.
  - 2. Postformed Surfaces: Grade HGP.
  - 3. Vertical Surfaces: Grade VGS.
  - 4. Edges: PVC edge banding, 3.0 mm thick, matching laminate in color, pattern, and finish.
  - 5. Pattern Direction: Vertically for drawer fronts, doors, and fixed panels.
- G. Concealed Backs of Panels with Exposed Plastic-Laminate Surfaces: High-pressure decorative laminate, NEMA LD 3, Grade BKL.
- H. Drawer Construction: Fabricate with exposed fronts fastened to subfront with mounting screws from interior of body.

1. Join subfronts, backs, and sides with glued rabbeted joints supplemented by mechanical fasteners or glued dovetail joints.
- I. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: Provide materials and products that result in colors and textures of exposed laminate surfaces complying with the following requirements:
  1. Match Architect's sample.

## 2.3 WOOD MATERIALS

- A. Wood Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for each type of architectural cabinet and quality grade specified unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Wood Moisture Content: 8 to 13 percent.
- B. Composite Wood Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for each type of architectural cabinet and quality grade specified unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Particleboard (Medium Density): ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2.
  2. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1, medium-density overlay.
  3. Thermally Fused Laminate (TFL) Panels: Particleboard or MDF finished with thermally fused, melamine-impregnated decorative paper and complying with requirements of NEMA LD 3, Grade VGL, for Test Methods 3.3, 3.4, 3.6, 3.8, and 3.10.

## 2.4 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. Fire-Retardant-Treated Materials, General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, use materials that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as determined by testing performed on identical products by a qualified testing agency.
  1. Use treated materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard. Do not use materials that are warped, discolored, or otherwise defective.
  2. Use fire-retardant-treatment formulations that do not bleed through or otherwise adversely affect finishes. Do not use colorants to distinguish treated materials from untreated materials.
  3. Identify fire-retardant-treated materials with appropriate classification marking of qualified testing agency in the form of removable paper label or imprint on surfaces that will be concealed from view after installation.

## 2.5 CABINET HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Frameless Concealed Hinges (European Type): ANSI/BHMA A156.9, B01602, 135 degrees of opening, self-closing.

- B. Back-Mounted Pulls: ANSI/BHMA A156.9, B02011.
- C. Wire Pulls: Back mounted, solid metal, 4 inches long, 5/16 inch in diameter.
- D. Adjustable Shelf Standards and Supports: ANSI/BHMA A156.9, B04071; with shelf rests, B04081.
- E. Shelf Rests: ANSI/BHMA A156.9, B04013; metal.
- F. Door and Drawer Silencers: ANSI/BHMA A156.16, L03011.
- G. Grommets for Cable Passage: 2-inch OD, molded-plastic grommets and matching plastic caps with slot for wire passage.
  - 1. Color: Black.
- H. Exposed Hardware Finishes: For exposed hardware, provide finish that complies with ANSI/BHMA A156.18 for ANSI/BHMA finish number indicated.
  - 1. Satin Stainless Steel: ANSI/BHMA 630.
- I. For concealed hardware, provide manufacturer's standard finish that complies with product class requirements in ANSI/BHMA A156.9.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Furring, Blocking, Shims, and Hanging Strips: Softwood or hardwood lumber Fire-retardant-treated softwood lumber, kiln-dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.
- B. Anchors: Select material, type, size, and finish required for each substrate for secure anchorage. Provide metal expansion sleeves or expansion bolts for post-installed anchors. Use nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts at inside face of exterior walls and at floors.
- C. Adhesive for Bonding Plastic Laminate: Unpigmented contact cement.
  - 1. Adhesive for Bonding Edges: Hot-melt adhesive or adhesive specified above for faces.

## 2.7 FABRICATION

- A. Complete fabrication, including assembly and hardware application, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.
- B. Shop-cut openings to maximum extent possible to receive hardware, appliances, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Before installation, condition cabinets to humidity conditions in installation areas for not less than 72 hours.
- B. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: Install cabinets to comply with quality standard grade of item to be installed.
- C. Anchor cabinets to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates. Secure with wafer-head cabinet installation screws.
- D. Install cabinets level, plumb, and true in line to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches using concealed shims.
  - 1. Scribe and cut cabinets to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
  - 2. Install cabinets without distortion so doors and drawers fit openings and are accurately aligned. Adjust hardware to center doors and drawers in openings and to provide unencumbered operation. Complete installation of hardware and accessory items as indicated.
  - 3. Fasten wall cabinets through back, near top and bottom, and at ends not more than 16 inches o.c. with No. 10 wafer-head screws sized for not less than 1-1/2-inch penetration into wood framing, blocking, or hanging strips .

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

### 3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Repair damaged and defective cabinets, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects. Where not possible to repair, replace architectural cabinets. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.
- B. Clean, lubricate, and adjust hardware.
- C. Clean cabinets on exposed and semi exposed surfaces.

END OF SECTION 064116



## SECTION 092216 - NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Non-load-bearing steel framing systems for interior partitions.
2. Suspension systems for interior ceilings and soffits.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

#### 2.2 FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. Framing Members, General: Comply with ASTM C 754 for conditions indicated.

1. Steel Sheet Components: Comply with ASTM C 645 requirements for steel unless otherwise indicated.
2. Protective Coating: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G40 , hot-dip galvanized unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Studs and Tracks: ASTM C 645.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, undefined:
  - a. ClarkDietrich.
  - b. Gold Bond Building Products Div., National Gypsum Co.
  - c. Incor, Inc.
  - d. MarinoWARE.
2. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: 0.0296 inch .
3. Depth: As indicated on Drawings .

- C. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where indicated, provide the following:

1. Double-Track System: ASTM C 645 top outer tracks, inside track with 2-inch-deep flanges in thickness not less than indicated for studs and fastened to studs, and outer track sized to friction-fit over inner track.
  2. Deflection Track: Steel sheet top track manufactured to prevent cracking of finishes applied to interior partition framing resulting from deflection of structure above; in thickness not less than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) ClarkDietrich.
      - 2) Gold Bond Building Products Div., National Gypsum Co.
      - 3) Incor, Inc.
      - 4) MarinoWARE.
- D. Flat Strap and Backing Plate: Steel sheet for blocking and bracing in length and width indicated.
1. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: As indicated on Drawings .
- E. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C 645.
1. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: 0.0329 inch .
  2. Depth: As indicated on Drawings .
- F. Cold-Rolled Furring Channels: 0.053-inch uncoated-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch- wide flanges.
1. Depth: As indicated on Drawings .
  2. Furring Brackets: Adjustable, corrugated-edge-type steel sheet with minimum uncoated-steel thickness of 0.0329 inch .
  3. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch-diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch- diameter wire.

## 2.3 SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch- diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch- diameter wire.
- B. Wire Hangers: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.16 inch in diameter.
- C. Flat Hangers: Steel sheet, in size indicated on Drawings .
- D. Carrying Channels (Main Runners): Cold-rolled, commercial-steel sheet with a base-steel thickness of 0.0538 inch and minimum 1/2-inch- wide flanges.
  1. Depth: As indicated on Drawings .
- E. Furring Channels (Furring Members):



1. Cold-Rolled Channels: 0.0538-inch uncoated-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch- wide flanges, 3/4 inch deep.
2. Steel Studs and Tracks: ASTM C 645.
  - a. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: As indicated on Drawings .
  - b. Depth: As indicated on Drawings .

## 2.4 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards.
  1. Fasteners for Steel Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten steel members to substrates.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Installation Standard: ASTM C 754.
  1. Gypsum Board Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C 840 that apply to framing installation.
- B. Install framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, with connections securely fastened.
- C. Install supplementary framing, and blocking to support fixtures, equipment services, heavy trim, grab bars, toilet accessories, furnishings, or similar construction.
- D. Install bracing at terminations in assemblies.

### 3.2 INSTALLING FRAMED ASSEMBLIES

- A. Install framing system components according to spacings indicated, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.
- B. Install tracks at floors and overhead supports. Extend framing full height to structural supports or substrates above suspended ceilings except where partitions are indicated to terminate at suspended ceilings. Continue framing around ducts that penetrate partitions above ceiling.
  1. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where framing extends to overhead structural supports, install to produce joints at tops of framing systems that prevent axial loading of finished assemblies.
  2. Door Openings: Screw vertical studs at jambs to jamb anchor clips on door frames; install track section (for cripple studs) at head and secure to jamb studs.
- C. Direct Furring:

1. Screw to wood framing.
  2. Attach to concrete or masonry with stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced 24 inches o.c.
- D. Installation Tolerance: Install each framing member so fastening surfaces vary not more than 1/8 inch from the plane formed by faces of adjacent framing.

### 3.3 INSTALLING CEILING SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Install suspension system components according to spacings indicated, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.
- B. Isolate suspension systems from building structure where they abut or are penetrated by building structure to prevent transfer of loading imposed by structural movement.
- C. Suspend hangers from building structure as follows:
1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structural or suspension system.
    - a. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions and offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
  2. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with locations of hangers required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in the form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
    - a. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced installation standards .
  3. Wire Hangers: Secure by looping and wire tying, either directly to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for substrate, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
  4. Flat Hangers: Secure to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for structure and hanger, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
  5. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck.
  6. Do not attach hangers to rolled-in hanger tabs of composite steel floor deck.
  7. Do not connect or suspend steel framing from ducts, pipes, or conduit.
- D. Seismic Bracing: Sway-brace suspension systems with hangers used for support .
- E. Installation Tolerances: Install suspension systems that are level to within 1/8 inch in 12 feet measured lengthwise on each member that will receive finishes and transversely between parallel members that will receive finishes.

END OF SECTION 092216



## SECTION 092900 - GYPSUM BOARD

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Interior gypsum board.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Gypsum wallboard.
2. Gypsum ceiling board.
3. Interior trim.
4. Joint treatment materials.
5. Sound-attenuation blankets.
6. Acoustical sealant.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

#### 2.2 GYPSUM BOARD, GENERAL

- A. Size: Provide maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.

#### 2.3 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

A. Gypsum Wallboard: ASTM C1396/C1396M.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
  - b. Continental Building Products, LLC.
  - c. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
  - d. USG Corporation.
2. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
3. Long Edges: Tapered .

B. Gypsum Ceiling Board: ASTM C1396/C1396M.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
  - b. Continental Building Products, LLC.
  - c. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
  - d. USG Corporation.
2. Thickness: 1/2 inch.
3. Long Edges: Tapered.

## 2.4 TRIM ACCESSORIES

### A. Interior Trim: ASTM C1047.

1. Material: Galvanized or aluminum-coated steel sheet, rolled zinc, plastic, or paper-faced galvanized-steel sheet .
2. Shapes:
  - a. Cornerbead.
  - b. Bullnose bead.
  - c. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
  - d. L-Bead: L-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
  - e. U-Bead: J-shaped; exposed short flange does not receive joint compound.
  - f. Expansion (control) joint.

## 2.5 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

### A. General: Comply with ASTM C475/C475M.

### B. Joint Tape:

1. Interior Gypsum Board: Paper.

### C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Board: For each coat, use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.

1. Prefilling: At open joints , rounded or beveled panel edges, and damaged surface areas, use setting-type taping compound.
2. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use setting-type taping compound.
  - a. Use setting-type compound for installing paper-faced metal trim accessories.
3. Fill Coat: For second coat, use setting-type, sandable topping compound.
4. Finish Coat: For third coat, use setting-type, sandable topping compound.

## 2.6 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written instructions.

- B. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C1002 unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Sound-Attenuation Blankets: ASTM C665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing) produced by combining thermosetting resins with mineral fibers manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool.
  - 1. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Comply with mineral-fiber requirements of assembly.
- D. Acoustical Sealant: As specified in Section 079219 "Acoustical Joint Sealants."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION AND FINISHING OF PANELS

- A. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- B. Comply with ASTM C840.
- C. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments. Provide 1/4- to 1/2-inch- wide spaces at these locations and trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.
- D. For trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Prefill open joints , rounded or beveled edges, and damaged surface areas.
- F. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except for trim products specifically indicated as not intended to receive tape.
- G. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below and according to ASTM C840:
  - 1. Level 1: Not Used.
  - 2. Level 2: Not Used. .
  - 3. Level 3: Not Used. .
  - 4. Level 4: Wall and ceiling surfaces exposed to the public .
  - 5. Level 5: Not Used. .

### 3.2 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
- B. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.

END OF SECTION 092900



## SECTION 095113 - ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes acoustical panels and exposed suspension systems for interior ceilings.
- B. Products furnished, but not installed under this Section, include anchors, clips, and other ceiling attachment devices to be cast in concrete.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site .

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, 6 inches in size.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Ceiling suspension-system members.
  - 2. Structural members to which suspension systems will be attached.
  - 3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical panels.
  - 4. Items penetrating finished ceiling and ceiling-mounted items including the following:
    - a. Lighting fixtures.
    - b. Diffusers.
    - c. Sprinklers.
    - d. Access panels.
    - e. Perimeter moldings.

- B. Product Test Reports: For each acoustical panel ceiling, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For finishes to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials , from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Acoustical Ceiling Units: Full-size panels equal to 2 percent of quantity installed.
  - 2. Suspension-System Components: Quantity of each exposed component equal to 2 percent of quantity installed.
  - 3. Hold-Down Clips: Equal to 2 percent of quantity installed.

#### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

#### 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver acoustical panels, suspension-system components, and accessories to Project site and store them in a fully enclosed, conditioned space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, humidity, temperature extremes, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.
- B. Before installing acoustical panels, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.
- C. Handle acoustical panels carefully to avoid chipping edges or damaging units in any way.

#### 1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install acoustical panel ceilings until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
  - 1. Pressurized Plenums: Operate ventilation system for not less than 48 hours before beginning acoustical panel ceiling installation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of acoustical ceiling panel and its supporting suspension system from single source from single manufacturer.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Suspended ceilings shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7 .
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Flame-Spread Index: Class A according to ASTM E 1264.
  - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.

### 2.3 ACOUSTICAL PANELS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide acoustical panels to match existing or comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Armstrong Ceiling & Wall Solutions.
  - 2. Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
  - 3. Rockfon (Rockwool International).
  - 4. USG Corporation.
- B. Acoustical Panel Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard panels according to ASTM E 1264 and designated by type, form, pattern, acoustical rating, and light reflectance unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Classification: Provide panels as follows:
  - 1. Type and Form: Type XII, glass-fiber base with membrane-faced overlay; . Binder shall not contain urea formaldehyde.
  - 2. Pattern: E (lightly textured) .
- D. Color: White .
- E. Light Reflectance (LR): Not less than 0.85 0.88 .
- F. Ceiling Attenuation Class (CAC): Not less than 25 .
- G. Noise Reduction Coefficient (NRC): Not less than 0.90 .
- H. Articulation Class (AC): Not less than 200 .
- I. Edge/Joint Detail: Square .

- J. Thickness: 1 inch .
- K. Modular Size: 24 by 48 inches .

## 2.4 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEM

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide metal suspension system is to match existing or comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Armstrong Ceiling & Wall Solutions.
  - 2. Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
  - 3. Rockfon (Rockwool International).
  - 4. USG Corporation.
- B. Metal Suspension-System Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard, direct-hung, metal suspension system and accessories according to ASTM C 635/C 635M and designated by type, structural classification, and finish indicated.
  - 1. High-Humidity Finish: Where indicated, provide coating tested and classified for "severe environment performance" according to ASTM C 635/C 635M.
- C. Wide-Face, Single-Web, Steel Suspension System: Main and cross runners roll formed from cold-rolled steel sheet electrolytically zinc coated, with prefinished flanges of width indicated.
  - 1. Structural Classification: Heavy-duty system.
  - 2. Face Finish: Painted white .

## 2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Attachment Devices: Size for five times the design load indicated in ASTM C 635/C 635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung," unless otherwise indicated. Comply with seismic design requirements.
  - 1. Anchors in Concrete: Anchors of type and material indicated below, with holes or loops for attaching hangers of type indicated and with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to five times that imposed by ceiling construction, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488/E 488M or ASTM E 1512 as applicable, conducted by a qualified testing and inspecting agency.
    - a. Type: Postinstalled expansion anchors.
  - 2. Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hangers of type indicated and with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 10 times that imposed by ceiling construction, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 1190, conducted by a qualified testing and inspecting agency.
- B. Wire Hangers, Braces, and Ties: Provide wires as follows:

1. Zinc-Coated, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.
  2. Stainless-Steel Wire: ASTM A 580/A 580M, Type 304, nonmagnetic.
  3. Nickel-Copper-Alloy Wire: ASTM B 164, nickel-copper-alloy UNS No. N04400.
  4. Size: Wire diameter sufficient for its stress at three times hanger design load (ASTM C 635/C 635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung") will be less than yield stress of wire, but not less than 0.106-inch- diameter wire.
- C. Hanger Rods: Mild steel, zinc coated or protected with rust-inhibitive paint.
- D. Angle Hangers: Angles with legs not less than 7/8 inch wide; formed with 0.04-inch-thick, galvanized-steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation; with bolted connections and 5/16-inch- diameter bolts.
- E. Hold-Down Clips: Manufacturer's standard hold-down.
- F. Seismic Clips: Manufacturer's standard seismic clips designed to secure acoustical panels in place during a seismic event.
- G. Seismic Stabilizer Bars: Manufacturer's standard perimeter stabilizers designed to accommodate seismic forces.
- H. Seismic Struts: Manufacturer's standard compression struts designed to accommodate seismic forces.

## 2.6 METAL EDGE MOLDINGS AND TRIM

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide metal edge moldings and trim to match existing or comparable product by one of the following:
1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
  2. Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
  3. Rockfon (Rockwool International).
  4. USG Corporation.
- B. Roll-Formed, Sheet-Metal Edge Moldings and Trim: Type and profile indicated or, if not indicated, manufacturer's standard moldings for edges and penetrations that comply with seismic design requirements; formed from sheet metal of same material, finish, and color as that used for exposed flanges of suspension-system runners.
1. Edge moldings shall fit acoustical panel edge details and suspension systems indicated and match width and configuration of exposed runners unless otherwise indicated.
  2. For circular penetrations of ceiling, provide edge moldings fabricated to diameter required to fit penetration exactly.

## 2.7 ACOUSTICAL SEALANT

- A. Acoustical Sealant: Manufacturer's standard sealant complying with ASTM C 834 and effective in reducing airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.
  - 1. Exposed and Concealed Joints: Nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex sealant.
  - 2. Acoustical sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, including structural framing to which acoustical panel ceilings attach or abut, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements specified in this and other Sections that affect ceiling installation and anchorage and with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of acoustical panel ceilings.
- B. Examine acoustical panels before installation. Reject acoustical panels that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical panels to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width panels at borders unless otherwise indicated, and comply with layout shown on reflected ceiling plans.
- B. Layout openings for penetrations centered on the penetrating items.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install acoustical panel ceilings according to ASTM C 636/C 636M , seismic design requirements, and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Suspend ceiling hangers from building's structural members and as follows:
  - 1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structure or of ceiling suspension system.

2. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
  3. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with location of hangers at spacings required to support standard suspension-system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
  4. Secure wire hangers to ceiling-suspension members and to supports above with a minimum of three tight turns. Connect hangers directly to structure or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for substrate and that will not deteriorate or otherwise fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
  5. Secure flat, angle, channel, and rod hangers to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for both the structure to which hangers are attached and the type of hanger involved. Install hangers in a manner that will not cause them to deteriorate or fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
  6. Do not support ceilings directly from permanent metal forms or floor deck. Fasten hangers to cast-in-place hanger inserts, postinstalled mechanical or adhesive anchors, or power-actuated fasteners that extend through forms into concrete.
  7. When steel framing does not permit installation of hanger wires at spacing required, install carrying channels or other supplemental support for attachment of hanger wires.
  8. Do not attach hangers to steel deck tabs.
  9. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck. Attach hangers to structural members.
  10. Space hangers not more than 48 inches o.c. along each member supported directly from hangers unless otherwise indicated; provide hangers not more than 8 inches from ends of each member.
  11. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced standards.
- C. Secure bracing wires to ceiling suspension members and to supports with a minimum of four tight turns. Suspend bracing from building's structural members as required for hangers, without attaching to permanent metal forms, steel deck, or steel deck tabs. Fasten bracing wires into concrete with cast-in-place or postinstalled anchors.
- D. Install edge moldings and trim of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical panels.
1. Apply acoustical sealant in a continuous ribbon concealed on back of vertical legs of moldings before they are installed.
  2. Screw attach moldings to substrate at intervals not more than 16 inches o.c. and not more than 3 inches from ends. Miter corners accurately and connect securely.
  3. Do not use exposed fasteners, including pop rivets, on moldings and trim.
- E. Install suspension-system runners so they are square and securely interlocked with one another. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.
- F. Install acoustical panels with undamaged edges and fit accurately into suspension-system runners and edge moldings. Scribe and cut panels at borders and penetrations to provide precise fit.

1. For square-edged panels, install panels with edges fully hidden from view by flanges of suspension-system runners and moldings.
2. Paint cut edges of panel remaining exposed after installation; match color of exposed panel surfaces using coating recommended in writing for this purpose by acoustical panel manufacturer.
3. Install hold-down and clips in areas indicated; space according to panel manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Hold-Down Clips: Space 24 inches o.c. on all cross runners.

### 3.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Suspended Ceilings: Install main and cross runners level to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet , non-cumulative.
- B. Moldings and Trim: Install moldings and trim to substrate and level with ceiling suspension system to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet , non-cumulative.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
  1. Periodic inspection during the installation of suspended ceiling grids according to ASCE/SEI 7.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections of completed installations of acoustical panel ceiling hangers and anchors and fasteners in successive stages and when installation of ceiling suspension systems on each floor has reached 20 percent completion, but no panels have been installed. Do not proceed with installations of acoustical panel ceiling hangers for the next area until test results for previously completed installations of acoustical panel ceiling hangers show compliance with requirements.
  1. Within each test area, testing agency will select one of every 10 power-actuated fasteners and postinstalled anchors used to attach hangers to concrete and will test them for 200 lbf of tension; it will also select one of every two postinstalled anchors used to attach bracing wires to concrete and will test them for 440 lbf of tension.
  2. When testing discovers fasteners and anchors that do not comply with requirements, testing agency will test those anchors not previously tested until 20 pass consecutively and then will resume initial testing frequency.
- D. Acoustical panel ceiling hangers, anchors, and fasteners will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.



3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical panel ceilings, including trim, edge moldings, and suspension-system members. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage.
- B. Remove and replace ceiling components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

END OF SECTION 095113



## SECTION 096513 - RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Thermoplastic-rubber base.
  - 2. Rubber molding accessories.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

#### 2.2 THERMOPLASTIC-RUBBER BASE RB-1/RB-2

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Roppe Corporation; Roppe Holding Company or comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Johnsonite; a Tarkett company.
  - 3. Nora Systems, Inc.
- B. Product Standard: ASTM F 1861, Type TP (rubber, thermoplastic).
  - 1. Group: II (layered).
  - 2. Style and Location:
    - a. Style A, straight: Provide in areas with carpet.
    - b. Style B, Cove: Provide in areas with resilient floor coverings.
- C. Thickness: 0.125 inch.
- D. Height: 4 inches.
- E. Lengths: Coils in manufacturer's standard length.
- F. Outside Corners: Job formed.

- G. Inside Corners: Job formed.
- H. Colors: Match Architect's sample.

### 2.3 RUBBER MOLDING ACCESSORY

- A. Description: Rubber transition strips.
- B. Profile and Dimensions: As indicated.
- C. Locations: Provide rubber molding accessories in areas indicated.
- D. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors.

### 2.4 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland-cement-based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by resilient-product manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by resilient-product manufacturer for resilient products and substrate conditions indicated.
- C. Floor Polish: Provide protective, liquid floor-polish products recommended by resilient stair-tread manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- C. Do not install resilient products until materials are the same temperature as space where they are to be installed.
  - 1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient products and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.
- D. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products.

### 3.2 RESILIENT BASE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient base.
- B. Apply resilient base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework and cabinets in toe spaces, and other permanent fixtures in rooms and areas where base is required.
- C. Install resilient base in lengths as long as practical without gaps at seams and with tops of adjacent pieces aligned.
- D. Tightly adhere resilient base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with base in continuous contact with horizontal and vertical substrates.
- E. Do not stretch resilient base during installation.
- F. On masonry surfaces or other similar irregular substrates, fill voids along top edge of resilient base with manufacturer's recommended adhesive filler material.
- G. Job-Formed Corners:
  - 1. Outside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than 3 inches in length.
    - a. Form without producing discoloration (whitening) at bends.
  - 2. Inside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than 3 inches in length.
    - a. Miter or cope corners to minimize open joints.

### 3.3 RESILIENT ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient accessories.
- B. Resilient Molding Accessories: Butt to adjacent materials and tightly adhere to substrates throughout length of each piece. Install reducer strips at edges of floor covering that would otherwise be exposed.

### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting resilient products.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing resilient-product installation.
  - 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from exposed surfaces.
  - 2. Sweep and vacuum horizontal surfaces thoroughly.
  - 3. Damp-mop horizontal surfaces to remove marks and soil.

- C. Protect resilient products from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.
- D. Floor Polish: Remove soil, adhesive, and blemishes from resilient stair treads before applying liquid floor polish.
  - 1. Apply coat(s) as recommended by manufacturer.
- E. Cover resilient products subject to wear and foot traffic until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 096513

## SECTION 096519 - RESILIENT TILE FLOORING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Vinyl composition floor tile.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and pattern specified.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance data.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are competent in techniques required by manufacturer for floor tile installation.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For resilient floor tile, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 648 or NFPA 253 by a qualified testing agency.
  - 1. Critical Radiant Flux Classification: Class I, not less than 0.45 W/sq. cm.

#### 2.2 VINYL COMPOSITION FLOOR TILE

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. American Biltrite.
  - 2. Armstrong Flooring, Inc.
  - 3. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.

4. Johnsonite; a Tarkett company.
- B. Tile Standard: ASTM F 1066, Class 2, through pattern .
- C. Wearing Surface: Smooth .
- D. Thickness: 0.125 inch .
- E. Size: 12 by 12 inches.
- F. Colors and Patterns: Match Architect's samples .

### 2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland-cement-based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by floor tile manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by floor tile and adhesive manufacturers to suit floor tile and substrate conditions indicated.
- C. Floor Polish: Provide protective, liquid floor-polish products recommended by floor tile manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to floor tile manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Concrete Substrates: Prepare according to ASTM F 710.
  1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
  2. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by floor tile manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
  3. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by floor tile manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrate alkalinity falls within range on pH scale recommended by manufacturer in writing, but not less than 5 or more than 9 pH.
  4. Moisture Testing: Perform tests so that each test area does not exceed 200 sq. ft. , and perform no fewer than three tests in each installation area and with test areas evenly spaced in installation areas.
    - a. Relative Humidity Test: Using in-situ probes, ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 75 percent relative humidity level measurement.



- C. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- D. Do not install floor tiles until materials are the same temperature as space where they are to be installed.
  - 1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient floor tile and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.
- E. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient floor tile.

### 3.2 FLOOR TILE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing floor tile.
- B. Lay out floor tiles from center marks established with principal walls, discounting minor offsets, so tiles at opposite edges of room are of equal width. Adjust as necessary to avoid using cut widths that equal less than one-half tile at perimeter.
  - 1. Lay tiles square with room axis .
- C. Match floor tiles for color and pattern by selecting tiles from cartons in the same sequence as manufactured and packaged, if so numbered. Discard broken, cracked, chipped, or deformed tiles.
  - 1. Lay tiles with grain direction alternating in adjacent tiles (basket-weave pattern) .
- D. Scribe, cut, and fit floor tiles to butt neatly and tightly to vertical surfaces and permanent fixtures including built-in furniture, cabinets, pipes, outlets, and door frames.
- E. Extend floor tiles into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, and similar openings. Extend floor tiles to center of door openings.
- F. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on floor tiles as marked on substrates. Use chalk or other nonpermanent marking device.
- G. Install floor tiles on covers for telephone and electrical ducts, building expansion-joint covers, and similar items in installation areas. Maintain overall continuity of color and pattern between pieces of tile installed on covers and adjoining tiles. Tightly adhere tile edges to substrates that abut covers and to cover perimeters.
- H. Adhere floor tiles to substrates using a full spread of adhesive applied to substrate to produce a completed installation without open cracks, voids, raising and puckering at joints, telegraphing of adhesive spreader marks, and other surface imperfections.
- I. Floor Polish: Remove soil, adhesive, and blemishes from floor tile surfaces before applying liquid floor polish.

1. Apply coat(s) as recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 096519

## SECTION 099123 - INTERIOR PAINTING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
1. Primers.
  2. Water-based finish coatings.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
1. Include Printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
  2. Indicate VOC content.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and in each color and gloss of topcoat.
1. Submit samples on rigid backing, 8 inches square.
  2. Apply coats on Samples in step to show each coat required for system.
  3. Label each coat of each Sample.
  4. Label each Sample for location and application area.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
1. Benjamin Moore & Co.
  2. PPG Paints.
  3. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).

#### 2.2 PAINT PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Material Compatibility:

1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
  2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- B. Colors: As indicated in a color schedule .
1. Five percent of surface area will be painted with deep tones.
- C. MPI Standards: Products shall comply with MPI standards indicated and shall be listed in its "MPI Approved Products Lists."

## 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing of Paint Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure:
1. Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample paint materials. Contractor will be notified in advance and may be present when samples are taken. If paint materials have already been delivered to Project site, samples may be taken at Project site. Samples will be identified, sealed, and certified by testing agency.
  2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with product requirements.
  3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying paints if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying paint materials from Project site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces painted with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with complying materials, the two paints are incompatible.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
- C. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.
- D. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
- C. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.
- C. Painting Fire-Suppression, Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, Communication, and Electronic Safety and Security Work:
  - 1. Paint the following work where exposed in equipment rooms:
    - a. Uninsulated metal piping.
    - b. Pipe hangers and supports.
    - c. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having cotton or canvas insulation covering or other paintable jacket material.
  - 2. Paint portions of internal surfaces of metal ducts, without liner, behind air inlets and outlets that are visible from occupied spaces.

### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- B. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- C. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

### 3.5 INTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

- A. Steel Substrates:

1. Alkyd System MPI INT 5.1E (Hollow Metal Door Frames) :
  - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd quick-dry primer for metal, MPI #76 .
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Alkyd, interior, matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Interior, alkyd, semi gloss MPI Gloss Level 5 .
  
- B. Gypsum Board Substrates:
  1. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex System MPI INT 9.2M :
    - a. Prime Coat: Interior, institutional low-odor/VOC primer sealer, MPI #149.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, institutional low odor/VOC, matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Interior, latex, institutional low odor/VOC, (MPI Gloss Level 3), MPI #145. (Egg-shell - Walls) .
  2. Water-Based Light-Industrial Coating System MPI INT 9.2L: (Print Room Walls) :
    - a. Prime Coat: Interior latex primer sealer, MPI #50.
      - 1) Sherwin Williams ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Primer, B28W2600, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.0 mils dry.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Light industrial coating, interior, water based, matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Interior, water-based, light-industrial coating, eggshell .
      - 1) Sherwin Williams, Pro Industrial K45W00151, at 4.0 mils wet, 1.5 mils dry, per coat.

END OF SECTION 099123

## SECTION 210517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Sleeves.
  - 2. Sleeve-seal systems.
  - 3. Grout.
  - 4. Silicone sealants.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Advance Products & Systems
  - 2. CALPICO, Inc.
  - 3. GPT; and EnPro Industries Company
- B. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, with plain ends and integral welded waterstop collar.
- C. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

## 2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Advance Products & Systems
  2. CALPICO, Inc.
  3. GPT; and EnPro Industries Company
  4. Metraflex Company
  5. Proco Products, Inc.
- B. Description:
1. Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
  2. Designed to form a hydrostatic seal of 20 psig (137 kPa) minimum.
  3. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size.
  4. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
  5. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, ASTM B633 of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

## 2.3 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink, for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## 2.4 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant, ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Dow Corning Corporation
    - b. GE Construction Sealants
    - c. Polymeric Systems, Inc.
    - d. Schnee-Morehead, Inc.



e. Sherwin-Williams Company

B. Silicone, S, P, 25, T, NT: Single-component, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT. Grade P Pourable (self-leveling) formulation is for opening in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. May National Associates, a subsidiary of Sika Corporation

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.

B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves sized per NFPA 13 between piping and concrete slabs and walls.

C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.

1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.

a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.

2. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.

D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.

1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.

2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.

3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.

E. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
- B. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.4 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
  - 1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade (Required for all Fire Suppression Piping):
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150): Steel pipe sleeves.
    - b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves.
  - 2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade (Required for all Fire Suppression Piping):
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150): Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
    - b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
  - 3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade (Required for all Fire Suppression Piping):
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150): Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.

- 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
- b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
  - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for [1-inch (25-mm)] <Insert dimension> annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
4. Concrete Slabs above Grade (Required for all Fire Suppression Piping):
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150): Steel pipe sleeves.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150): Steel pipe sleeves.
5. Interior Partitions (Required for all Fire Suppression Piping):
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150): Steel pipe sleeves.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Galvanized-steel sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION 210517



## SECTION 210518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Escutcheons.
  - 2. Floor plates.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. BrassCraft Manufacturing Co.; a Masco company.
  - 2. Dearborn Brass.
  - 3. Jones Stephens Corp.
  - 4. Keeney Manufacturing Company (The).
  - 5. Mid-America Fittings, Inc.
  - 6. ProFlo; a Ferguson Enterprises, Inc. brand.

#### 2.2 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped steel with polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

- D. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish; concealed hinge; and spring-clip fasteners.

## 2.3 FLOOR PLATES

- A. Split Floor Plates: Steel with concealed hinge.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping and Relocated Existing Piping:
    - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep pattern.
    - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - 2. Escutcheons for Existing Piping to Remain:
    - a. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - b. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - d. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. New Piping and Relocated Existing Piping: Split floor plate.
  - 2. Existing Piping: Split floor plate.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Using new materials, replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates.

END OF SECTION 210518





## SECTION 210523 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR WATER-BASED FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Iron butterfly valves with indicators.
  - 2. Check valves.
  - 3. Iron OS&Y gate valves.
  - 4. NRS gate valves.
  - 5. Indicator posts.
  - 6. Trim and drain valves.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain each type of valve from single manufacturer.

#### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. UL Listed: Valves shall be listed in UL's "Online Certifications Directory" under the headings listed below and shall bear UL mark:
  - 1. Fire Main Equipment: HAMV - Main Level.
    - a. Indicator Posts, Gate Valve: HCBZ - Level 1.
    - b. Ball Valves, System Control: HLUG - Level 3.
    - c. Butterfly Valves: HLXS - Level 3.
    - d. Check Valves: HMER - Level 3.
    - e. Gate Valves: HMRZ - Level 3.

2. Sprinkler System & Water Spray System Devices: VDGT - Main Level.
    - a. Valves, Trim and Drain: VQGU - Level 1.
  - B. FM Global Approved: Valves shall be listed in its "Approval Guide," under the headings listed below:
    1. Automated Sprinkler Systems:
      - a. Indicator posts.
      - b. Valves.
        - 1) Gate valves.
        - 2) Check valves
        - 3) Miscellaneous valves.
  - C. ASME Compliance:
    1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded-end valves.
    2. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
    3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
  - D. AWWA Compliance: Comply with AWWA C606 for grooved-end connections.
  - E. NFPA Compliance for valves:
    1. Comply with NFPA 13, NFPA 14, NFPA 20, and NFPA 24.
  - F. Valve Pressure Ratings: Not less than the minimum pressure rating indicated or higher, as required by system pressures.
  - G. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
  - H. Valve Actuator Types:
    1. Worm-gear actuator with handwheel for quarter-turn valves, except for trim and drain valves.
    2. Handwheel: For other than quarter-turn trim and drain valves.
    3. Handlever: For quarter-turn trim and drain valves **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and smaller.
- 2.3 IRON BUTTERFLY VALVES WITH INDICATORS
- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    1. ALEUM USA.
    2. Anvil International.
    3. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation.
    4. Kennedy Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.

5. NIBCO INC.
6. Tyco by Johnson Controls Company.
7. Victaulic Company.
8. Zurn Industries, LLC.

B. Description:

1. Standard: UL 1091 and FM Global standard for indicating valves, (butterfly or ball type), Class Number 112.
2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
3. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron with nylon, EPDM, epoxy, or polyamide coating.
4. Seat Material: EPDM.
5. Stem: Stainless steel.
6. Disc: Ductile iron, and EPDM or SBR coated.
7. Actuator: Worm gear.
8. Supervisory Switch: Internal or external.
9. Body Design: Lug or wafer.

## 2.4 CHECK VALVES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. ALEUM USA.
2. Ames Fire & Waterworks; A WATTS Brand.
3. Anvil International.
4. FEBCO; A WATTS Brand.
5. Fire Protection Products, Inc.
6. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation.
7. Kennedy Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
8. Matco-Norca.
9. Mueller Co.
10. NIBCO INC.
11. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The).
12. Shurjoint; a part of Aalberts Integrated piping Systems.
13. Tyco by Johnson Controls Company.
14. United Brass Works, Inc.
15. Venus Fire Protection Ltd.
16. Victaulic Company.
17. Viking Corporation.
18. WATTS.
19. Wilson & Cousins Inc.
20. Zurn Industries, LLC.

B. Description:

1. Standard: UL 312 and FM Global standard for swing check valves, Class Number 1210.

2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
3. Type: Single swing check.
4. Body Material: Cast iron, ductile iron, or bronze.
5. Clapper: Bronze, ductile iron, or stainless steel with elastomeric seal.
6. Clapper Seat: Brass, bronze, or stainless steel.
7. Hinge Shaft: Bronze or stainless steel.
8. Hinge Spring: Stainless steel.
9. End Connections: Flanged, grooved, or threaded.

## 2.5 IRON OS&Y GATE VALVES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. American Cast Iron Pipe Company.
2. Clow Valve Company; a subsidiary of McWane, Inc.
3. Hammond Valve.
4. Kennedy Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
5. Mueller Co.
6. NIBCO INC.
7. Victaulic Company.
8. WATTS.
9. Zurn Industries, LLC.

- B. Description:

1. Standard: UL 262 and FM Global standard for fire-service water control valves (OS&Y- and NRS-type gate valves).
2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
3. Body and Bonnet Material: Cast or ductile iron.
4. Wedge: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze with elastomeric coating.
5. Wedge Seat: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze with elastomeric coating.
6. Stem: Brass or bronze.
7. Packing: Non-asbestos PTFE.
8. Supervisory Switch: External.
9. End Connections: Flanged.

## 2.6 NRS GATE VALVES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. American Cast Iron Pipe Company.
2. Clow Valve Company; a subsidiary of McWane, Inc.
3. Kennedy Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
4. Mueller Co.
5. NIBCO INC.

6. Victaulic Company.
7. Zurn Industries, LLC.

B. Description:

1. Standard: UL 262 and FM Global standard for fire-service water control valves (OS&Y- and NRS-type gate valves).
2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
3. Body and Bonnet Material: Cast or ductile iron.
4. Wedge: Cast or ductile iron with elastomeric coating.
5. Wedge Seat: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze with elastomeric coating.
6. Stem: Brass or bronze.
7. Packing: Non-asbestos PTFE.
8. Supervisory Switch: External.
9. End Connections: Flanged.

## 2.7 INDICATOR POSTS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. American Cast Iron Pipe Company.
2. Clow Valve Company; a subsidiary of McWane, Inc.
3. Kennedy Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
4. Mueller Co.
5. NIBCO INC.

B. Description:

1. Standard: UL 789 and FM Global standard for indicator posts.
2. Type: Pit.
3. Base Barrel Material: Cast or ductile iron.
4. Extension Barrel: Cast or ductile iron.
5. Cap: Cast or ductile iron.
6. Operation: Handwheel.

## 2.8 TRIM AND DRAIN VALVES

A. Ball Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Apollo Valves; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems.
  - b. Fire Protection Products, Inc.
  - c. Fire-End & Croker Corporation.
  - d. Flowserve Corporation.

- e. FNW; Ferguson Enterprises, Inc.
- f. Jomar Valve.
- g. KITZ Corporation.
- h. Legend Valve & Fitting, Inc.
- i. Metso Automation USA Inc.
- j. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- k. NIBCO INC.
- l. Potter Roemer LLC; a Division of Morris Group International.
- m. Red-White Valve Corp.
- n. Tyco by Johnson Controls Company.
- o. Victaulic Company.
- p. WATTS.
- q. Zurn Industries, LLC.

2. Description:

- a. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa)
- b. Body Design: Two piece.
- c. Body Material: Forged brass or bronze.
- d. Port size: Full or standard.
- e. Seats: PTFE.
- f. Stem: Bronze or stainless steel.
- g. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- h. Actuator: Handlever.
- i. End Connections for Valves NPS 1 (DN 25) through NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Threaded ends.
- j. End Connections for Valves NPS 1-1/4 and NPS 2-1/2 (DN 32 and DN 65): Grooved ends.

B. Angle Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

- a. Fire Protection Products, Inc.
- b. NIBCO INC.
- c. United Brass Works, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa)
- b. Body Material: Brass or bronze.
- c. Ends: Threaded.
- d. Stem: Bronze.
- e. Disc: Bronze.
- f. Packing: Asbestos free.
- g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

C. Globe Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. NIBCO INC.
  - b. United Brass Works, Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa)
  - b. Body Material: Bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
  - c. Ends: Threaded.
  - d. Stem: Bronze.
  - e. Disc Holder and Nut: Bronze.
  - f. Disc Seat: Nitrile.
  - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
  - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with requirements in the following Sections for specific valve-installation requirements and applications:
  1. Section 211200 "Fire-Suppression Standpipes" for application of valves in fire-suppression standpipes.
  2. Section 211313 "Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems" for application of valves in wet-pipe, fire-suppression sprinkler systems.
  3. Section 211316 "Dry-Pipe Sprinkler Systems" for application of valves in dry-pipe, fire-suppression sprinkler systems.
- B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised-open, located to control sources of water supply, except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs, indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.
- C. Install double-check valve assembly in each fire-protection water-supply connection.
- D. Install valves having threaded connections with unions at each piece of equipment arranged to allow easy access, service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown. Provide separate support where necessary.
- E. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above the pipe center.
- F. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- G. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 210553 "Identification for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules and signs on surfaces concealing valves; and the NFPA standard applying to the piping system in

which valves are installed. Install permanent identification signs indicating the portion of system controlled by each valve.

END OF SECTION 210523



## SECTION 210529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
- 2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
- 3. Metal framing systems.
- 4. Thermal hanger-shield inserts.
- 5. Fastener systems.
- 6. Equipment supports.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 210548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment" for vibration isolation devices and seismic restraints.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:

- 1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
- 2. Metal framing systems.
- 3. Equipment supports.

- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

- 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.
- 2. Include design calculations for designing trapeze hangers.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural-Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to 2015 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for fire-suppression piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE 7-16.
  - 1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
  - 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
  - 3. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 13.
- D. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 203.

#### 2.2 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
  - 1. Description: Factory-fabricated components, NFPA approved, UL listed, or FM approved for fire-suppression piping support.
  - 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot-dip galvanized.
  - 3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
- B. Copper Pipe and Tube Hangers:
  - 1. Description: Copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components, NFPA approved, UL listed, or FM approved for fire-suppression piping support.
  - 2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel.

### 2.3 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-58, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly, made from structural-carbon-steel shapes, with NFPA-approved, UL-listed, or FM-approved carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

### 2.4 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

#### A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. B-line, an Eaton business.
  - b. Flex-Strut Inc.
  - c. G-Strut.
  - d. Haydon Corporation.
  - e. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
  - f. Unistrut; Part of Atkore International.
  - g. Wesanco, Inc.
- 2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly, made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
- 3. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
- 4. Channels: Continuous slotted carbon-steel channel with inturned lips.
- 5. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
- 6. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
- 7. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

#### B. Non-MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Anvil International.
  - b. CADDY; a brand of nVent.
  - c. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
  - d. Empire Industries, Inc.
  - e. PHD Manufacturing, Inc.
- 2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly, made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
- 3. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
- 4. Channels: Continuous slotted carbon-steel channel with inturned lips.

5. Channel Width: Select for applicable load criteria.
6. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
7. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

## 2.5 THERMAL HANGER-SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  1. CADDY; a brand of nVent.
  2. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
  3. Clement Support Services.
  4. National Pipe Hanger Corporation.
  5. Pipe Shields Inc.
  6. Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
  7. Rilco Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  8. Value Engineered Products, Inc.
- B. Insulation-Insert Material: ASTM C552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psi (688-kPa) or ASTM C591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psi (862-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
- C. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- D. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- E. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches (50 mm) beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

## 2.6 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: NFPA-approved, UL-listed, or FM-approved threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Hilti, Inc.
    - b. ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
    - c. MKT Fastening, LLC.
    - d. Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.

- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: NFPA-approved, UL-listed, or FM-approved, insert-wedge-type anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. B-line, an Eaton business.
    - b. Empire Tool and Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    - c. Hilti, Inc.
    - d. ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
    - e. MKT Fastening, LLC.
  - 2. Indoor Applications: Zinc-coated steel.
  - 3. Outdoor Applications: Stainless steel.

## 2.7 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: NFPA-approved, UL-listed, or FM-approved, welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support, made from structural-carbon-steel shapes.

## 2.8 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: ASTM B221 (ASTM B221M).
- B. Carbon Steel: ASTM A1011/A1011M.
- C. Structural Steel: ASTM A36/A36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- D. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M.
- E. Grout: ASTM C1107/C1107M, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout, suitable for interior and exterior applications.
  - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation, for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components, so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb (90 kg).

### 3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with installation requirements of approvals and listings. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size, or install intermediate supports for smaller-diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
  - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A36/A36M carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal strut systems.
- D. Thermal Hanger-Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- E. Fastener System Installation:
  - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick in concrete, after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual. Install in accordance with approvals and listings.
  - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete, after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions. Install in accordance with approvals and listings.
- F. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.

- G. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- H. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- I. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- J. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms, and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- K. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports, so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- L. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- M. Insulated Piping:
  - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
    - a. Piping Operating Above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
    - b. Piping Operating Below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal hanger-shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
    - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
  - 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39 protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
    - a. Option: Thermal hanger-shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
  - 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40 protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
    - a. Option: Thermal hanger-shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
  - 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
    - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 8 to DN 90): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.048 inch (1.22 mm) thick.
    - b. NPS 4 (DN 100): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.

- c. NPS 5 and NPS 6 (DN 125 and DN 150): 18 inches (457 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.
  - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14 (DN 200 to DN 350): 24 inches (610 mm) long and 0.075 inch (1.91 mm) thick.
  - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24 (DN 400 to DN 600): 24 inches (610 mm) long and 0.105 inch (2.67 mm) thick.
5. Pipes NPS 8 (DN 200) and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
  6. Thermal Hanger Shields: Install with insulation of same thickness as piping insulation.

### 3.3 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment, and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

### 3.4 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
  1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  4. Finish welds at exposed connections, so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches (40 mm).



### 3.6 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded, shop-painted areas. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as those used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils (0.05 mm).
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas, and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.

### 3.7 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with NFPA requirements for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finishes.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and metal framing systems and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers and stainless-steel or corrosion-resistant attachments for hostile environment applications.
- G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper or stainless-steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- H. Use thermal hanger-shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- I. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Comply with NFPA requirements. Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750).
  - 2. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 (DN 15 to DN 600) if little or no insulation is required.
  - 3. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200).

4. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8 (DN 10 to DN 200).
  5. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3 (DN 10 to DN 80).
  6. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750).
  7. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36 (DN 100 to DN 900), with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
  8. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36 (DN 100 to DN 900), with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
  9. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 (DN 65 to DN 900) if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
- J. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 (DN 24 to DN 600).
  2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 (DN 20 to DN 600) if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- K. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Comply with NFPA requirements.
- L. Building Attachments: Comply with NFPA requirements. Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable-Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
  2. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  3. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
- M. Saddles and Shields: Comply with NFPA requirements. Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
  3. Thermal Hanger-Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- N. Comply with NFPA requirements for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- O. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION 210529



## SECTION 210548 - VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Elastomeric isolation pads.
2. Elastomeric isolation mounts.
3. Restrained elastomeric isolation mounts.
4. Pipe-riser resilient supports.
5. Resilient pipe guides.
6. Elastomeric hangers.
7. Snubbers.
8. Restraint channel bracings.
9. Seismic-restraint accessories.
10. Mechanical anchor bolts.
11. Adhesive anchor bolts.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for devices for plumbing equipment and systems.
2. Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" for devices for HVAC equipment and systems.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. IBC: International Building Code.
- B. ICC-ES: ICC-Evaluation Service.
- C. OSHPD: Office of Statewide Health Planning & Development (for the State of California).

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

##### A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of vibration isolation device and seismic-restraint component required.
  - a. Tabulate types and sizes of seismic restraints, complete with report numbers and rated strength in tension and shear as evaluated by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - b. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.
3. Interlocking Snubbers: Include ratings for horizontal, vertical, and combined loads.

##### B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each vibration isolation and seismic-restraint device.

1. Include design calculations and details for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints complying with performance requirements, design criteria, and analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
2. Design Calculations: Calculate static and dynamic loading due to equipment weight and operation, due to seismic forces required to select vibration isolators, and due to seismic restraints.
3. Riser Supports: Include riser diagrams and calculations showing anticipated expansion and contraction at each support point, initial and final loads on building structure, spring deflection changes, and seismic loads. Include certification that riser system was examined for excessive stress and that none exists.
4. Seismic-Restraint Details:
  - a. Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of seismic restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.
  - b. Details: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to the restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacings. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and values of forces transmitted to the structure during seismic events. Indicate association with vibration isolation devices.
  - c. Coordinate seismic-restraint and vibration isolation details with wind-restraint details required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.
  - d. Preapproval and Evaluation Documentation: By an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum ratings of restraint items and the basis for approval (tests or calculations).

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of vibration isolation device installation and seismic bracing for fire-suppression piping and equipment with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and restraints, if any.
- B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7 and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Comply with seismic-restraint requirements in the IBC unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.
- C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- D. Seismic-restraint devices shall have horizontal and vertical load testing and analysis and shall bear anchorage preapproval OPA number from OSHPD, preapproval by ICC-ES, or preapproval by another agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum seismic-restraint ratings. Ratings based on independent testing are preferred to ratings based on calculations. If preapproved ratings are unavailable, submittals based on independent testing are preferred. Calculations (including combining shear and tensile loads) to support seismic-restraint designs must be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Support for Fire-Suppression systems, components, and elements permanently attached to the building structure or supported by non-building structures shall be designed and installed to meet the requirements of IBC-2018 and ASCE 7-16 "American Society of Civil Engineers – Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and other Structures." Provide a submittal signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer which includes design calculations for vibration, seismic and wind.

### 2.2 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION PADS

- A. Elastomeric Isolation Pads:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Ace Mountings Co.
  - b. California Dynamics Corp.
  - c. Isolation Technology, Inc.
  - d. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - e. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - f. Novia: A Division of C&P
  - g. Vibration Eliminator Co, Inc.
  - h. Vibration Isolation
  - i. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
  
2. Fabrication: Single or multiple layers of sufficient durometer stiffness for uniform loading over pad area.
3. Size: Factory or field cut to match requirements of supported equipment.
4. Pad Material: Oil and water resistant with elastomeric properties.
5. Surface Pattern: Ribbed pattern.
6. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.
7. Load-bearing metal plates adhered to pads.
8. Sandwich-Core Material: Resilient and elastomeric.
  - a. Surface Pattern: Ribbed pattern.
  - b. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.

### 2.3 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION MOUNTS

#### A. Double-Deflection, Elastomeric Isolation Mounts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Ace Mountings Co.
  - b. California Dynamics Corp.
  - c. Isolation Technology, Inc.
  - d. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - e. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - f. Novia: A Division of C&P
  - g. Vibration Eliminator Co, Inc.
  - h. Vibration Isolation
  - i. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
  
2. Mounting Plates:
  - a. Top Plate: Encapsulated steel load transfer top plates, factory drilled and threaded with threaded studs or bolts.



- b. Baseplate: Encapsulated steel bottom plates with holes provided for anchoring to support structure.
3. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material.

## 2.4 RESTRAINED ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION MOUNTS

### A. Restrained Elastomeric Isolation Mounts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Ace Mountings Co.
  - b. California Dynamics Corp.
  - c. Isolation Technology, Inc.
  - d. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - e. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - f. Novia: A Division of C&P
  - g. Vibration Eliminator Co, Inc.
  - h. Vibration Isolation
  - i. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
2. Description: All-directional isolator with seismic restraints containing two separate and opposing elastomeric elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.
  - a. Housing: Cast-ductile iron or welded steel.
  - b. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene or other elastomeric material.

## 2.5 PIPE-RISER RESILIENT SUPPORT

- ### A. Description: All-directional, acoustical pipe anchor consisting of two steel tubes separated by a minimum 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) thick neoprene.
1. Vertical-Limit Stops: Steel and neoprene vertical-limit stops arranged to prevent vertical travel in both directions.
  2. Maximum Load Per Support: 500 psig (3.45 MPa) on isolation material providing equal isolation in all directions.

## 2.6 RESILIENT PIPE GUIDES

- ### A. Description: Telescopic arrangement of two steel tubes or post-and-sleeve arrangement separated by a minimum 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) thick neoprene.

1. Factory-Set Height Guide with Shear Pin: Shear pin shall be removable and reinsertable to allow for selection of pipe movement. Guides shall be capable of motion to meet location requirements.

## 2.7 ELASTOMERIC HANGERS

### A. Elastomeric Mount in a Steel Frame with Upper and Lower Steel Hanger Rods:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Ace Mountings Co.
  - b. California Dynamics Corp.
  - c. Isolation Technology, Inc.
  - d. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - e. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - f. Novia: A Division of C&P
  - g. Vibration Eliminator Co, Inc.
  - h. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
2. Frame: Steel, fabricated with a connection for an upper threaded hanger rod and an opening on the underside to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular lower hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
3. Dampening Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material with a projecting bushing for the underside opening preventing steel to steel contact.

## 2.8 SNUBBERS

### A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
- b. Mason Industries, Inc.
- c. Novia: A Division of C&P
- d. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

### B. Description: Factory fabricated using welded structural-steel shapes and plates, anchor bolts, and replaceable resilient isolation washers and bushings.

1. Anchor bolts for attaching to concrete shall be seismic-rated, drill-in, and stud-wedge or female-wedge type.
2. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene.
3. Maximum 1/4-inch (6-mm) air gap, and minimum 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) thick resilient cushion.

## 2.9 RESTRAINT CHANNEL BRACINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- a. B-line, an Eaton Business
  - b. Hilti, Inc.
  - c. Mason Industries, inc.
  - d. Unistrut; Part of Atkore International
- B. Description: MFMA-4, shop- or field-fabricated bracing assembly made of slotted steel channels with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end and other matching components and with corrosion-resistant coating; rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.

## 2.10 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT ACCESSORIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- a. B-line, an Eaton Business
  - b. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - c. Mason Industries, inc.
  - d. Novia: A Division of C&P
  - e. TOLCO
  - f. Vibration & Seismic Technologies
- B. Hanger-Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections to hanger rod.
- C. Hinged and Swivel Brace Attachments: Multifunctional steel connectors for attaching hangers to rigid channel bracings.
- D. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor Bolts: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of anchor bolts and studs.
- E. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of attachment devices used.
- F. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.

## 2.11 MECHANICAL ANCHOR BOLTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. B-line, an Eaton Business
  - b. Hilti, Inc.
  - c. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - d. Mason Industries, inc.
- B. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

## 2.12 ADHESIVE ANCHOR BOLTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Hilti, Inc.
  - b. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - c. Mason Industries, inc.
- B. Adhesive Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and capsule anchor system containing PVC or urethane methacrylate-based resin and accelerator, or injected polymer or hybrid mortar adhesive. Provide anchor bolts and hardware with zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation and seismic-control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 APPLICATIONS

- A. Multiple Pipe Supports: Secure pipes to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Hanger-Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger-rod stiffeners where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods due to seismic forces.
- C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength is adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

### 3.3 VIBRATION CONTROL AND SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Installation of vibration isolators must not cause any change of position of equipment, piping, or ductwork resulting in stresses or misalignment.
- C. Comply with requirements in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for installation of equipment supports and roof penetrations.
- D. Equipment Restraints:
  - 1. Install seismic snubbers on fire-suppression equipment mounted on vibration isolators. Locate snubbers as close as possible to vibration isolators and bolt to equipment base and supporting structure.
  - 2. Install resilient bolt isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch (3.2 mm).
  - 3. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that provides required submittals for component.
- E. Piping Restraints:
  - 1. Comply with requirements in MSS SP-127.
  - 2. Space lateral supports a maximum of **40 feet (12 m)** o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of **80 feet (24 m)** o.c.
  - 3. Brace a change of direction longer than 12 feet (3.7 m).
- F. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that provides required submittals for component.
- G. Install bushing assemblies for anchor bolts for floor-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media between anchor bolt and mounting hole in concrete base.

- H. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.
- I. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.
- J. Drilled-in Anchors:
  - 1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
  - 2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
  - 3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
  - 4. Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
  - 5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
  - 6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.

### 3.4 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION

- A. Install flexible connections in piping where they cross seismic joints, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where the connections terminate with connection to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting the connections as they approach equipment. Comply with requirements in Section 211200 "Fire-Suppression Standpipes," Section 211313 "Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems," and Section 211316 "Dry-Pipe Sprinkler Systems" for piping flexible connections.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Provide evidence of recent calibration of test equipment by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2. Schedule test with Owner, through Architect, before connecting anchorage device to restrained component (unless postconnection testing has been approved), and with at least seven days' advance notice.
  3. Obtain Architect's approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.
  4. Test at least four of each type and size of installed anchors and fasteners selected by Architect.
  5. Test to 90 percent of rated proof load of device.
  6. Measure isolator restraint clearance.
  7. Measure isolator deflection.
  8. Verify snubber minimum clearances.
- D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 210548





## SECTION 210553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Equipment labels.
  - 2. Warning signs and labels.
  - 3. Pipe labels.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Metal Labels for Equipment:
  - 1. Material and Thickness: anodized aluminum, 0.032 inch (0.8 mm) thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
  - 2. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
  - 3. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
  - 4. Fasteners: Stainless-steel self-tapping screws.
  - 5. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

- C. Equipment-Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4) bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules) and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## 2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: White.
- C. Background Color: Red.
- D. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
- E. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- F. Fasteners: Stainless-steel self-tapping screws.
- G. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- H. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

## 2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service and showing flow direction.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe-Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; pipe size; and an arrow indicating flow direction.
  - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping-system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
  - 2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) high.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

### 3.2 LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- D. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.
- E. Pipe-Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
  - 1. Near each valve and control device.
  - 2. Near each branch connection excluding short takeoffs. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
  - 3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
  - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
  - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
  - 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet (15 m) along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet (7.6 m) in areas of congested piping and equipment.
  - 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

END OF SECTION 210553



## SECTION 211313 - WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Pipes, fittings, and specialties.
  - 2. Specialty valves.
  - 3. Sprinklers.
  - 4. Alarm devices.
  - 5. Pressure gages.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
  - 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Sprinkler systems, drawn to scale, on which items of other systems and equipment are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved.
- B. Approved Sprinkler Piping Drawings: Working plans, prepared according to NFPA 13, that have been approved by authorities having jurisdiction, including hydraulic calculations if applicable.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems and specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
  - 1. Installer's responsibilities include designing, fabricating, and installing sprinkler systems and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility. Base calculations on results of fire-hydrant flow test.
    - a. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of working plans, calculations, and field test reports by a qualified professional engineer.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Sprinkler system equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing shall comply with the following:
  - 1. NFPA 13.
- B. Standard-Pressure Piping System Component: Listed for 175-psig (1200-kPa) minimum working pressure.
- C. Delegated Design: Design Sprinkler System(s), including comprehensive engineering analysis by a NICET Certified Designer (Minimum Level III), in "Water-Based Fire Protection Systems Layout" or a registered Fire Protection Engineer in the state of South Carolina, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
  - 1. For fire-hydrant flow test records: Reference the "Fire Sprinkler System Specification Sheet".
  - 2. Sprinkler system design shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
    - a. Margin of Safety for Available Water Flow and Pressure: 10 percent, including losses through water-service piping, valves, and backflow preventers.
    - b. Sprinkler Occupancy Hazard Classifications: Reference the "Fire Sprinkler System Specification Sheet".
  - 3. Minimum Density for Automatic-Sprinkler Piping Design: Reference the "Fire Sprinkler System Specification Sheet".
  - 4. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler: According to UL listing.

5. Total Combined Hose-Stream Demand Requirement: Reference the “Fire Sprinkler System Specification Sheet.”

D. Seismic Performance: Sprinkler piping shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to NFPA 13 and ASCE/SEI 7.

## 2.2 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Standard-Weight, Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E Grade B Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.

B. Schedule 10, Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135/A 135M or ASTM A 795/A 795M, threadable. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.

C. Black-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M, standard-weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.

D. Uncoated-Steel Couplings: ASTM A 865/A 865M, threaded.

E. Uncoated, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.

F. Malleable- or Ductile-Iron Unions: UL 860.

G. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME 16.1, Class 125.

H. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, Class 150.

1. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick or EPDM rubber gasket.

- a. Class 125 and Class 250, Cast-Iron, Flat-Face Flanges: Full-face gaskets.
- b. Class 150 and Class 300, Ductile-Iron or -Steel, Raised-Face Flanges: Ring-type gaskets.

2. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

I. Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M and ASME B16.9.

1. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

J. Grooved-Joint, Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:

K. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Anvil International
- b. Corcoran Piping System Company
- c. National Fittings, Inc.
- d. Shurjoint Piping Products

- e. Smith-Cooper International
  - f. Tyco Fire Products LP
  - g. Victaulic Company
2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig (1200-kPa) minimum.
  3. Uncoated Grooved-End Fittings for Steel Piping: ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron casting or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting, with dimensions matching steel pipe.
  4. Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings for Steel Piping: AWWA C606 and UL 213 rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gasket, and bolts and nuts.
- L. Steel Pressure-Seal Fittings: UL 213, FM Global-approved, 175-psig (1200-kPa) pressure rating with steel housing, rubber O-rings, and pipe stop; for use with fitting manufacturers' pressure-seal tools.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Victaulic Company

## 2.3 SPECIALTY VALVES

- A. Pressure Rating:
1. Standard-Pressure Piping Specialty Valves: 175-psig (1200-kPa) minimum.
- B. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
- C. Size: Same as connected piping.
- D. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
- E. Alarm Valves:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation
    - b. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler
    - c. Tyco Fire Products LP
    - d. Venus Fire Protection Ltd
    - e. Victaulic Company
    - f. Viking Corporation
  2. Standard: UL 193.
  3. Design: For horizontal or vertical installation.



4. Include trim sets for bypass, drain, electrical sprinkler alarm switch, pressure gages, retarding chamber, and fill-line attachment with strainer.
5. Drip Cup Assembly: Pipe drain without valves and separate from main drain piping.
6. Drip Cup Assembly: Pipe drain with check valve to main drain piping.
7. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application

F. Deluge Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. BERMAD Control Valves
  - b. CLA-VAL Automatic Control
  - c. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corp
  - d. Kiddie Fire Fighting
  - e. OCV Control Valves
  - f. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler
  - g. Tyco Fire Products LP
  - h. Venus Fire Protection Ltd
  - i. Victaulic Company
  - j. Viking Corporation
2. Standard: UL 260.
3. Design: Hydraulically operated, differential-pressure type.
4. Include trim sets for alarm-test bypass, drain, electrical water-flow alarm switch, pressure gages, drip cup assembly piped without valves and separate from main drain line, and fill-line attachment with strainer.
5. Wet, Pilot-Line Trim Set: Include gage to read diaphragm-chamber pressure and manual control station for manual operation of deluge valve, and connection for actuation device.

G. Automatic (Ball Drip) Drain Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler
  - b. Tyco Fire Products LP
2. Standard: UL 1726.
3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig (1200-kPa) minimum.
4. Type: Automatic draining, ball check.
5. Size: NPS 3/4 (DN 20).
6. End Connections: Threaded.

## 2.4 SPRINKLER PIPING SPECIALTIES

### A. Branch Outlet Fittings:

1. Standard: UL 213.
2. Pressure Rating: [175-psig (1200-kPa) minimum] [300 psig (2070 kPa)].
3. Body Material: Ductile-iron housing with EPDM seals and bolts and nuts.
4. Type: Mechanical-tee and -cross fittings.
5. Configurations: Snap-on and strapless, ductile-iron housing with branch outlets.
6. Size: Of dimension to fit onto sprinkler main and with outlet connections as required to match connected branch piping.
7. Branch Outlets: Grooved, plain-end pipe, or threaded.

### B. Flow Detection and Test Assemblies:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. AGF Manufacturing, Inc.
  - b. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler
  - c. Tyco Fire Products LP
  - d. Victaulic Company
2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig (1200-kPa) minimum.
4. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with orifice, sight glass, and integral test valve.
5. Size: Same as connected piping.
6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded or grooved.

### C. Branch Line Testers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. AGF Manufacturing, Inc.
  - b. Elkhart Brass Mfg. Co.
  - c. Fire-End & Croker Corporation
  - d. Potter Electric Signal Co
  - e. Potter Roemer LLC.
2. Standard: UL 199.
3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
4. Body Material: Brass.
5. Size: Same as connected piping.
6. Inlet: Threaded.
7. Drain Outlet: Threaded and capped.
8. Branch Outlet: Threaded, for sprinkler.

D. Sprinkler Inspector's Test Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. AGF Manufacturing, Inc.
  - b. Triple R Specialty
  - c. Tyco Fire Products LP
  - d. Victaulic Company
  - e. Viking Corporation
2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig (1200-kPa) minimum.
4. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with sight glass.
5. Size: Same as connected piping.
6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

E. Adjustable Drop Nipples:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Aegis Technologies, Inc.
  - b. CECA, LLC
  - c. Cocoran Piping SystemCo.
  - d. Merit Manufacturing
2. Standard: UL 1474.
3. Pressure Rating: 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum.
4. Body Material: Steel pipe with EPDM-rubber O-ring seals.
5. Size: Same as connected piping.
6. Length: Adjustable.
7. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

F. Flexible Sprinkler Hose Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Fivalco inc.
  - b. FlexHead Industries, Inc.
  - c. Gateway Tubing, Inc.
  - d. Victaulic Company
2. Standard: UL 1474.
3. Type: Flexible hose for connection to sprinkler, and with bracket for connection to ceiling grid.

4. Pressure Rating: 175-psig (1200-kPa) minimum.
5. Size: Same as connected piping, for sprinkler.

## 2.5 SPRINKLERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corp
  2. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler
  3. Tyco Fire Products LP
  4. Venus Fire Protection Ltd
  5. Victaulic Company
  6. Viking Corporation
- B. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
- C. Pressure Rating for Automatic Sprinklers: 175-psig (1200-kPa) minimum.
- D. Automatic Sprinklers with Heat-Responsive Element:
1. Early-Suppression, Fast-Response Applications: UL 1767.
  2. Nonresidential Applications: UL 199.
  3. Characteristics: Nominal 1/2-inch (12.7-mm) orifice with Discharge Coefficient K of 5.6, and for "Ordinary" temperature classification rating unless otherwise indicated or required by application.
- E. Open Sprinklers with Heat-Responsive Element Removed: UL 199.
1. Nominal Orifice: 1/2 inch (12.7 mm), with discharge coefficient K between 5.3 and 5.8.
- F. Sprinkler Finishes: Chrome plated.
- G. Special Coatings: Wax and corrosion-resistant paint.
- H. Sprinkler Escutcheons: Materials, types, and finishes for the following sprinkler mounting applications. Escutcheons for concealed, flush, and recessed-type sprinklers are specified with sprinklers.
1. Ceiling Mounting: Chrome-plated steel, one piece, flat.
  2. Sidewall Mounting: Chrome-plated steel] one piece, flat.
- I. Sprinkler Guards:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler
  - b. Tyco Fire Products LP
  - c. Victaulic Company
  - d. Viking Corporation
2. Standard: UL 199.
  3. Type: Wire cage with fastening device for attaching to sprinkler.

## 2.6 ALARM DEVICES

A. Alarm-device types shall match piping and equipment connections.

B. Water-Motor-Operated Alarm:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Glob Fire Sprinkler Corp.
  - b. Tyco Fire Products LP
  - c. Victaulic Company
  - d. Viking Corporation
2. Standard: UL 753.
3. Type: Mechanically operated, with Pelton wheel.
4. Alarm Gong: Cast aluminum with red-enamel factory finish.
5. Size: 8-1/2-inches (216-mm) diameter.
6. Components: Shaft length, bearings, and sleeve to suit wall construction.
7. Inlet: NPS 3/4 (DN 20).
8. Outlet: NPS 1 (DN 25) drain connection.

C. Electrically Operated Alarm Bell:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Fire Lite Alarms, Inc.
  - b. Notifier
  - c. Potter Electric Signal
2. Standard: UL 464.
3. Type: Vibrating, metal alarm bell.
4. Size: 10-inch (250-mm) diameter.
5. Finish: Red-enamel factory finish, suitable for outdoor use.
6. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application

D. Water-Flow Indicators:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. ADT Security Services, Inc.
  - b. McDonnell & Miller
  - c. Potter Electric Signal Co.
  - d. System Sensor
  - e. Viking Corporation
  - f. WATTS
2. Standard: UL 346.
3. Water-Flow Detector: Electrically supervised.
4. Components: Two single-pole, double-throw circuit switches for isolated alarm and auxiliary contacts, 7 A, 125-V ac and 0.25 A, 24-V dc; complete with factory-set, field-adjustable retard element to prevent false signals and tamperproof cover that sends signal if removed.
5. Type: Paddle operated.
6. Pressure Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa).
7. Design Installation: Horizontal or vertical.

E. Pressure Switches:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Barksdale, Inc.
  - b. Detroit Switch, Inc
  - c. Potter Electric Signal Co.
  - d. System Sensor
  - e. Tyco Fire Products LP
  - f. United Electric Controls
  - g. Viking Corporation
2. Standard: UL 346.
3. Type: Electrically supervised water-flow switch with retard feature.
4. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
5. Design Operation: Rising pressure signals water flow.

F. Valve Supervisory Switches:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Fire-Lite Alarms, Inc.
  - b. Kennedy Valve Company

- c. Potter Electric Signal Co.
  - d. System Sensor
- 
- 2. Standard: UL 346.
  - 3. Type: Electrically supervised.
  - 4. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
  - 5. Design: Signals that controlled valve is in other than fully open position.
  - 6. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application

## 2.7 PRESSURE GAGES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to Compliance with requirements available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. AGF Manufacturing, Inc.
  - 2. AMETEK, Inc.
  - 3. Ashcroft Inc
  - 4. Brecco Corporation
  - 5. WIKA Instrument Corporation
- B. Standard: UL 393.
- C. Dial Size: 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch (90- to 115-mm) diameter.
- D. Pressure Gage Range: 0- to 250-psig (0- to 1725-kPa) minimum.
- E. Label: Include "WATER" label on dial face.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Perform fire-hydrant flow test according to NFPA 13 and NFPA 291. Use results for system design calculations required in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Report test results promptly and in writing.

### 3.2 SERVICE-ENTRANCE PIPING

- A. Connect sprinkler piping to water-service piping for service entrance to building. Comply with requirements for exterior piping in Section 211100 "Facility Fire-Suppression Water-Service Piping" for exterior piping.

- B. Install shutoff valve, backflow preventer, pressure gage, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection to water-service piping. Comply with requirements for backflow preventers in Section 211100 "Facility Fire-Suppression Water-Service Piping."
- C. Install shutoff valve, check valve, pressure gage, and drain at connection to water service.

### 3.3 WATER-SUPPLY CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect sprinkler piping to building's interior water-distribution piping. Comply with requirements for interior piping in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- B. Install shutoff valve, backflow preventer, pressure gage, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection to water-distribution piping. Comply with requirements for backflow preventers in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- C. Install shutoff valve, check valve, pressure gage, and drain at connection to water supply.

### 3.4 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated on approved working plans.
  - 1. Deviations from approved working plans for piping require written approval from authorities having jurisdiction. File written approval with Architect before deviating from approved working plans.
  - 2. Coordinate layout and installation of sprinklers with other construction that penetrates ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, and partition assemblies.
- B. Piping Standard: Comply with NFPA 13 requirements for installation of sprinkler piping.
- C. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with NFPA 13 requirements for seismic-restraint device materials and installation.
- D. Use listed fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in pipe sizes.
- E. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller.
- F. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger end connections.
- G. Install "Inspector's Test Connections" in sprinkler system piping, complete with shutoff valve, and sized and located according to NFPA 13.
- H. Install sprinkler piping with drains for complete system drainage.



- I. Install sprinkler control valves, test assemblies, and drain risers adjacent to standpipes when sprinkler piping is connected to standpipes.
- J. Install automatic (ball drip) drain valve at each check valve for fire-department connection, to drain piping between fire-department connection and check valve. Install drain piping to and spill over floor drain or to outside building.
- K. Install alarm devices in piping systems.
- L. Install hangers and supports for sprinkler system piping according to NFPA 13. Comply with requirements for hanger materials in NFPA 13. In seismic-rated areas, refer to Section 210548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment."
- M. Install pressure gages on riser or feed main, at each sprinkler test connection, and at top of each standpipe. Include pressure gages with connection not less than NPS 1/4 (DN 8) and with soft-metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gage and valve. Install gages to permit removal, and install where they are not subject to freezing.
- N. Pressurize and check preaction sprinkler system piping and air-pressure maintenance devices.
- O. Fill sprinkler system piping with water.
- P. Install electric heating cables and pipe insulation on sprinkler piping in areas subject to freezing. Comply with requirements for heating cables in Section 210533 "Heat Tracing for Fire-Suppression Piping" and for piping insulation in Section 210700 "Fire-Suppression Systems Insulation."
- Q. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 210517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."
- R. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 210517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."
- S. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 210518 "Escutcheons for Fire-Suppression Piping."

### 3.5 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Install couplings, flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings that have finish and pressure ratings same as or higher than system's pressure rating for aboveground applications unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller.

- C. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger end connections.
- D. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- E. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- G. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- H. Steel-Piping, Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join lightwall steel pipe and steel pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
- I. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.
  - 1. Shop weld pipe joints where welded piping is indicated. Do not use welded joints for galvanized-steel pipe.
- J. Steel-Piping, Cut-Grooved Joints: Cut square-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe joints.
- K. Steel-Piping, Roll-Grooved Joints: Roll rounded-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.
- L. Steel-Piping, Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join Schedule 5 steel pipe and steel pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.

### 3.6 VALVE AND SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install listed fire-protection valves, trim and drain valves, specialty valves and trim, controls, and specialties according to NFPA 13 and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.

- C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.
- D. Specialty Valves:
  - 1. Install valves in vertical position for proper direction of flow, in main supply to system.
  - 2. Install alarm valves with bypass check valve and retarding chamber drain-line connection.
  - 3. Install deluge valves in vertical position, in proper direction of flow, and in main supply to deluge system. Install trim sets for drain, priming level, alarm connections, ball drip valves, pressure gages, priming chamber attachment, and fill-line attachment.

### 3.7 SPRINKLER INSTALLATION

- A. Install sprinklers in suspended ceilings in center of acoustical ceiling panels.
- B. Install dry-type sprinklers with water supply from heated space. Do not install pendent or sidewall, wet-type sprinklers in areas subject to freezing.
- C. Install sprinklers into flexible, sprinkler hose fittings, and install hose into bracket on ceiling grid.

### 3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping according to requirements in NFPA 13.
- B. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
  - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
  - 3. Flush, test, and inspect sprinkler systems according to NFPA 13, "Systems Acceptance" Chapter.
  - 4. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.
  - 5. Coordinate with fire-alarm tests. Operate as required.
  - 6. Coordinate with fire-pump tests. Operate as required.
  - 7. Verify that equipment hose threads are same as local fire department equipment.

- B. Sprinkler piping system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.10 CLEANING

- A. Clean dirt and debris from sprinklers.
- B. Only sprinklers with their original factory finish are acceptable. Remove and replace any sprinklers that are painted or have any other finish than their original factory finish.

### 3.11 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain specialty valves and pressure-maintenance pumps.

### 3.12 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Piping between Fire Department Connections and Check Valves: Galvanized, standard-weight steel pipe with threaded ends, cast-iron threaded fittings, and threaded joints.
- B. Sprinkler specialty fittings may be used, downstream of control valves, instead of specified fittings.
- C. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  - 2. Standard-weight black-steel pipe with cut or roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
  - 3. Standard-weight black-steel pipe with plain ends; steel welding fittings; and welded joints.
- D. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6, shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Schedule 10 black -steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end -pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
  - 2. Schedule 10 black-steel pipe with plain ends; welding fittings; and welded joints.

3.13 SPRINKLER SCHEDULE

- A. Use sprinkler types in subparagraphs below for the following applications:
  - 1. Rooms with Suspended Ceilings: Recessed Pendant Sprinklers.
  
- B. Provide sprinkler types in subparagraphs below with finishes indicated.
  - 1. Recessed Pendant Sprinklers: Bright chrome, with bright chrome escutcheon.

END OF SECTION 211313



## SECTION 220517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Sleeves.
  - 2. Sleeve-seal systems.
  - 3. Grout.
  - 4. Silicone sealants.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Advance Products & Systems
  - 2. Calpico, Inc
  - 3. GPT; an EnPro Industries company
- B. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, with plain ends and integral welded waterstop collar.
- C. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

## 2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Advance Products & Systems
  2. Calpico, Inc
  3. GPT; an EnPro Industries company
  4. Metraflex Company
  5. Proco Products
- B. Description:
1. Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
  2. Designed to form a hydrostatic seal of 20 psig (137 kPa) minimum.
  3. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
  4. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
  5. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, ASTM B633 of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

## 2.3 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink, for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## 2.4 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant, ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Dow Corning Corporation.
    - b. GE Construction Sealants; Momentive Performance Materials Inc.
    - c. Polymeric Systems, Inc.
    - d. Schnee-Morehead, Inc., an ITW company.



- e. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
- B. Silicone, S, P, 25, T, NT: Single-component, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT. Grade P Pourable (self-leveling) formulation is for opening in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. May National Associates, Inc.; a subsidiary of Sika Corporation.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
  1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
  2. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
  1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
  2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- E. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
- B. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.4 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
  - 1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade (Required for all Plumbing Piping):
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150): Steel pipe sleeves.
    - b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves.
  - 2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade (Required for all Plumbing Piping):
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150): Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
    - b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
  - 3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade (Not required for Sanitary Waste, Sanitary Vent or Storm Drainage Piping):

- a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150): Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
    - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
    - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
4. Concrete Slabs above Grade (Not required for Sanitary Waste, Sanitary Vent or Storm Drainage Piping):
- a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150): Steel pipe sleeves.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves.
5. Interior Partitions (Not required for Sanitary Waste, Sanitary Vent or Storm Drainage Piping):
- a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150): Steel pipe sleeves
  - b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Galvanized-steel sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION 220517



## SECTION 220518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
1. Escutcheons.
  2. Floor plates.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. BrassCraft Manufacturing Co.; a Masco company.
  2. Dearborn Brass.
  3. Jones Stephens Corp.
  4. Mid-America Fittings, Inc.

#### 2.2 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped steel with polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- D. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish; concealed and spring-clip fasteners.

#### 2.3 FLOOR PLATES

- A. Split Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping and Relocated Existing Piping:
    - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep pattern.
    - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - 2. Escutcheons for Existing Piping to Remain:
    - a. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-casting, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - b. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish
    - c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - d. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. New Piping and Relocated Existing Piping: Split floor plate.
  - 2. Existing Piping: Split floor plate.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Using new materials, replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates.

END OF SECTION 220518

## SECTION 220529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
  - 2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 3. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
  - 4. Fastener systems.
  - 5. Pipe positioning systems.
  - 6. Equipment supports.
  - 7. Roof mounted supports.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for plumbing piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - 1. Design supports for multiple pipes capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
  - 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
  - 3. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:

1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
  2. Equipment supports.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
  2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
  3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
  4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
  5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
- B. Stainless-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
  2. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
  3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.
- C. Copper Pipe Hangers:
1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
  2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel.

### 2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.



### 2.3 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with **125-psig (862-kPa)** minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with **125-psig (862-kPa)** minimum compressive strength.
- C. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- D. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- E. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches (50 mm) beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

### 2.4 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, stainless steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

### 2.5 PIPE POSITIONING SYSTEMS

- A. Description: IAPMO PS 42, positioning system of metal brackets, clips, and straps for positioning piping in pipe spaces; for plumbing fixtures in commercial applications.

### 2.6 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

### 2.7 ROOF MOUNTED SUPPORTS

- A. Support piping on roof with an engineered prefabricated PHP System, or approved equivalent, designed for installation without roof penetrations, flashing or damage to the roofing material. The system shall consist of bases, made of high density polypropylene plastics with UV Protection, a HDG structural steel frame and suitable pipe hangers for the application. Nuts, threaded rods and washers shall be HDG, spring nuts and bolts for spring nuts will be electro-plated. System shall be custom designed to fit piping and conduit to be installed and the actual conditions of service.

## 2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
  - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
  - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- D. Fastener System Installation:
  - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
  - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Pipe Positioning-System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste piping connections to each plumbing fixture.
- F. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- G. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.

- H. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- I. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- J. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- K. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- L. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- M. Insulated Piping:
  - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
    - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
    - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
    - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
  - 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
    - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
  - 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
    - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
  - 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
    - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 8 to DN 90): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.048 inch (1.22 mm) thick.
    - b. NPS 4 (DN 100): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.
    - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6 (DN 125 and DN 150): 18 inches (457 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.

- d. NPS 8 to NPS 14 (DN 200 to DN 350): 24 inches (610 mm) long and 0.075 inch (1.91 mm) thick.
  - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24 (DN 400 to DN 600): 24 inches (610 mm) long and 0.105 inch (2.67 mm) thick.
- 5. Pipes NPS 8 (DN 200) and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
  - 6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

### 3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

### 3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to **1-1/2 inches (40 mm)**.

### 3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils (0.05 mm).
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

### 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and metal trapeze pipe hangers and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers and stainless-steel attachments for hostile environment applications.
- G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- H. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- I. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- J. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750).
  - 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F (566 deg C), pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24 (DN 100 to DN 600), requiring up to 4 inches (100 mm) of insulation.
  - 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36 (DN 20 to DN 900), requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches (100 mm) of insulation.

4. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200).
  5. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750).
  6. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36 (DN 100 to DN 900), with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
  7. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36 (DN 100 to DN 900), with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
  8. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30 (DN 25 to DN 750), from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
  9. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 (DN 50 to DN 1050) if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
- K. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 (DN 24 to DN 600).
  2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 (DN 20 to DN 600) if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- L. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches (150 mm) for heavy loads.
  2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F (49 to 232 deg C) piping installations.
- M. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
  2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joint construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
  3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
  4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
  5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
  6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  7. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below, or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:

- a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb (340 kg).
  - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb (680 kg).
  - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb (1360 kg).
8. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
  9. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
- N. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
  3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- O. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches (32 mm).
  2. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
  3. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
- P. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- Q. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.
- R. Use pipe positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

END OF SECTION 220529





## SECTION 220548 - VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Elastomeric isolation pads.
2. Elastomeric isolation mounts.
3. Restrained elastomeric isolation mounts.
4. Open-spring isolators.
5. Housed-spring isolators.
6. Restrained-spring isolators.
7. Housed-restrained-spring isolators.
8. Pipe-riser resilient support.
9. Resilient pipe guides.
10. Elastomeric hangers.
11. Spring hangers.
12. Snubbers.
13. Restraints - rigid type.
14. Restraints - cable type.
15. Restraint accessories.
16. Post-installed concrete anchors.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 210548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment" for devices for fire-suppression equipment and systems.
2. Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" for devices for HVAC equipment and systems.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- B. Shop Drawings:

1. Detail fabrication and assembly of equipment bases.

2. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal:

1. For each seismic-restraint and wind-load protection device, including seismic-restrained mounting, pipe-riser resilient support, snubber, seismic restraint, seismic-restraint accessory, and concrete anchor and insert, that is required by this Section or is indicated on Drawings, submit the following:
  - a. Seismic and wind-load restraint, and vibration isolator, and isolation base selection: Select vibration isolators, seismic and wind-load restraints, and vibration isolation bases complying with performance requirements, design criteria, and analysis data.
  - b. Riser Supports: Include riser diagrams and calculations showing anticipated expansion and contraction at each support point, initial and final loads on building structure, spring deflection changes, and seismic loads. Include certification by professional engineer that riser system was examined for excessive stress and that none exists.
  - c. Concrete Anchors and Inserts: Include calculations showing anticipated seismic and wind loads. Include certification that device is approved by an NRTL for seismic reinforcement use.
  - d. Seismic Design Calculations: Submit all input data and loading calculations prepared in "Performance Requirements" Article in "Seismic Design Calculations" Paragraph.
  - e. Wind-Load Design Calculations: Submit all static and dynamic loading calculations prepared in "Wind-Load Design Calculations" Paragraph in "Performance Requirements" Article.
  - f. Qualified Professional Engineer: All designated-design submittals for seismic and wind-load-restraint calculations are to be signed and sealed by qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
2. Seismic- and Wind-Load-Restraint Detail Drawing:
  - a. Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of seismic and wind restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.
  - b. Details: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacings. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and values of forces transmitted to the structure during seismic events. Indicate association with vibration isolation devices.
  - c. Coordinate seismic restraint and vibration isolation details with wind-restraint details required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply also with requirements in other Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.
3. Product Listing, Preapproval, and Evaluation Documentation: By an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum ratings of restraint items and the basis for approval (tests or calculations).

4. All delegated-design submittals for seismic- and wind-restraint detail Drawings are to be signed and sealed by qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
5. Design Calculations for Vibration Isolation Devices: Calculate static and dynamic loading due to equipment weight and operating forces required to select proper vibration isolators, and to design vibration isolation bases.
6. Riser Supports: Include riser diagrams and calculations showing anticipated expansion and contraction at each support point, initial and final loads on building structure, and spring deflection changes. Include certification that riser system was examined for excessive stress and that none exists.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of vibration isolation and wind-load reinforcement device installation and seismic bracing for plumbing piping and equipment with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and restraints, if any.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Field quality-control reports:
- D. Seismic Qualification Data: Provide special certification for designated seismic systems as indicated in ASCE/SEI 7-16, Paragraph 13.2.2, "Special Certification Requirements for Designated Seismic Systems" for all Designated Seismic Systems identified as such on Drawings or in the Specifications.
  1. Provide equipment manufacturer's written certification for each designated active plumbing seismic device and system, stating that it will remain operable following the design earthquake. Certification must be based on requirements of ASCE/SEI 7 and AHRI 1270 (AHRI 1271), including shake table testing per ICC-ES AC156 or a similar nationally recognized testing standard procedure acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, or experience data as permitted by ASCE/SEI 7-16.
  2. Provide equipment manufacturer's written certification that components with hazardous contents maintain containment following the design earthquake by methods required in ASCE/SEI 7-16.
  3. Submit evidence demonstrating compliance with these requirements for approval to authorities having jurisdiction after review and acceptance by a licensed professional engineer.
  4. The following plumbing systems and components are Designated Seismic Systems and require written special certification of seismic qualification by manufacturer:
- E. Wind-Force Performance Certification: Provide special certification for plumbing components subject to high wind exposure and impact damage and designated on Drawings or in the Specifications to require wind-force performance certification.
  1. Provide equipment manufacturer's written certification for each designated plumbing device, stating that it will remain in place and operable following the

- design wind event and comply with all requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Certification must be based on ICC-ES or similar nationally recognized testing standard procedures acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  3. The following plumbing systems and components require special certification for high wind performance. Written special certification of resistance to the effects of high wind force and impact damage must be provided by manufacturer:

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, be an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and be acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- C. Seismic- and Wind-Load-Restraint Device Load Ratings: Devices to be tested and rated in accordance with applicable code requirements and authorities having jurisdiction. Devices to be listed by a nationally recognized third party that requires periodic follow-up inspections and has a listing directory available to the public. Provide third-party listing by one or more of the following: an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design seismic and wind-load control system.
  1. Seismic and Wind-Load Performance: Equipment shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions and high wind events determined in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7-16.
- B. Seismic Design Calculations:
  1. Perform calculations to obtain force information necessary to properly select seismic-restraint devices, fasteners, and anchorage. Perform calculations using methods acceptable to applicable code authorities and as presented in ASCE/SEI 7-16. Where "ASCE/SEI 7" is used throughout this Section, it is to be understood that the edition referred to in this subparagraph is the edition intended as reference throughout the section text.
- C. Wind-Load Design Calculations:

1. Perform calculations to obtain force information necessary to properly select wind-load-restraint devices, fasteners, and anchorage. Perform calculations using methods acceptable to applicable code authorities and as presented in ASCE/SEI 7-16. Where "ASCE/SEI 7" is used throughout this Section, it is to be understood that the edition referred to in this subparagraph is intended as referenced throughout the Section Text unless otherwise noted.
- D. Consequential Damage: Provide additional seismic and wind-force restraints for suspended plumbing components or anchorage of floor, roof or wall mounted plumbing components as indicated in ASCE/SEI 7-16 so that failure of a non-essential or essential plumbing component will not cause the failure of any other essential architectural, mechanical or electrical building component.
- E. Fire/Smoke Resistance: Seismic- and wind-load-restraint devices that are not constructed of ferrous metals must have a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested by an NRTL in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, and be so labeled.
- F. Component Supports:
  1. Load Ratings, features, and applications of all reinforcement components must be based on testing standards of a nationally recognized testing agency.
  2. All component support attachments must comply with force and displacement resistance requirements of ASCE/SEI 7-16 Section 13.6.

## 2.2 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION PADS

- A. Elastomeric Isolation Pads:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
    - b. CADDY; nVent.
    - c. California Dynamics Corporation.
    - d. Isolation Technology, Inc.
    - e. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
    - f. Korfund.
    - g. Mason Industries, Inc.
    - h. Novia; A Division of C&P.
    - i. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
    - j. Vibration Isolation.
    - k. Vibration Management Corp.
    - l. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
  2. Fabrication: Single or multiple layers of sufficient durometer stiffness for uniform loading over pad area.
  3. Size: Factory or field cut to match requirements of supported equipment.

4. Pad Material: Oil and water resistant with elastomeric properties. Neoprene rubber, silicone rubber, or other elastomeric material.
5. Surface Pattern: Smooth, ribbed, or waffle pattern.
6. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.
7. Load-bearing metal plates adhered to pads.
8. Sandwich-Core Material: Resilient and elastomeric.
  - a. Surface Pattern: Smooth, ribbed, or waffle pattern.
  - b. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.

## 2.3 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION MOUNTS

### A. Double-Deflection, Elastomeric Isolation Mounts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
  - b. CADDY; nVent.
  - c. California Dynamics Corporation.
  - d. Isolation Technology, Inc.
  - e. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - f. Korfund.
  - g. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - h. Novia; A Division of C&P.
  - i. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
  - j. Vibration Isolation.
  - k. Vibration Management Corp.
  - l. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
2. Mounting Plates:
  - a. Top Plate: Encapsulated steel load transfer top plates, factory drilled and threaded with threaded studs or bolts.
  - b. Baseplate: Encapsulated steel bottom plates with holes provided for anchoring to support structure.
3. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene rubber, silicone rubber, or other elastomeric material.

## 2.4 RESTRAINED ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION MOUNTS

### A. Restrained Elastomeric Isolation Mounts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.

- b. CADDY; nVent.
  - c. California Dynamics Corporation.
  - d. Isolation Technology, Inc.
  - e. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - f. Korfund.
  - g. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - h. Novia; A Division of C&P.
  - i. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
  - j. Vibration Isolation.
  - k. Vibration Management Corp.
  - l. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
2. Description: All-directional isolator with seismic restraints containing two separate and opposing elastomeric elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.
- a. Housing: Cast-ductile iron or welded steel.
  - b. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material.

## 2.5 OPEN-SPRING ISOLATORS

### A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
  - b. CADDY; nVent.
  - c. California Dynamics Corporation.
  - d. Isolation Technology, Inc.
  - e. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - f. Korfund.
  - g. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - h. Novia; A Division of C&P.
  - i. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
  - j. Vibration Isolation.
  - k. Vibration Management Corp.
  - l. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
6. Baseplates: Factory-drilled steel plate for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Baseplates shall limit floor load to 500 psig (3447 kPa).

7. Top Plate and Adjustment Bolt: Threaded top plate with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.

## 2.6 HOUSED-SPRING ISOLATORS

### A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators in Two-Part Telescoping Housing:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
  - b. CADDY; nVent.
  - c. California Dynamics Corporation.
  - d. Isolation Technology, Inc.
  - e. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - f. Korfund.
  - g. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - h. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
  - i. Vibration Isolation.
  - j. Vibration Management Corp.
  - k. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
6. Two-Part Telescoping Housing: A steel top and bottom frame separated by an elastomeric material and enclosing the spring isolators.
  - a. Drilled base housing for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig (3447 kPa).
  - b. Top housing with elastomeric pad.

## 2.7 RESTRAINED-SPRING ISOLATORS

### A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators with Vertical-Limit Stop Restraint:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
  - b. CADDY; nVent.
  - c. California Dynamics Corporation.



- d. Isolation Technology, Inc.
  - e. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - f. Korfund.
  - g. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - h. Novia; A Division of C&P.
  - i. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
  - j. Vibration Isolation.
  - k. Vibration Management Corp.
  - l. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
2. Housing: Steel housing with vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to weight being removed.
    - a. Base with holes for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig (3447 kPa).
    - b. Top plate with elastomeric pad.
    - c. Internal leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.
  3. Restraint: Limit stop as required for equipment and authorities having jurisdiction.
  4. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  5. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  6. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  7. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

## 2.8 HOUSED-RESTRAINED-SPRING ISOLATORS

- A. Freestanding, Steel, Open-Spring Isolators with Vertical-Limit Stop Restraint in Two-Part Telescoping Housing:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
    - b. CADDY; nVent.
    - c. California Dynamics Corporation.
    - d. Isolation Technology, Inc.
    - e. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
    - f. Korfund.
    - g. Mason Industries, Inc.
    - h. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
    - i. Vibration Isolation.
    - j. Vibration Management Corp.
    - k. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

2. Two-Part Telescoping Housing: A steel top and bottom frame separated by an elastomeric material and enclosing the spring isolators. Housings are equipped with adjustable snubbers to limit vertical movement.
  - a. Drilled base housing for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig (3447 kPa).
  - b. Threaded top housing with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.
3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

## 2.9 PIPE-RISER RESILIENT SUPPORT

- A. All-Directional, Acoustical Pipe Anchor Consisting of Two Steel Tubes Separated by a Minimum 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) Thick Neoprene:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. California Dynamics Corporation.
    - b. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
    - c. Mason Industries, Inc.
    - d. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
    - e. Vibration Management Corp.
  2. Vertical-Limit Stops: Steel and neoprene vertical-limit stops arranged to prevent vertical travel in both directions.
  3. Maximum Load Per Support: 500 psig (3447 KPa) on isolation material providing equal isolation in all directions.

## 2.10 RESILIENT PIPE GUIDES

- A. Telescopic Arrangement of Two Steel Tubes or Post and Sleeve Arrangement Separated by a Minimum 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) Thick Neoprene:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. California Dynamics Corporation.
    - b. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
    - c. Mason Industries, Inc.

- d. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
  - e. Vibration Management Corp.
  - f. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
2. Factory-Set Height Guide with Shear Pin: Shear pin shall be removable and reinsertable to allow for selection of pipe movement. Guides shall be capable of motion to meet location requirements.

## 2.11 ELASTOMERIC HANGERS

### A. Elastomeric Mount in a Steel Frame with Upper and Lower Steel Hanger Rods:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
  - b. CADDY; nVent.
  - c. California Dynamics Corporation.
  - d. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - e. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - f. Novia; A Division of C&P.
  - g. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
  - h. Vibration Isolation.
  - i. Vibration Management Corp.
  - j. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
2. Frame: Steel, fabricated with a connection for an upper threaded hanger rod and an opening on the underside to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular lower hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
3. Damping Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material with a projecting bushing for the underside opening preventing steel-to-steel contact.

## 2.12 SPRING HANGERS

### A. Combination Coil-Spring and Elastomeric-Insert Hanger with Spring and Insert in Compression:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
  - b. CADDY; nVent.
  - c. California Dynamics Corporation.
  - d. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - e. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - f. Novia; A Division of C&P.

- g. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
  - h. Vibration Isolation.
  - i. Vibration Management Corp.
  - j. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
2. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
  3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
  7. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
  8. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.
  9. Self-centering hanger-rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.

## 2.13 SNUBBERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  1. CADDY; nVent.
  2. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  3. Mason Industries, Inc.
  4. Vibration Management Corp.
  5. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
- B. Description: Factory fabricated using welded structural-steel shapes and plates, anchor bolts, and replaceable resilient isolation washers and bushings.
  1. Post-installed Concrete Anchor Bolts: Secure to concrete surface with post-installed concrete anchors. Anchors to be seismically prequalified in accordance with ACI 355.2 testing and designated in accordance with ACI 318-14 Ch. 17 for 2015 or 2018 IBC. Preset concrete inserts: Seismically prequalified in accordance with ICC-ES AC446 testing.
  2. Anchors in Masonry: Design in accordance with TMS 402.
  3. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene.
  4. Resilient Cushion: Maximum 1/4-inch (6-mm) air gap, and minimum 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick.

## 2.14 RESTRAINTS - RIGID TYPE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. B-line; Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  2. CADDY; nVent.
  3. California Dynamics Corporation.
  4. Hilti, Inc.
  5. Isolation Technology, Inc.
  6. TOLCO.
  7. Unistrut; Atkore International.
  8. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
- B. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated bracing assembly made of ANSI/AISI S110-07-S1 slotted steel channels, ANSI/ASTM A53/A53M steel pipe as per NFPA 13, or other rigid steel brace member. Includes accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end and other matching components and with corrosion-resistant coating; rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.

## 2.15 RESTRAINTS - CABLE TYPE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. B-line; Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  2. CADDY; nVent.
  3. Loos & Co.
  4. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
- B. Seismic- and Wind-Load-Restraint Cables: ASTM A1023/A1023M galvanized or ASTM A603 galvanized-steel cables. End connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for seismic restraining cable service; with fittings attached by means of poured socket, swaged socket or mechanical (Flemish eye) loop.
- C. Restraint cable assembly and cable fittings must comply with ASCE/SEI 19. All cable fittings and complete cable assembly must maintain the minimum cable breaking force. U-shaped cable clips and wedge type end fittings do not comply and are unacceptable.

## 2.16 RESTRAINT ACCESSORIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. B-line; Eaton, Electrical Sector.

2. CADDY; nVent.
  3. Hilti, Inc.
  4. Loos & Co.
  5. Mason Industries, Inc.
  6. TOLCO.
  7. Unistrut; Atkore International.
- B. Hanger-Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections to hanger rod. Non-metallic stiffeners are unacceptable.
- C. Hinged and Swivel Brace Attachments: Multifunctional steel connectors for attaching hangers to rigid channel bracings and restraint cables.
- D. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor Bolts: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of anchor bolts and studs.
- E. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of attachment devices used.
- F. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.

## 2.17 POST-INSTALLED CONCRETE ANCHORS

- A. Mechanical Anchor Bolts:
1. Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E488/E488M.
- B. Provide post-installed concrete anchors that have been prequalified for use in seismic applications. Post-installed concrete anchors must comply with all requirements of ASCE/SEI 7-16, Ch. 13.
1. Prequalify post-installed anchors in concrete in accordance with ACI 355.2 or other approved qualification testing procedures.
  2. Prequalify post-installed anchors in masonry in accordance with approved qualification procedures.
- C. Expansion-type anchor bolts are not permitted for equipment in excess of 10 hp (7.46 kW), which is not vibration isolated.
1. Undercut expansion anchors are permitted.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATIONS

- A. Multiple Pipe Supports: Secure pipes to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Hanger-Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger-rod stiffeners where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods due to seismic forces.
- C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength is adequate to carry static, wind load, and seismic load within specified loading limits.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF VIBRATION CONTROL, WIND-LOAD CONTROL, AND SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES

- A. Provide vibration-control devices for systems and equipment where indicated in Equipment Schedules or Vibration-Control Device Schedules, where indicated on Drawings, or where the Specifications indicate they are to be installed on specific equipment and systems.
- B. Provide seismic-restraint and wind-load control devices for systems and equipment where indicated in Equipment Schedules or Seismic-Restraint Devices Schedules, where indicated on Drawings, where the Specifications indicate they are to be installed on specific equipment and systems, and where required by applicable codes.
- C. Coordinate location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- D. Installation of vibration isolators, wind-load restraints, and seismic restraints must not cause any stresses, misalignment, or change of position of equipment or piping.
- E. Comply with requirements in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.
- F. Equipment Restraints:
  - 1. Install snubbers on plumbing equipment mounted on vibration isolators. Locate snubbers as close as possible to vibration isolators and bolt to equipment base and supporting structure.
  - 2. Install resilient bolt isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch (3.2 mm).
  - 3. Install seismic-restraint and wind-load-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that provides required submittals for component.

- G. Piping Restraints:
  - 1. Comply with requirements in MSS SP-127.
  - 2. Space lateral supports a maximum of 40 feet (12 m) o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of 80 feet (24 m) o.c.
  - 3. Brace a change of direction longer than 12 feet (3.7 m).
- H. Install seismic- and wind-load-restraint cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.
- I. Install seismic- and wind-load-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that provides required submittals for component.
- J. Install bushing assemblies for anchor bolts for floor-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media between anchor bolt and mounting hole in concrete base.
- K. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.
- L. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.
- M. Post-Installed Concrete Anchors:
  - 1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify Project structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
  - 2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
  - 3. Mechanical-Type Anchor Bolts: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
  - 4. Adhesive-Type Anchor Bolts: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
  - 5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
  - 6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless steel anchors for exterior applications.

### 3.3 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION

- A. Provide flexible connections in piping systems where they cross structural seismic joints and other point where differential movement may occur. Provide adequate flexibility to accommodate differential movement as determined in accordance with



ASCE/SEI 7. Comply with requirements in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping" and Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for piping flexible connections.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust isolators after system is at operating weight.
- B. Adjust limit stops on restrained-spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
  - 2. Provide evidence of recent calibration of test equipment by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3. Schedule test with Owner, through Architect, before connecting anchorage device to restrained component (unless post connection testing has been approved), and with at least seven days' advance notice.
  - 4. Obtain Architect's approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.
  - 5. Test at least four of each type and size of installed anchors and fasteners selected by Architect.
  - 6. Test to 90 percent of rated proof load of device.
  - 7. Measure isolator restraint clearance.
  - 8. Measure isolator deflection.
  - 9. Verify snubber minimum clearances.
  - 10. Test and adjust restrained-air-spring isolator controls and safeties.
- C. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- D. Units will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 220548



## SECTION 220553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Equipment labels.
  - 2. Warning signs and labels.
  - 3. Pipe labels.
  - 4. Stencils.
  - 5. Valve tags.
  - 6. Warning tags.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve numbering scheme.
- E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

#### A. Metal Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) minimum thickness and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
2. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
3. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
4. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
5. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

#### B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

#### C. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4) bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

### 2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

#### A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.

#### B. Letter Color: White.

#### C. Background Color: Red.

#### D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).

#### E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).

#### F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.

#### G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.

- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

### 2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
  - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
  - 2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) high.

### 2.4 STENCILS

- A. Stencils: Prepared with letter sizes according to ASME A13.1 for piping; and minimum letter height of 3/4 inch (19 mm) for access panel and door labels, equipment labels, and similar operational instructions.
  - 1. Stencil Material: Brass.
  - 2. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, acrylic enamel black unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
  - 3. Identification Paint: Exterior, acrylic enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated.

### 2.5 VALVE TAGS

- A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch (13-mm) numbers.
  - 1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) minimum thickness and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
  - 2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link or beaded chain; or S-hook.
- B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4) bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or

modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.

1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## 2.6 WARNING TAGS

- A. Warning Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
  1. Size: Approximately 4 by 7 inches (100 by 178 mm).
  2. Fasteners: Reinforced grommet and wire or string.
  3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
  4. Color: Yellow background with black lettering.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

### 3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

### 3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
  1. Near each valve and control device.
  2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
  3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
  4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
  5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
  6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet (15 m) along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet (7.6 m) in areas of congested piping and equipment.

7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

B. Pipe Label Color Schedule:

1. Low-Pressure, Compressed-Air Piping:
  - a. Background Color: Blue.
  - b. Letter Color: White
2. Medium-Pressure, Compressed-Air Piping:
  - a. Background Color: Blue.
  - b. Letter Color: White.
3. Domestic Water Piping:
  - a. Background Color: Green.
  - b. Letter Color: White.
4. Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage Piping:
  - a. Background Color: Black.
  - b. Letter Color: White.

3.4 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; shutoff valves; faucets; convenience and lawn-watering hose connections; and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
  1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
    - a. Cold Water: 2 inches (50 mm), square.
    - b. Hot Water: 2 inches (50 mm), square.
    - c. Low-Pressure Compressed Air: 2 inches (50 mm), square.
    - d. High-Pressure Compressed Air: 2 inches (50 mm), square.
  2. Valve-Tag Color:
    - a. Cold Water: Natural.
    - b. Hot Water: Natural.
    - c. Low-Pressure Compressed Air: Natural.
    - d. High-Pressure Compressed Air: Natural.
  3. Letter Color:

- a. Cold Water: White.
- b. Hot Water: White.
- c. Low-Pressure Compressed Air: White.
- d. High-Pressure Compressed Air: White.

### 3.5 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 220553



## SECTION 220719 - PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing piping services:
  1. Domestic cold-water piping.
  2. Domestic hot-water piping.
  3. Domestic recirculating hot-water piping.
  4. Domestic chilled-water piping for drinking fountains.
  5. Sanitary waste piping exposed to freezing conditions.
  6. Storm-water and overflow piping.
  7. Roof drain and overflow bodies.
  8. Supplies and drains for handicap-accessible lavatories and sinks.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied, if any).

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

#### 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields.

- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

## 1.7 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Insulation materials will be listed and labeled per UL723, if available.
- D. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- E. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- F. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- G. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials, and listed and labeled per UL723 at 25/50, if available.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aerocel.
    - b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex, Armaflex Ultra.
    - c. K-Flex USA; Insul-Lock, Insul-Tube, and K-FLEX LS.

- H. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type I. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corp.; SoftTouch Duct Wrap.
    - b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
    - c. Knauf Insulation; Friendly Feel Duct Wrap.
    - d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley Wrap.
    - e. Owens Corning; SOFTR All-Service Duct Wrap.
  
- I. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; Coreplus 1200.
    - b. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok.
    - c. Knauf Insulation; 1000-Degree Pipe Insulation.
    - d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley-K.
    - e. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe Insulation.
  
  - 2. Type I, 850 Deg F (454 Deg C) Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

## 2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

- A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Super-Stik.

## 2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.
  
- B. Flexible Elastomeric: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aero Seal.

- b. Armacell LLC; Armaflex 520 Adhesive.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.
    - d. K-Flex USA; R-373 Contact Adhesive.
  2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
  2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- D. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-20.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
  2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.4 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.
    - b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm (0.009 metric perm) at 43-mil (1.09-mm) dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
  4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.
- C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-30.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 501.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-35.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-10.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm (0.03 metric perm) at 35-mil (0.9-mm) dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 82 deg C).
  4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.
- D. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below-ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Encacel.

- b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 570.
  - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 60-95/60-96.
2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm (0.033 metric perm) at 30-mil (0.8-mm) dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 104 deg C).
  4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.
- E. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-10.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 550.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 46-50.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-50.
    - e. Vimasco Corporation; WC-1/WC-5.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms (1.2 metric perms) at 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
  4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.

## 2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A, and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-50 AHV2.
    - b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-36.
    - c. Vimasco Corporation; 713 and 714.
  3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over pipe insulation.

4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 82 deg C).
5. Color: White.

## 2.6 SEALANTS

### A. Joint Sealants:

### B. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
  - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
  - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
  - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
5. Color: Aluminum.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

### C. ASJ Flashing Sealants and Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
5. Color: White.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
  2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
  3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

## 2.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal Jacket:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
    - b. ITW Insulation Systems; Aluminum and Stainless Steel Jacketing.
    - c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.
  2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
    - a. Factory cut and rolled to size.
    - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
    - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- (0.025-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper
    - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
    - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
      - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
      - 2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
      - 3) Tee covers.
      - 4) Flange and union covers.
      - 5) End caps.
      - 6) Beveled collars.
      - 7) Valve covers.
      - 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.



## 2.9 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.
    - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.
    - c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.
    - d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.
  2. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
  3. Thickness: 11.5 mils (0.29 mm).
  4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
  5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
  7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 491 AWF FSK.
    - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.
    - c. Compac Corporation; 110 and 111.
    - d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW NT, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.
  2. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
  3. Thickness: 6.5 mils (0.16 mm).
  4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
  5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
  7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 488 AWF.
    - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
    - c. Compac Corporation; 120.
    - d. Venture Tape; 3520 CW.
  2. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
  3. Thickness: 3.7 mils (0.093 mm).
  4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch (1.1 N/mm) in width.

5. Elongation: 5 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch (6.2 N/mm) in width.

## 2.10 SECUREMENTS

### A. Bands:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
  - b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping and Seals.
2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick, 3/4 inch (19 mm)] wide with wing seal or closed seal.
3. Aluminum: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick, 3/4 inch (19 mm) wide with wing seal or closed seal.

### B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) wide, stainless steel or Monel.

### C. Wire: 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) soft-annealed, stainless steel.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. C & F Wire.

## 2.11 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

### A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Engineered Brass Company.
  - b. Insul-Tect Products Co.; a subsidiary of MVG Molded Products.
  - c. McGuire Manufacturing.
  - d. Plumberex.
  - e. Truebro; a brand of IPS Corporation.
  - f. Zurn Industries, LLC; Tubular Brass Plumbing Products Operation.
2. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.

- B. Protective Shielding Piping Enclosures:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Truebro; a brand of IPS Corporation.
    - b. Zurn Industries, LLC; Tubular Brass Plumbing Products Operation.
  2. Description: Manufactured plastic enclosure for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with ADA requirements.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
  2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils (0.127 mm) thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils (0.127 mm) thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F (60 and 149 deg C). Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
  2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F (0 and 149 deg C) with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
- C. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

### 3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
  - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
  - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.

3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at [2 inches (50 mm)] [4 inches (100 mm)] o.c.
    - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
  5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches (100 mm) beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
1. Vibration-control devices.
  2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
  3. Nameplates and data plates.
  4. Cleanouts.

### 3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm) below top of roof flashing.
  4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.

2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm).
  4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
  2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
  3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
  4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.

5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
  6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
  7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
  8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
  9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
  2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
  3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
  4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm) over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
  5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
  - 1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
  - 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
  - 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
  - 4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
  - 1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
  - 2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
  - 1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
  - 2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
  - 3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
  - 4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

### 3.7 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
  - 1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
  - 2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
  - 3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
  - 4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.



B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch (25 mm), and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

### 3.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.

1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at seams and joints.
2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick coats of lagging adhesive.
3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.

B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide joint strips at end joints.
5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

- C. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. and at end joints.

### 3.9 FINISHES

- A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified.
  - 1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
    - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

### 3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

### 3.11 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:

1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
2. Underground piping.
3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

### 3.12 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

#### A. Domestic Cold Water:

1. NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
2. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and Larger: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

#### B. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water:

1. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and Smaller: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
2. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Larger: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) thick.

#### C. Domestic Chilled Water (Potable):

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

#### D. Storm-Water and Overflow:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following, extending a minimum of 20 feet from the roof drain:
  - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

#### E. Roof Drain and Overflow Drain Bodies:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

#### F. Exposed Sanitary Drains, Domestic Water, Domestic Hot Water, and Stops for Plumbing Fixtures for People with Disabilities:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

- G. Floor Drains, Traps, and Sanitary Drain Piping within 10 Feet (3 m) of Drain Receiving Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F (16 Deg C):
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- H. Hot Service Drains:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or II: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- I. Hot Service Vents:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or II: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

### 3.13 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Domestic Water Piping:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
- B. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
- C. Hot Service Drains:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- D. Hot Service Vents:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type II: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

### 3.14 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Concealed:
  - 1. None.
- D. Piping, Exposed:
  - 1. Aluminum, Corrugated: 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick.

### 3.15 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Concealed:
  - 1. Aluminum, Corrugated: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
- D. Piping, Exposed:
  - 1. Aluminum, Corrugated: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.

END OF SECTION 220719



## SECTION 221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Copper tube and fittings.
  - 2. Ductile-iron pipe and fittings.
  - 3. PEX tube and fittings.
  - 4. PP pipe and fittings.
  - 5. Piping joining materials.
  - 6. Encasement for piping.
  - 7. Transition fittings.
  - 8. Dielectric fittings.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For transition fittings and dielectric fittings.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. System purging and disinfecting activities report.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.
- B. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 14 and NSF 61. Plastic piping components shall be marked with "NSF-pw."

## 2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) water tube, drawn temper.
- B. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A) water tube, annealed temper.
- C. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.
- D. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.
- E. Copper Unions:
  - 1. MSS SP-123.
  - 2. Cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body.
  - 3. Ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces.
  - 4. Solder-joint or threaded ends.
- F. Copper, Brass, or Bronze Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Apollo Flow Controls
    - b. Elkhart Products Corporation
    - c. Mueller Industries, Inc.
    - d. NIBCO Inc.
    - e. Viega LLC
  - 2. Fittings for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber, O-ring seal in each end.
  - 3. Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Cast-bronze or wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber, O-ring seal in each end.
- G. Copper-Tube, Extruded-Tee Connections:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. T-Drill Industries Inc.
  - 2. Description: Tee formed in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014.
- H. Appurtenances for Grooved-End Copper Tubing:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:



- a. Victaulic Company.
2. Bronze Fittings for Grooved-End, Copper Tubing: ASTM B 75 (ASTM B 75M) copper tube or ASTM B 584 bronze castings.
    - a. Fittings shall be manufactured to copper tubing sizes, with grooves designed to accept grooved end couplings of the same manufacturer. Fittings shall be wrought copper, conforming to ASTM B-75 alloy C12200 or ASTM B-152 alloy C11000 and ANSI B16.22, or bronze sand casting ANSI B16.18 and UNS-C89836. Victaulic Copper Connection Fittings.
    - b. Dielectric Waterway: Copper silicon casting conforming to UNS C87850 with grooved and/or threaded ends. UL classified in accordance with NSF-61 for potable water service, and shall meet the low-lead requirements of NSF-372. Basis of Design: Victaulic Series 647.
  3. Mechanical Couplings for Grooved-End Copper Tubing:  
Copper Tube: ASTM B-88 (Type K, L, M) and ASTM B-306 (Type DWV) Roll grooved only in accordance to manufacturer's current listed standards and copper tube dimensions.
    1. Couplings for Copper Grooved Tube: Victaulic Style 607. Installation ready rigid coupling for direct stab installation without field disassembly.
      - a. Mechanical Couplings: 2"-8" (DN50-DN200) for copper tubing consisting of ductile iron cast housings, complete with a synthetic rubber gasket of a pressure-responsive design, with plated nuts and bolts to secure unit together. Couplings shall be manufactured to connect copper tubing sized tube and fittings. (Flaring of tube and fitting ends to IPS dimensions is not allowed.)
        - 1) Coupling Housings: Ductile iron conforming to ASTM A-536, Grade 65-45-12, coated with copper colored alkyd enamel. Housings cast with offsetting, angle-pattern bolt pads to provide rigidity.
        - 2) Coupling Gaskets: Gasket shall be Grade "P" Fluoroelastomer compound with red and blue color code designed for operating temperatures from 0 deg F to +180 deg F.
          - a) Center-leg gasket with pipe stop to ensure proper groove engagement, alignment, and pipe insertion depth.
          - b) Reference shall always be made to the latest published Victaulic Selection Guide for Gaskets for proper gasket selection for the intended service.
    2. Flange Adapters for Copper Tubing: 2"–6" (DN50–DN150) for copper tubing consisting of ASTM A-536, Grade 65-45-12, ductile iron housing, coated with copper colored alkyd enamel. Flange adapters shall be manufactured for engaging directly into copper tubing sized roll grooved copper tube and fittings and bolting directly to ANSI Class 125 cast iron and Class 150 steel flanged components. Victaulic Style 641.

4. *Mechanical-T* for Copper Tubing: 2-1/2”–4” (DN65-DN100) Grooved copper *Mechanical-T* shall consist of a cast bronze (C83600 85-5-5-5) upper housing with female NPT threaded outlet and locating collar, ductile iron (ASTM A536) lower housing coated with copper-colored enamel and synthetic rubber gasket. Victaulic Style 622.

Grooved Pipe Joint Construction: Square cut pipe ends and roll groove ends of pipe in accordance to manufacturer’s specifications. Use roll sets compatible with the pipe material and wall thickness per Victaulic installation instructions (I-600). Gaskets shall be verified as suitable for the intended service and shall be coated on the lips with a thin uniform coat of lubricant in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions. For installation-ready coupling housing shall engage both grooves, otherwise the housing shall be assembled over the gasket and shall engage both grooves. The nuts shall be uniformly tightened until the housing pads are firmly together metal to metal allowing visual inspection, or until properly tightened per manufacturer’s specifications and instructions. A factory trained representative shall provide on-site training for contractor's field personnel in the use of grooving tools and installation of grooved joint products. The representative shall periodically visit the jobsite and review contractor is following best recommended practices in grooved product installation including visual inspection of installation. (A distributor's representative is not considered qualified to conduct the training or jobsite visit(s).) To assure uniformity and compatibility of piping components in grooved end piping systems, all grooved products and grooving tools utilized shall be supplied by a single manufacturer.

## 2.3 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

### A. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe:

1. AWWA C151/A21.51, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

### B. Standard-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings:

1. AWWA C110/A21.10, ductile or gray iron.
2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

### C. Plain-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51.

### D. Appurtenances for Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Shurjoint Piping Products.
  - b. Star Pipe Products.
  - c. Victaulic Company.

2. Fittings for Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe: ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron castings or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron castings with dimensions that match pipe.
3. Mechanical Couplings for Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron-Piping:
  - a. AWWA C606 for ductile-iron-pipe dimensions.
  - b. Ferrous housing sections.
  - c. EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water.
  - d. Bolts and nuts.
  - e. Minimum Pressure Rating:
    - 1) NPS 14 to NPS 18 (DN 350 to DN 450): 250 psig (1725 kPa).
    - 2) NPS 20 to NPS 46 (DN 500 to DN 900): 150 psig (1035 kPa).

#### 2.4 PEX TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. PEX Distribution System: ASTM F 877, SDR 9 tubing.
- B. Fittings for PEX Tube: ASTM F 1807, metal-insert type with copper or stainless-steel crimp rings and matching PEX tube dimensions.
- C. Manifold: Multiple-outlet, plastic or corrosion-resistant-metal assembly complying with ASTM F 877; with plastic or corrosion-resistant-metal valve for each outlet.

#### 2.5 PP PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. PP Pipe: ASTM F 2389, SDR 7.4 and SDR 11.
- B. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM F 2389.
- C. CPVC / PVC Pipe: The Victaulic Company PGS-300 CPVC Piping system may be used on water and chemical services where IPS size Schedule 40 and 80 CPVC pipe is approved for use. Pipe and fittings shall be cut grooved to Victaulic's PGS-300 groove specification. Schedule 80 CPVC pipe shall meet the requirements of ASTM F441 and ASTM D1784 - minimum cell classification 23447 Pipe.
  1. Couplings for CPVC / PVC Pipe: Victaulic Style 857 and Style 856 Coupling; Installation ready coupling for direct stab installation without field disassembly; or Style 858 reducing coupling.
    - a. Consisting of two ductile iron housings conforming to ASTM A 536, Grade 65-45-12 cast with housing keys to join Victaulic PGS-300 grooved components, blue enamel. Couplings shall be provided with zinc-electroplated steel bolts and nuts conforming to ASTM A449 and ASTM A563/A563M. Gasket shall be Grade P Fluoro-elastomer for water systems with operating temperatures to the limitation of the pipe, NSF-61 for potable water services.
  2. Fittings: PGS-300 fittings meet the requirements of ASTM F439, modified for grooved ends. Fittings are supplied either directly molded to size with

integral groove profile or are fabricated from socket fittings with factory solvent cemented grooved tangents. Classified in accordance with NSF-PW SE for potable water service.

3. Butterfly Valves: 2" – 12" / 50 – 300 mm: 300 psi (2065 kPa CWP), suitable for bi-directional and dead-end service to full rated pressure. Grooved end stainless steel body and disc, grade CF8M, conforming to ASTM A351, with blow-out proof 17-4PH stainless steel stems to ASTM A564. Disc shall be connected to the stem without the use of fasteners or pins, and be offset from the disc centerline to provide a full 360° continuous contact with the seating surface when closed. Seat shall be pressure responsive, Grade P Fluoroelastomer. Manufacturer – Victaulic Series 861 Vic-300 MasterSeal Valve.
4. Check Valves: 2" – 12" / 50 – 300 mm: 300 psi (2065 kPa CWP), grooved end Grade CF8M stainless steel body and disc, 17-4PH stainless steel shaft, with 17-4PH or 316 stainless steel spring, and Grade P Fluoroelastomer seat. Suitable for vertical or horizontal installation. Basis of Design: Victaulic Series 816.

## 2.6 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

### A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials:

1. AWWA C110/A21.10, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free unless otherwise indicated.
2. Full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.

### B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

### C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys.

### D. Flux: ASTM B 813, water flushable.

### E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.7 ENCASUREMENT FOR PIPING

### A. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.

### B. Form: Sheet or tubing.

### C. Color: Black or natural.

## 2.8 TRANSITION FITTINGS

### A. General Requirements:

1. Same size as pipes to be joined.
  2. Pressure rating at least equal to pipes to be joined.
  3. End connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
- C. Sleeve-Type Transition Coupling: AWWA C219.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Cascade Waterworks Manufacturing.
    - b. Dresser, Inc.; Piping Specialties Products.
    - c. Ford Meter Box Company, Inc. (The).
    - d. JCM Industries.
    - e. Romac Industries, Inc.
    - f. Smith-Blair, Inc.; a Sensus company.
    - g. Viking Johnson.

## 2.9 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company; member of the Phoenix Forge Group.
    - b. Central Plastics Company.
    - c. Hart Industries International, Inc.
    - d. Jomar International.
    - e. Matco-Norca.
    - f. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
    - g. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - h. Wilkins; a Zurn company.
  2. Standard: ASSE 1079.
  3. Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
  4. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- C. Dielectric Flanges:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company; member of the Phoenix Forge Group.
  - b. Central Plastics Company.
  - c. Matco-Norca.
  - d. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - e. Wilkins; a Zurn company.
2. Standard: ASSE 1079.
3. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
4. Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
5. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
  - b. Calpico, Inc.
  - c. Central Plastics Company.
  - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
2. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
3. Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
4. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
5. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
6. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

E. Dielectric Nipples:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Elster Perfection Corporation.
  - b. Grinnell Mechanical Products; Tyco Fire Products LP.
  - c. Matco-Norca.
  - d. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
  - e. Victaulic Company.
2. Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
3. Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F 1545.
4. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 300 psig (2070 kPa) at 225 deg F (107 deg C).
5. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
6. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- C. Install ductile-iron piping under building slab with restrained joints according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
- D. Install underground copper tube and ductile-iron pipe in PE encasement according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.
- E. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve inside the building at each domestic water-service entrance. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" and with requirements for drain valves and strainers in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- F. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- G. Install water-pressure-reducing valves downstream from shutoff valves. Comply with requirements for pressure-reducing valves in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- H. Install domestic water piping level with 0.25 percent slope downward toward drain and plumb.
- I. Rough-in domestic water piping for water-meter installation according to utility company's requirements.
- J. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- K. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

- L. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- M. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
- N. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- O. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than the system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- P. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- Q. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- R. Install PEX piping with loop at each change of direction of more than 90 degrees.
- S. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.
- T. Install pressure gages on suction and discharge piping for each plumbing pump and packaged booster pump. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- U. Install thermostats in hot-water circulation piping. Comply with requirements for thermostats in Section 221123 "Domestic Water Pumps."
- V. Install thermometers on outlet piping from each water heater. Comply with requirements for thermometers in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- W. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- X. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- Y. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

### 3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.



- C. Brazed Joints for Copper Tubing: Comply with CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Braze Joints" chapter.
- D. Soldered Joints for Copper Tubing: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- E. Pressure-Sealed Joints for Copper Tubing: Join copper tube and pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
- F. Extruded-Tee Connections: Form tee in copper tube according to ASTM F 2154. Use tool designed for copper tube; drill pilot hole, form collar for outlet, dimple tube to form seating stop, and braze branch tube into collar.
- G. Joint Construction for Grooved-End Copper Tubing: Make joints according to AWWA C606. Roll groove ends of tubes. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of tubes or tube and fitting. Install coupling housing sections over gasket with keys seated in tubing grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.
- H. Joint Construction for Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Piping: Make joints according to AWWA C606. Cut round-bottom grooves in ends of pipe at gasket-seat dimension required for specified (flexible or rigid) joint. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of pipes or pipe and fitting. Install coupling housing sections over gasket with keys seated in piping grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.
- I. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for domestic water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- J. Joints for PEX Piping: Join according to ASTM F 1807.
- K. Joints for Dissimilar-Material Piping: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

### 3.4 TRANSITION FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.
- B. Transition Fittings in Underground Domestic Water Piping:
  - 1. Fittings for NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Fitting-type coupling.
  - 2. Fittings for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Larger: Sleeve-type coupling.
- C. Transition Fittings in Aboveground Domestic Water Piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Plastic-to-metal transition fittings or unions.

### 3.5 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.

- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Use dielectric couplings or nipples.
- C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Use dielectric flanges.
- D. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

### 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger, support products, and installation in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
  - 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
  - 2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
    - a. 100 Feet (30 m) and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    - b. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m): MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    - c. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m) if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
  - 3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet (30 m) or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
  - 4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- D. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch (10 mm).
- E. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 3/4 (DN 20) and Smaller: 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - 2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4 (DN 25 and DN 32): 72 inches (1800 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - 3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): 96 inches (2400 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - 4. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - 5. NPS 3 to NPS 5 (DN 80 to DN 125): 10 feet (3 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - 6. NPS 6 (DN 150): 10 feet (3 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
  - 7. NPS 8 (DN 200): 10 feet (3 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
- F. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet (3 m).
- G. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and Smaller: 84 inches (2100 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.

2. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  3. NPS 2 (DN 50): 10 feet (3 m) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  4. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 11 feet (3.4 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  5. NPS 3 and NPS 3-1/2 (DN 80 and DN 90): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  6. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
  7. NPS 6 (DN 150): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
  8. NPS 8 to NPS 12 (DN 200 to DN 300): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.
- H. Install supports for vertical steel piping every 15 feet (4.5 m).
- I. Install vinyl-coated hangers for PEX piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: 32 inches (815 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
- J. Install hangers for vertical PEX piping every 48 inches (1200 mm).
- K. Install vinyl-coated hangers for PP piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: 36 inches (900 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  2. NPS 1-1/4 to NPS 2 (DN 32 to DN 50): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  3. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 65 to DN 90): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  4. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
  5. NPS 6 (DN 150): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
  6. NPS 8 (DN 200): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.
- L. Install supports for vertical PP piping every 60 inches (1500 mm) for NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller, and every 72 inches (1800 mm) for NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and larger.
- M. Support piping and tubing not listed in this article according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. When installing piping adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:

1. Domestic Water Booster Pumps: Cold-water suction and discharge piping.
2. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
3. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than that required by plumbing code.
4. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.

### 3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification materials and installation in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Label pressure piping with system operating pressure.

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  1. Piping Inspections:
    - a. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
    - b. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
      - 1) Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing in after roughing in and before setting fixtures.
      - 2) Final Inspection: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified in "Piping Tests" Subparagraph below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
    - c. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
    - d. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
  2. Piping Tests:
    - a. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
    - b. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.

- c. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  - d. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig (345 kPa) above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow it to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
  - e. Repair leaks and defects with new materials, and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
  - f. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.
- B. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.10 ADJUSTING

- A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:
- 1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
  - 2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
  - 3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
  - 4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
    - a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide hot-water flow in each branch.
    - b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
  - 5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
  - 6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
  - 7. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
  - 8. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

### 3.11 CLEANING

- A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:
- 1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
  - 2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
    - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.

- b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:
    - 1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm (50 mg/L) of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
    - 2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm (200 mg/L) of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
  - c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
  - d. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
  - e. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Clean non-potable domestic water piping as follows:
- 1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
  - 2. Use purging procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or; if methods are not prescribed, follow procedures described below:
    - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
    - b. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
- C. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities. Include copies of water-sample approvals from authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

### 3.12 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Fitting Option: Extruded-tee connections and brazed joints may be used on aboveground copper tubing.
- D. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping, NPS 3 (DN 80) and smaller, shall be the following:
  - 1. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A) wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
  - 2. PP, SDR 11 socket fittings; and fusion-welded joints.

- E. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping, NPS 4 to NPS 8 (DN 100 to DN 200) and larger, shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A); wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
  - 2. Mechanical-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard pattern, mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical joints.
  - 3. Plain-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-joint, ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
  - 4. PP, SDR 11 socket fittings; and fusion-welded joints.
  
- F. Under-building-slab, combined domestic water, building-service, and fire-service-main piping, NPS 6 to NPS 12 (DN 150 to DN 300), shall be the following:
  - 1. Mechanical-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard pattern, mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical joints.
  - 2. Plain-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-joint, ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
  
- G. Under-building-slab, domestic water piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B); wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
  - 2. PP, SDR 11 socket fittings; and fusion-welded joints.
  
- H. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Hard or soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B); wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
  - 2. Hard or soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B); copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
  - 3. PEX tube, NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller.
    - a. Fittings for PEX tube:
      - 1) ASTM F 1807, metal insert and copper crimp rings.
      - 2) ASTM F 1960, cold expansion fittings and reinforcing rings.
      - 3) ASSE 1061, push-fit fittings.
  - 4. PP, SDR 11 socket fittings; and fusion-welded joints.
  
- I. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100), shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
  - 2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B); copper pressure-seal-joint fittings: and pressure-sealed joints.
  - 3. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B); grooved-joint, copper-tube appurtenances; and grooved joints.
  - 4. PP, SDR 11 socket fittings; and fusion-welded joints.

- J. Aboveground, domestic water piping, NPS 5 to NPS 8 (DN 125 to (DN 200), shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
  - 2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) grooved-joint, copper-tube appurtenances; and grooved joints.
- K. Aboveground, combined domestic water-service and fire-service main piping NPS 6 to NPS 12 (DN 150 to DN 300) shall be the following.
  - 1. Plain-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved joint, ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.

### 3.13 VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
  - 1. Shutoff Duty: Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller. Use butterfly, ball, or gate valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
  - 2. Throttling Duty: Use ball or globe valves for piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller. Use butterfly or ball valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
  - 3. Hot-Water Circulation Piping, Balancing Duty: Calibrated balancing valves.
  - 4. Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.
- B. Use check valves to maintain correct direction of domestic water flow to and from equipment.
- C. Iron grooved-end valves may be used with grooved-end piping.
  - 1. Butterfly Valves: 2-1/2" - 6" (DN65-DN150), 300 psi (2065 kPa) maximum pressure rating, with copper tubing sized grooved ends. Cast brass body to UNS C87850. (Alloy code shall be cast or stamped into the valve body.) Aluminum bronze disc to UNS C95500, with pressure responsive elastomer seat. Stem shall be offset from the disc centerline to provide complete 360-degree circumferential seating. Bubble tight, dead-end or bi-directional service, with memory stop for throttling, metering or balancing service. Valve may be automated with electric, pneumatic, or hydraulic operators. Certified to the low lead requirements of NSF-372. Victaulic Series 608N.

END OF SECTION 221116



## SECTION 221119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following domestic water piping specialties:
  - 1. Vacuum breakers.
  - 2. Backflow preventers.
  - 3. Water pressure-reducing valves.
  - 4. Balancing valves.
  - 5. Temperature-actuated water mixing valves.
  - 6. Strainers.
  - 7. Hose bibbs.
  - 8. Wall hydrants.
  - 9. Drain valves.
  - 10. Water hammer arresters.
  - 11. Electronic Tempering Station (ETS).
- B. See Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping" for water meters.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Working Pressure for Domestic Water Piping Specialties: 150 psig, unless otherwise indicated.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Operation and maintenance data.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. NSF Compliance:

1. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Components and Related Materials," for plastic domestic water piping components.
2. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects; Sections 1 through 9."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 VACUUM BREAKERS

#### A. Pipe-Applied, Atmospheric-Type Vacuum Breakers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Ames Co.
  - b. Cash Acme.
  - c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - d. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
  - e. Rain Bird Corporation.
  - f. Toro Company (The); Irrigation Div.
  - g. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
  - h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
2. Standard: ASSE 1001.
3. Size: NPS 1/4 to NPS 3 (DN 8 to DN 80), as required to match connected piping.
4. Body: Bronze.
5. Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded.
6. Finish: Chrome plated.

#### B. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Arrowhead Brass Products, Inc.
  - b. Cash Acme.
  - c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - d. Legend Valve.
  - e. MIFAB, Inc.
  - f. Prier Products, Inc.
  - g. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
  - h. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
  - i. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
  - j. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
2. Standard: ASSE 1001.

3. Body: Bronze, nonremovable, with manual drain.
4. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose threaded complying with ASME B1.20.7.
5. Finish: Chrome or nickel plated.

## 2.2 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

### A. Intermediate Atmospheric-Vent Backflow Preventers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - b. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
  - c. Apollo.
2. Standard: ASSE 1012.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
4. Size: NPS 1/2 (DN 15).
5. Body: Bronze.
6. End Connections: Union, solder joint.
7. Finish: Chrome plated.

### B. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - b. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
  - c. Apollo.
2. Standard: ASSE 1013.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
4. Pressure Loss: 12 psig (83 kPa) maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
5. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
6. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight through flow.
7. Accessories:
  - a. Valves: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; outside screw and yoke gate-type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
  - b. Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow-preventer connection.

### C. Double-Check Backflow-Prevention Assemblies:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - b. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
  - c. Apollo.
2. Standard: ASSE 1015.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Pressure Loss: 5 psig (35 kPa) maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
5. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
6. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
7. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight through flow.
8. Accessories:
  - a. Valves: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; outside screw and yoke gate-type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.

D. Backflow-Preventer Test Kits:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - b. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
  - c. Apollo.
2. Description: Factory calibrated, with gages, fittings, hoses, and carrying case with test-procedure instructions.

## 2.3 WATER PRESSURE-REDUCING VALVES

A. Water Regulators:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - b. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
  - c. Apollo.
2. Standard: ASSE 1003.
3. Pressure Rating: Initial working pressure of 150 psig (1035 kPa).

4. Body: Bronze with chrome-plated finish for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3 (DN 65 and DN 80).
5. Valves for Booster Heater Water Supply: Include integral bypass.
6. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3 (DN 65 and DN 80).

## 2.4 BALANCING VALVES

### A. Memory-Stop Balancing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - b. Watts Apollo.
2. Standard: MSS SP-110 for two-piece, copper-alloy ball valves.
3. Pressure Rating: 400-psig (2760-kPa) minimum CWP.
4. Size: NPS 2 (DN 50) or smaller.
5. Body: Copper alloy.
6. Port: Standard or full port.
7. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
8. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
9. End Connections: Solder joint or threaded.
10. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel with memory-setting device.

## 2.5 TEMPERATURE-ACTUATED WATER MIXING VALVES

### A. Water-Temperature Limiting Devices:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Apollo Lawler
  - b. Armstrong Inc.
2. Standard: ASSE 1017.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).
4. Type: Thermostatically controlled water mixing valve.
5. Material: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
6. Connections: Threaded union inlets and outlet.
7. Accessories: Check stops on hot- and cold-water supplies, and adjustable, temperature-control handle.
8. Valve Finish: Chrome plated.

### B. Primary, Thermostatic, Water Mixing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Lawler Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - b. Apollo.
  - c. Armstrong Inc.
2. Standard: ASSE 1017.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).
4. Type: Exposed-mounting, thermostatically controlled water mixing valve.
5. Material: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
6. Connections: Threaded union inlets and outlet.
7. Accessories: Manual temperature control, check stops on hot- and cold-water supplies, and adjustable, temperature-control handle.
8. Valve Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum, unless otherwise indicated.
9. Valve Finish: Polished, chrome plated.
10. Piping Finish: Chrome plated.
11. Cabinet: Factory-fabricated, stainless steel, for recessed mounting and with hinged, stainless-steel door.

## 2.6 STRAINERS FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

### A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, epoxy coating and for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
3. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
4. Screen: Stainless steel with round perforations, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Perforation Size:
  - a. Strainers NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: 0.062 inch (1.57 mm).
  - b. Strainers NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): 0.125 inch (3.18 mm).
  - c. Strainers NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: 0.25 inch (6.35 mm).
6. Drain: Factory-installed, hose-end drain valve.

## 2.7 HOSE BIBBS

### A. Hose Bibbs:

1. Standard: ASME A112.18.1 for sediment faucets.
2. Body Material: Bronze.
3. Seat: Bronze, replaceable.

4. Supply Connections: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4 (DN 15 or DN 20) threaded or solder-joint inlet.
5. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
6. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).
7. Vacuum Breaker: Integral or field-installation, nonremovable, drainable, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011.
8. Finish for Equipment Rooms: Rough bronze, or chrome or nickel plated.
9. Finish for Service Areas: Rough bronze.
10. Finish for Finished Rooms: Chrome or nickel plated.
11. Operation for Equipment Rooms: Wheel handle or operating key.
12. Operation for Service Areas: Wheel handle Operating key.
13. Operation for Finished Rooms: Wheel handle.
14. Include operating key with each operating-key hose bibb.
15. Include integral wall flange with each chrome- or nickel-plated hose bibb.

## 2.8 WALL HYDRANTS

### A. Nonfreeze Wall Hydrants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Josam Company.
  - b. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
  - c. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
  - d. Smith, Jay. R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
2. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M for concealed-outlet, self-draining wall hydrants.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).
4. Operation: Loose key.
5. Casing and Operating Rod: Of length required to match wall thickness. Include wall clamp.
6. Inlet: NPS 3/4 or NPS 1 (DN 20 or DN 25).
7. Outlet: Concealed, with integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
8. Box: Deep, flush mounting with cover.
9. Box and Cover Finish: Chrome plated.
10. Outlet: Exposed, with integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
11. Nozzle and Wall-Plate Finish: Rough bronze.
12. Operating Keys(s): One with each wall hydrant.

### B. Moderate-Climate Wall Hydrants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Josam Company.

- b. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
  - c. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
  - d. Smith, Jay. R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
- 2. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M for concealed-outlet, self-draining wall hydrants.
  - 3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).
  - 4. Operation: Loose key.
  - 5. Inlet: NPS 3/4 or NPS 1 (DN 20 or DN 25).
  - 6. Outlet: Concealed, with integral vacuum breaker or nonremovable hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011 or backflow preventer complying with ASSE 1052; and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
  - 7. Box: Deep, flush mounting with cover.
  - 8. Box and Cover Finish: Chrome plated.
  - 9. Outlet: Exposed, with integral vacuum breaker or nonremovable hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011 or backflow preventer complying with ASSE 1052; and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
  - 10. Nozzle and Wall-Plate Finish: Rough bronze.
  - 11. Operating Keys(s): One with each wall hydrant.

C. Vacuum Breaker Wall Hydrants:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Arrowhead Brass Products, Inc.
  - b. Mansfield Plumbing Products LLC.
  - c. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
  - d. Prier Products, Inc.
  - e. Smith, Jay. R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
  - g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
- 2. Standard: ASSE 1019, Type A or Type B.
- 3. Type: Freeze-resistant, automatic draining with integral air-inlet valve.
- 4. Classification: Type A, for automatic draining with hose removed or Type B, for automatic draining with hose removed or with hose attached and nozzle closed.
- 5. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).
- 6. Operation: Loose key or wheel handle.
- 7. Casing and Operating Rod: Of length required to match wall thickness. Include wall clamp.
- 8. Inlet: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4 (DN 15 or DN 20).
- 9. Outlet: Exposed with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.

2.9 DRAIN VALVES

A. Ball-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:



1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for standard-port, two-piece ball valves.
2. Pressure Rating: 400-psig (2760-kPa) minimum CWP.
3. Size: NPS 3/4 (DN 20).
4. Body: Copper alloy.
5. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
6. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
7. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel.
8. Inlet: Threaded or solder joint.
9. Outlet: Threaded, short nipple with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

## 2.10 WATER HAMMER ARRESTERS

### A. Water Hammer Arresters:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. AMTROL, Inc.
  - b. Josam Company.
  - c. MIFAB, Inc.
  - d. PPP Inc.
  - e. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - f. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - g. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - h. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
  - i. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
2. Standard: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201.
3. Type: Copper tube with piston.
4. Size: ASSE 1010, Sizes AA and A through F or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through F.

## 2.11 OUTLET BOXES

### A. Clothes Washer Outlet Boxes:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Acorn Engineering Company.
  - b. Guy Gray Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  - c. IPS Corporation.
  - d. LSP Products Group, Inc.
  - e. Oatey.
  - f. Plastic Oddities.
  - g. Symmons Industries, Inc.

- h. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
  - i. Whitehall Manufacturing; a div. of Acorn Engineering Company.
  - j. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Products.
  - k. P.P.P. Inc.
2. Mounting: Recessed.
  3. Material and Finish: Enameled-steel box and faceplate.
  4. Faucet: Combination valved fitting or separate hot- and cold-water valved fittings complying with ASME A112.18.1. Include garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlets.
  5. Supply Shutoff Fittings: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) gate, globe, or ball valves and NPS 1/2 (DN 15) copper, water tubing.
  6. Drain: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) standpipe and P-trap for direct waste connection to drainage piping.
  7. Inlet Hoses: Two 60-inch- (1500-mm-) long, rubber household clothes washer inlet hoses with female, garden-hose-thread couplings. Include rubber washers.
  8. Drain Hose: One 48-inch- (1200-mm-) long, rubber household clothes washer drain hose with hooked end.

B. Icemaker Outlet Boxes:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Acorn Engineering Company.
  - b. IPS Corporation.
  - c. LSP Products Group, Inc.
  - d. Oatey.
  - e. Plastic Oddities.
  - f. P.P.P. Inc.
2. Mounting: Recessed.
3. Material and Finish: Metal box and faceplate.
4. Faucet: Valved fitting complying with ASME A112.18.1. Include NPS 1/2 (DN 15) or smaller copper tube outlet.
5. Supply Shutoff Fitting: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) gate, globe, or ball valve and NPS 1/2 (DN 15) copper, water tubing.

2.12 ELECTRONIC TEMPERING STATION (ETS)

A. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Domestic Hot Water Electronic Tempering Station with High Temp Safeguard.
  - b. Pre-piped and pre-wired domestic Hot Water Electronic Tempering valve assembly.

B. References:

1. International Organization for Standardization (ISO)
  - 1) Manufacturer shall be ISO 9001:2008 Quality Management Systems Certified.
2. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):
  - 1) Tested per standard 916, Temperature Indicating and Regulating Equipment.
3. CSA International
  - 1) Tested and certified per standard NSF/ANSI 61.
4. California Domestic Water Lead-Free Law AB 1953.
  - 1) Tested and certified per standard NSF/ANSI 61.

C. Quality Assurance

1. Manufacturer's Quality System:
  - a. Registered to ISO 9001:2008 Quality Standard.
  - b. The control must be UL tested and certified per standard 916, Temperature Indicating and regulating equipment.
  - c. The control and valve shall be certified to comply with ASSE 1017.
  - d. The control and valve shall be certified to comply with NSF/ANSI 61.
  - e. The completed piping assembly and all fittings shall be certified to comply with California Lead-Free AB1953 code.
  - f. The completed assembly, the control and valve shall be certified to be installed in Massachusetts.

D. Control Operation

1. Description: The control shall operate on 120 V AC, with a maximum power of 48 VA. The Control shall be pre-engineered and programmed for the direct valve actuator operation in a domestic hot water heating system or the regulation of system water temperature in heating or cooling applications. It shall incorporate the following components:
  - a. Control: A microprocessor Electronic Tempering Valve control with PID-type Logic, built-in transformer, digital display of temperature and set point, and LED indicator. It shall be capable of controlling a set point range from 40°F to 200°F. It shall display the valve opening percentage to match actuator percent. The control shall maintain set point temperature within +/- 2° during a domestic draw of 0.5 GPM to full flow capacity in accordance with ASSE 1017.
  - b. Actuator: An actuator/Motor and linkage capable of traveling the complete valve stroke from fully OPEN to fully Closed in less than 20 second. It shall calibrate to actual valve stroke. The actuator is also capable of operating in the reverse direction, allowing the interchangeability of the HOT and COLD connections to the valve body.
  - c. Stainless Steel Valves: Two 1" NPT threaded 3-way mixing valve with 304 stainless-steel body and trim (Meets California AB 1953 and Massachusetts

- domestic water codes.) Valve Performance for each valve: 26 gpm @ 5 psi drop.
- d. Sensor: Temperature sensor of the thermistor type that can measure from -30°F to 250°F.
  - e. Motorized Stainless Ball/Safety Valve - A 2 1/2" NPT threaded 2-way motorized ball valve with 304 Stainless-Steel body and trim (Meets California AB 1953 and Massachusetts domestic water codes.)
  - f. Motorized Ball / Safety Valve Actuator - An actuator / motor with battery backup to close the motorized valve during loss of power.
2. Sequence of Operation: The control shall modulate the mixing valve to match the set point. Optional flow switch enable shall be available.
  3. Features:
    - a. Pre-piped Assembly: The completed assembly shall consist of a pre-piped assembly of the Duplex ETV valves, motorized safety valve and recirculation pump. The assembly shall include 5 field connections for COLD supply, HOT supply, Building recirculation pump, Mixed / Tempered outlet and COLD/RECIRC supply to Water Heater.
    - b. Assembly Configurations: The ETS - electronic tempering station shall be configured with 2/1/2" field connections. The station sized up to 2 1/2" shall be configured as a duplex valve system.
    - c. Pre-wired Assembly: The completed Duplex system shall consist of wiring of the ETV control module, ETV valve actuator, Motorized Safety valve actuator and recirculation pump and starter. The wiring shall also consist of a panel disconnect switch and panel alarm.
    - d. Set point: The control shall offer the user the ability to adjust the set point as a digital menu option and it shall display the set point at all times in the default screen.
    - e. Modes of Operation: The control shall operate as an electronic tempering valve, with a high temp alarm / safeguard.
    - f. Remote Set Point: The control shall offer a 4-20mA remote set point option to allow a BMS (Building Management System) to remotely change the set point.
    - g. Schedules: The control shall offer the user the ability to set a schedule where the control overrides the setpoint and sets an absolute water temperature. The control shall offer schedules for each day individually, as weekdays only, or as weekends only. Up to four periods can be configured per day.
    - h. Auto Calibration: On a power up, the actuator/motor shall automatically calibrate itself to the valve attached.
    - i. Display: The control shall have a two line by sixteen-character alphanumeric display. All control operation information shall be available for display.
    - j. Memory and Backup: The control shall store all configuration and setting on EE Prom. In case of power failure, the control shall be able to retrieve all of its latest settings when power is restored.
    - k. Sensor: The sensor circuitry shall be capable of one standard sensor input. Standard sensor input shall be of the thermistor type. Thermistor operating temperature range shall be -30°F to 250°F. Should the sensor show a fault

condition, the control shall automatically close hot port of valve until the situation is rectified.

- I. Alarm / Safeguard Option: The control shall have a high temperature Alarm / Safeguard option. In this option the control shall provide a manual reset alarm status in the event the Mixed outlet temperature exceeds an adjustable high temperature limit set point. The manual reset alarm function shall only be resettable once the Mixed outlet temperature has dropped below the alarm set point. When a high alarm is active, the control will power the valve closed, turn on an alarm indicator, and energize the alarm relay for optional external alarms. When the alarm is corrected, and the control is reset, the control will power the valve open for normal operation.
- m. Recirculation Pump: Taco Model 2400-50S-3P, 1.5" flanges, 30 gpm @ 26' tdh, stainless steel construction. Provide with starter mounted and wired to pump.
- n. Remote Communication Option: The control shall be capable of communicating remotely, allowing the user the ability to view and change control settings.
  - 1) The control shall be BACnet IP or BACnet MTSP

#### E. Regulatory Approvals

1. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL).
  - a. The control shall be tested per standard 916 Temperature Indicating and Regulating Equipment.
2. American Society of Sanitary Engineers (A.S.S.E.) ([www.asse.org](http://www.asse.org)).
  - a. The control, valve, and actuator/motor shall be certified to comply with ASSE code 1017.
3. CSA International.
  - a. The control valve shall be certified to comply with NSF?ANSI 61.
4. California Domestic Water Lead-Free Law AB1953.
  - a. The valve shall be certified to comply with California Lead-Free Fixture AB1953
5. The State of Massachusetts ([license.reg.state.ma.us](http://license.reg.state.ma.us))
  - a. The ETV shall be certified to be installed in the state of Massachusetts.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Refer to Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing" for piping joining materials, joint construction, and basic installation requirements.
- B. Install backflow preventers in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
  1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.

2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe diameters in drain piping and pipe to floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are not acceptable for this application.
  3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
- C. Install water regulators with inlet and outlet shutoff valves and bypass with memory-stop balancing valve. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.
- D. Install balancing valves in locations where they can easily be adjusted.
- E. Install temperature-actuated water mixing valves with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with shutoff valve on outlet.
1. Install thermometers and water regulators if specified.
  2. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified.
- F. Install Y-pattern strainers for water on supply side of each control valve, water pressure-reducing valve, solenoid valve, and pump.
- G. Install water hammer arresters in water piping according to PDI-WH 201.
- H. Install supply-type, trap-seal primer valves with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust valve for proper flow.
- I. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping and specialties.
- J. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each of the following:
1. Intermediate atmospheric-vent backflow preventers.
  2. Reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventers.
  3. Double-check backflow-prevention assemblies.
  4. Water pressure-reducing valves.
  5. Primary, thermostatic, water mixing valves.
  6. Supply-type, trap-seal primer valves.
- K. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and prepare test reports:

1. Test each reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventer and double-check backflow-prevention assembly according to authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.
- B. Remove and replace malfunctioning domestic water piping specialties and retest as specified above.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Set field-adjustable pressure set points of water pressure-reducing valves.
- B. Set field-adjustable flow of balancing valves.
- C. Set field-adjustable temperature set points of temperature-actuated water mixing valves.

END OF SECTION 221119





## SECTION 221316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
  - 2. Specialty pipe fittings.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF/ANSI 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-dwv" for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.
- C. Comply with ASTM D2321, "Standard Practice for Underground Installation of Thermoplastic Pipe for Sewers and Other Gravity-Flow Applications".

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

## 2.2 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service and Extra Heavy class(es). All pipe and fittings shall be marked with the collective trademark of the Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute and listed by NSF International.
  - 1. All pipe and fittings to be produced by a single manufacturer and are to be installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and applicable code requirements
- B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.

## 2.3 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 and CISPI 301.
  - 1. All pipe and fittings shall be marked with the collective trademark of the Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute and listed by NSF International. All pipe and fittings to be produced by a single manufacturer and are to be installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and applicable code requirements.
- B. CISPI, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. ANACO-Husky.
    - b. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
    - c. Fernco Inc.
    - d. Matco-Norca, Inc.
    - e. MIFAB, Inc.
    - f. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
    - g. Stant.
    - h. Tyler Pipe.
  - 2. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and CISPI 310 and certified by NSF International.
  - 3. Description: Stainless-steel corrugated shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
- C. Heavy-Duty, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. ANACO-Husky.
    - b. Clamp-All Corp.
    - c. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
    - d. MIFAB, Inc.
    - e. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.

- f. Stant.
  - g. Tyler Pipe.
2. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and ASTM C 1540.
  3. Description: Stainless-steel shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

## 2.4 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, drain, waste, and vent.
- B. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.
- C. Adhesive Primer: ASTM F 656.
  1. Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  2. Adhesive primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- D. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2564.
  1. PVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  2. Solvent cement shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.5 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Transition Couplings:
  1. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in OD's or of different materials. Include end connections same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
  2. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
  3. Unshielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - 1) Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
      - 2) Fernco Inc.

- 3) Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
  - 4) Plastic Oddities; a division of Diverse Corporate Technologies, Inc.
- b. Standard: ASTM C 1173.
  - c. Description: Elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
  - d. Sleeve Materials:
    - 1) For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
    - 2) For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
    - 3) For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
4. Shielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
    - 2) Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
  - b. Standard: ASTM C 1460.
  - c. Description: Elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
- 2.6 ENCASEMENT FOR UNDERGROUND METAL PIPING
- A. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.
  - B. Material: high-density, cross-laminated polyethylene film of 0.004-inch (0.10-mm) minimum thickness.
  - C. Form: Sheet or tube.
  - D. Color: Black or natural.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and

calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.

- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- F. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- G. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- H. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if two fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- I. Lay buried building drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- J. Install soil and waste drainage and vent piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Horizontal Sanitary Drainage Piping: 1/4" in direction of flow for piping NPS 2 1/2 and smaller; 1/8" in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 to NPS 6; 1/16" in direction of flow for piping NPS 8 or larger.
  - 2. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.
- K. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
  - 1. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.
- L. Install underground PVC piping according to ASTM D 2321.

M. Plumbing Specialties:

1. Install backwater valves in sanitary waste gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
2. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
3. Install drains in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."

N. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

O. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

P. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

Q. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

### 3.2 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Join hubless, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints. Support hubless cast iron pipe and fittings per CISPI Installation Handbook Chapter IV. Brace hubless cast iron pipe and fittings 5 inches and larger using a system designed and manufactured for the specific purpose of restraining hubless cast iron pipe and fittings against separation under high-thrust conditions. Restraint devices shall be designed to withstand a minimum of 50 feet head pressure.

B. Flanged Joints: Align bolt holes. Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Torque bolts in cross pattern.

C. Plastic, Nonpressure-Piping, Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:

1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
2. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855 and ASTM D 2665 Appendixes.

### 3.3 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION

#### A. Transition Couplings:

1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in OD's.
2. In Drainage Piping: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

### 3.4 VALVE INSTALLATION

#### A. Backwater Valves: Install backwater valves in piping subject to backflow.

1. Horizontal Piping: Horizontal backwater valves. Use normally closed type unless otherwise indicated.
2. Floor Drains: Drain outlet backwater valves unless drain has integral backwater valve.
3. Install backwater valves in accessible locations.
4. Comply with requirements for backwater valve specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."

### 3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

#### A. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
2. Install stainless-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in corrosive environments.
3. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
4. Install stainless-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in corrosive environments.
5. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
6. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:
  - a. 100 Feet (30 m) and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
  - b. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m): MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
  - c. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m) if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
7. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet (30 m) or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
8. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.

#### B. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches (300 mm) of each fitting, valve, and coupling.

#### C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.

- D. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum rods.
- E. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - 2. NPS 3 (DN 80): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
  - 4. NPS 6 and NPS 8 (DN 150 and DN 200): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
  - 5. Spacing for 10-foot (3-m) lengths may be increased to 10 feet (3 m). Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches (1500 mm).
- F. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet (4.5 m).
- G. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.6 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect drainage and vent piping to the following:
  - 1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect drainage piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
  - 2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect drainage and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
  - 4. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
  - 5. Install horizontal backwater valves with cleanout cover flush with floor.
  - 6. Comply with requirements for backwater valves cleanouts and drains specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
  - 7. Equipment: Connect drainage piping as indicated. Provide shutoff valve if indicated and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for connections NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.
- E. Make connections according to the following unless otherwise indicated:



1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

### 3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify exposed sanitary waste and vent piping. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
  1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
  2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test sanitary drainage and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
  1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
  2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced drainage and vent piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test drainage and vent piping except outside leaders on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water (30 kPa). From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
  4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg (250 Pa). Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional

air throughout period of inspection. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.

5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

### 3.9 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

### 3.10 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aboveground, soil, waste and vent piping, all sizes, shall be the following:
  1. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; Heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
- C. Underground, soil, waste and vent piping, all sizes, shall be the following:
  1. Solid wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
- D. Underground, soil, waste and vent piping, all sizes, for sanitary downstream of penal fixtures and mechanical rooms shall be the following:
  1. Service class, cast-iron soil piping; gaskets; and gasketed joints.

END OF SECTION 221316

## SECTION 221319 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following sanitary drainage piping specialties:
  - 1. Backwater valves.
  - 2. Cleanouts.
  - 3. Floor drains.
  - 4. Roof flashing assemblies.
  - 5. Miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.
  - 6. Flashing materials.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and accessories for grease interceptors.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 BACKWATER VALVES

- A. Horizontal, Cast-Iron Backwater Valves: See Plumbing Fixture Schedule Drawing for basis of design.
- B. Drain-Outlet Backwater Valves: See Plumbing Fixture Schedule Drawing for basis of design.

## 2.2 CLEANOUTS

- A. Exposed Cast-Iron Cleanouts: See Plumbing Fixture Schedule Drawing for basis of design.
- B. Cast-Iron Floor Cleanouts: See Plumbing Fixture Schedule Drawing for basis of design.
- C. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts: See Plumbing Fixture Schedule Drawing for basis of design.

## 2.3 FLOOR DRAINS

- A. Cast-Iron Floor Drains: See Plumbing Fixture Schedule Drawing for basis of design.

## 2.4 ROOF FLASHING ASSEMBLIES

- A. Roof Flashing Assemblies:
  - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Acorn Engineering Company; Elmdor/Stoneman Div.
    - b. Thaler Metal Industries Ltd.
  - B. Description: Manufactured assembly made of 6.0-lb/sq. ft. (30-kg/sq. m), 0.0938-inch- (2.4-mm-) thick, lead flashing collar and skirt extending at least 10 inches (250 mm) from pipe, with galvanized-steel boot reinforcement and counterflashing fitting.
    - 1. Open-Top Vent Cap: Without cap.
    - 2. Low-Silhouette Vent Cap: With vandal-proof vent cap.
    - 3. Extended Vent Cap: With field-installed, vandal-proof vent cap.

## 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS SANITARY DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Open Drains:
  - 1. Description: Shop or field fabricate from ASTM A 74, Service class, hub-and-spigot, cast-iron, soil-pipe fittings. Include P-trap, hub-and-spigot riser section; and where required, increaser fitting joined with ASTM C 564, rubber gaskets.
  - 2. Size: Same as connected waste piping with increaser fitting of size indicated.
- B. Deep-Seal Traps:
  - 1. Description: Cast-iron or bronze casting, with inlet and outlet matching connected piping.
  - 2. Size: Same as connected waste piping.
    - a. NPS 2 (DN 50): 4-inch- (100-mm-) minimum water seal.

b. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: 5-inch- (125-mm-) minimum water seal.

C. Air-Gap Fittings:

1. Standard: ASME A112.1.2, for fitting designed to ensure fixed, positive air gap between installed inlet and outlet piping.
2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
3. Inlet: Opening in top of body.
4. Outlet: Larger than inlet.
5. Size: Same as connected waste piping and with inlet large enough for associated indirect waste piping.

D. Sleeve Flashing Device:

1. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron fitting, with clamping device, that forms sleeve for pipe floor penetrations of floor membrane. Include galvanized-steel pipe extension in top of fitting that will extend 2 inches (51 mm) above finished floor and galvanized-steel pipe extension in bottom of fitting that will extend through floor slab.
2. Size: As required for close fit to riser or stack piping.

E. Stack Flashing Fittings:

1. Description: Counterflashing-type, cast-iron fitting, with bottom recess for terminating roof membrane, and with threaded or hub top for extending vent pipe.
2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.

F. Vent Caps:

1. Description: Cast-iron body with threaded or hub inlet and vandal-proof design. Include vented hood and setscrews to secure to vent pipe.
2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.

## 2.6 FLASHING MATERIALS

A. Lead Sheet: ASTM B 749, Type L51121, copper bearing, with the following minimum weights and thicknesses, unless otherwise indicated:

1. General Use: 4.0-lb/sq. ft. (20-kg/sq. m), 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) thickness.
2. Vent Pipe Flashing: 3.0-lb/sq. ft. (15-kg/sq. m), 0.0469-inch (1.2-mm) thickness.
3. Burning: 6-lb/sq. ft. (30-kg/sq. m), 0.0938-inch (2.4-mm) thickness.

B. Fasteners: Metal compatible with material and substrate being fastened.

C. Metal Accessories: Sheet metal strips, clamps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units required for installation; matching or compatible with material being installed.

D. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloy.

- E. Bituminous Coating: SSPC-Paint 12, solvent-type, bituminous mastic.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install backwater valves in building drain piping. For interior installation, provide cleanout deck plate flush with floor and centered over backwater valve cover, and of adequate size to remove valve cover for servicing.
- B. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4 (DN 100). Use NPS 4 (DN 100) for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
  - 2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
  - 3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet (15 m) for piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller and 100 feet (30 m) for larger piping.
  - 4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
- C. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- D. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- E. Install floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance.
  - 2. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor to allow floor drainage. Set with grates depressed according to the following drainage area radii:
    - a. Radius, 30 Inches (750 mm) or Less: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not less than 1/4-inch (6.35-mm) total depression.
    - b. Radius, 30 to 60 Inches (750 to 1500 mm): Equivalent to 1 percent slope.
    - c. Radius, 60 Inches (1500 mm) or Larger: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not greater than 1-inch (25-mm) total depression.
  - 3. Install floor-drain flashing collar or flange so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
  - 4. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Install roof flashing assemblies on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.

- G. Install flashing fittings on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.
- H. Assemble open drain fittings and install with top of hub 1 inch (25 mm) above floor.
- I. Install deep-seal traps on floor drains and other waste outlets, if indicated.
- J. Install air-gap fittings on draining-type backflow preventers and on indirect-waste piping discharge into sanitary drainage system.
- K. Install sleeve flashing device with each riser and stack passing through floors with waterproof membrane.
- L. Install vent caps on each vent pipe passing through roof.
- M. Install traps on plumbing specialty drain outlets. Omit traps on indirect wastes unless trap is indicated.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for piping installation requirements. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.

### 3.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Fabricate flashing from single piece unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required. Join flashing according to the following if required:
  - 1. Lead Sheets: Burn joints of lead sheets 6.0-lb/sq. ft. (30-kg/sq. m), 0.0938-inch (2.4-mm) thickness or thicker. Solder joints of lead sheets 4.0-lb/sq. ft. (20-kg/sq. m), 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) thickness or thinner.
- B. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.
  - 1. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching pipe size, with minimum length of 10 inches (250 mm), and skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches (200 mm) around pipe.
  - 2. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches (200 mm) around sleeve.
  - 3. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches (200 mm) around specialty.
- C. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.
- D. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.

- E. Install flashing for piping passing through roofs with counterflashing or commercially made flashing fittings, according to Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
- F. Extend flashing up vent pipe passing through roofs and turn down into pipe, or secure flashing into cast-iron sleeve having calking recess.

### 3.4 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each grease interceptor.
- B. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### 3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221319



## SECTION 224216.16 - COMMERCIAL SINKS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Service basins.
  - 2. Service sinks.
  - 3. Utility sinks.
  - 4. Handwash sinks.
  - 5. Sink faucets.
  - 6. Laminar-flow, faucet-spout outlets.
  - 7. Supply fittings.
  - 8. Waste fittings.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For sinks to include in maintenance manuals.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SERVICE BASINS

- A. Service Basins: See Plumbing Schedule Drawings for design basis.

#### 2.2 SERVICE SINKS

- A. Service Sinks: See Plumbing Schedule Drawings for design basis.

### 2.3 UTILITY SINKS

- A. Utility Sinks: See Plumbing Schedule Drawings for design basis.

### 2.4 HANDWASH SINKS

- A. Handwash Sinks: See Plumbing Schedule Drawings for design basis.

### 2.5 SINK FAUCETS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for faucet-spout materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Sink Faucets: See Plumbing Schedule Drawings for design basis.

### 2.6 LAMINAR-FLOW, FAUCET-SPOUT OUTLETS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for faucet-spout-outlet materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Faucet-Spout Outlets: See Plumbing Schedule Drawings for design basis.

### 2.7 SUPPLY FITTINGS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for supply-fitting materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Supply Fittings: See Plumbing Schedule Drawings for design basis.

### 2.8 WASTE FITTINGS

- A. Waste Fittings: See Plumbing Schedule Drawings for design basis.

### 2.9 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before sink installation.
- B. Examine walls, floors, and counters for suitable conditions where sinks will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install sinks level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- B. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-hung sinks.
- C. Install accessible wall-mounted sinks at handicapped/elderly mounting height according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.
- D. Set floor-mounted sinks in leveling bed of cement grout.
- E. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each sink faucet.
  - 1. Exception: Use ball, gate, or globe valves if supply stops are not specified with sink. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 220523 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
  - 2. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.
- F. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- G. Seal joints between sinks and counters, floors, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- H. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible sinks. Comply with requirements in Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect sinks with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."

- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

#### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust sinks and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning sinks, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.

#### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After completing installation of sinks, inspect and repair damaged finishes.
- B. Clean sinks, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- C. Provide protective covering for installed sinks and fittings.
- D. Do not allow use of sinks for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224216.16

## SECTION 230517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Sleeves.
  - 2. Sleeve-seal systems.
  - 3. Grout.
  - 4. Silicone sealants.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Advance Products & Systems
  - 2. Calpico, Inc.
  - 3. Gpt; an EnPro Industries Company
- B. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, with plain ends and integral welded waterstop collar.
- C. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Pipe Sleeves: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

## 2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
  2. Airex Manufacturing.
  3. CALPICO, Inc.
  4. GPT; an EnPro Industries company.
  5. Metraflex Company (The).
  6. Proco Products, Inc.
- B. Description:
1. Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
  2. Designed to form a hydrostatic seal of 20-psig (137-kPa) minimum).
  3. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size.
  4. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel. In "Connecting Bolts and Nuts" Subparagraph below, retain first option for standard applications. Retain second or third option when hydrocarbons are present in soil or for wide- and high-temperature-range applications of minus 67 deg F (minus 55 deg C) to 400 deg F (204 deg C). Coordinate with application recommendations of retained manufacturers.
  5. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, ASTM B633 of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

## 2.3 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink, recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in nonfire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## 2.4 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant, ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, use NT.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

- a. Dow Corning Corporation.
  - b. GE Construction Sealants; Momentive Performance Materials Inc.
  - c. Pecora Corporation.
  - d. Polymeric Systems, Inc.
  - e. Schnee-Morehead, Inc., an ITW company.
  - f. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
- B. Silicone, S, P, 25, T, NT: Single-component, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT. Grade P Pourable (self-leveling) formulation is for opening in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. May National Associates, Inc.; a subsidiary of Sika Corporation.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
  1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
  2. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
  1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
  2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.

- E. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal-system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
- B. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

### 3.4 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
  - 1. Exterior Concrete Walls Above Grade (Required for all HVAC Piping):
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150): Steel-pipe sleeves.
    - b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Steel-pipe sleeves.
  - 2. Exterior Concrete Walls Below Grade (Required for all HVAC Piping):
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150): Steel-pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
    - b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Steel-pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.



3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade (Required for all HVAC Piping):
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150): Steel-pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
    - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Steel-pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
4. Concrete Slabs Above Grade (Required for all HVAC Piping):
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150): Steel-pipe sleeves.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Steel-pipe sleeves.
5. Interior Partitions (Required for all HVAC Piping):
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150): Steel-pipe sleeves.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Galvanized-steel sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION 230517



## SECTION 230518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
1. Escutcheons.
  2. Floor plates.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. BrassCraft Manufacturing Co.; a Masco company.
  2. Dearborn Brass.
  3. Jones Stephens Corp.
  4. Keeney Manufacturing Company (The).
  5. Mid-America Fittings, Inc.
  6. ProFlo; a Ferguson Enterprises, Inc. brand.

#### 2.2 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped steel with polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- D. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish; concealed hinge; and spring-clip fasteners.

## 2.3 FLOOR PLATES

- A. Split Floor Plates: Steel with concealed hinge.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping and Relocated Existing Piping:
    - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece deep pattern.
    - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece steel with [polished, chrome-plated] [polished brass] finish.
    - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - 2. Escutcheons for Existing Piping to Remain:
    - a. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - b. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - d. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. New Piping and Relocated Existing Piping: Split floor plate.
  - 2. Existing Piping to Remain: Split floor plate.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Using new materials, replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates.

END OF SECTION 230518

## SECTION 230519 - METERS AND GAGES FOR HVAC PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Bimetallic-Actuated Thermometers.
  - 2. Liquid-In-Glass Thermometers.
  - 3. Duct-Thermometer Mounting Brackets.
  - 4. Thermowells.
  - 5. Pressure Gages.
  - 6. Gage Attachments.
  - 7. Flowmeters.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 BIMETALLIC-ACTUATED THERMOMETERS

- A. Standard: ASME B40.200.
- B. Case: Sealed type; stainless steel with 5-inch (127-mm) nominal diameter.
- C. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings and scales in deg F.
- D. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable angle, with unified-inch screw threads.

- E. Connector Size: 1/2 inch (13 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
- F. Stem: 0.25 or 0.375 inch (6.4 or 9.4 mm) in diameter; stainless steel.
- G. Window: Plain glass.
- H. Ring: Stainless steel.
- I. Element: Bimetal coil.
- J. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
- K. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.

## 2.2 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

### A. Metal-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:

- 1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
- 2. Case: Cast aluminum; 7-inch (178-mm) nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
- 3. Case Form: Adjustable angle unless otherwise indicated.
- 4. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
- 5. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F.
- 6. Window: Glass or plastic.
- 7. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.
  - a. Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
  - b. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
- 8. Connector: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
- 9. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

### B. Plastic-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:

- 1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
- 2. Case: Plastic; 7-inch (178-mm) nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
- 3. Case Form: Adjustable angle unless otherwise indicated.
- 4. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
- 5. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F.
- 6. Window: Glass or plastic.
- 7. Stem: Aluminum, brass, or stainless steel and of length to suit installation.
  - a. Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
  - b. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.

8. Connector: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
9. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

### 2.3 DUCT-THERMOMETER MOUNTING BRACKETS

- A. Description: Flanged bracket with screw holes, for attachment to air duct and made to hold thermometer stem.

### 2.4 THERMOWELLS

- A. Thermowells:

1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CNR or CUNI.
4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: CRES.
5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
6. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, (DN 15, DN 20, or NPS 25,) ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
7. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch (13, 19, and 25 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
8. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
9. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
10. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
11. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.

- B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.

### 2.5 PRESSURE GAGES

- A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Standard: ASME B40.100.
2. Case: Sealed type; cast aluminum or drawn steel; 6-inch (152-mm) nominal diameter.
3. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
4. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/2 (DN 15), ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
5. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi.
7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
8. Window: Glass.
9. Ring: Stainless steel.
10. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

## 2.6 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

- A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/2 (DN 15), ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and piston-type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.
- B. Siphons: Loop-shaped section of stainless-steel pipe with NPS 1/2 (DN 15) pipe threads.
- C. Valves: Brass or stainless-steel needle, with NPS 1/2 (DN 15), ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

## 2.7 FLOWMETERS

- A. Turbine Flowmeters:
  - 1. Description: Flowmeter with sensor and indicator.
  - 2. Flow Range: Sensor and indicator shall cover operating range of equipment or system served.
  - 3. Sensor: Impeller turbine; for inserting into pipe fitting or for installing in piping and measuring flow directly in gallons per minute (liters per second).
    - a. Design: Device or pipe fitting with inline turbine and integral direct-reading scale for gas, oil, steam or water.
    - b. Construction: Bronze or stainless-steel body, with plastic turbine or impeller.
    - c. Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - d. Minimum Temperature Rating: 180 deg F (82 deg C).
  - 4. Indicator: Hand-held meter; either an integral part of sensor or a separate meter.
  - 5. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1-1/2 percent.
  - 6. Display: Shows rate of flow, with register to indicate total volume in gallons (liters).
  - 7. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each flowmeter.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install thermowells with socket extending one-third of pipe diameter and in vertical position in piping tees.
- B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.
- C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.
- D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.



- E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
- F. Install remote-mounted thermometer bulbs in thermowells and install cases on panels; connect cases with tubing and support tubing to prevent kinks. Use minimum tubing length.
- G. Install duct-thermometer mounting brackets in walls of ducts. Attach to duct with screws.
- H. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.
- I. Install remote-mounted pressure gages on panel.
- J. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids (except steam).
- K. Install valve and syphon fitting in piping for each pressure gage for steam.
- L. Install flow indicators in piping systems in accessible positions for easy viewing.
- M. Assemble and install connections, tubing, and accessories between flow-measuring elements and flowmeters according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- N. Install flowmeter elements in accessible positions in piping systems.
- O. Install differential-pressure-type flowmeter elements, with at least minimum straight lengths of pipe, upstream and downstream from element according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- P. Install permanent indicators on walls or brackets in accessible and readable positions.
- Q. Install connection fittings in accessible locations for attachment to portable indicators.
- R. Mount thermal-energy meters on wall if accessible; if not, provide brackets to support meters.
- S. Install thermometers in the following locations:
  - 1. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic zone.
  - 2. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic boiler.
  - 3. Two inlets and two outlets of each chiller.
  - 4. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil in air-handling units.
  - 5. Two inlets and two outlets of each hydronic heat exchanger.
  - 6. Inlet and outlet of each thermal-storage tank.
  - 7. Outside-, return-, supply-, and mixed-air ducts.
- T. Install pressure gages in the following locations:
  - 1. Discharge of each pressure-reducing valve.
  - 2. Inlet and outlet of each chiller chilled-water and condenser-water connection.

3. Suction and discharge of each pump.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.
- B. Connect flowmeter-system elements to meters.
- C. Connect flowmeter transmitters to meters.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, calibrate meters according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

### 3.4 THERMOMETER SCHEDULE

- A. Thermometers shall be one of the following:
  1. Liquid-filled or Sealed, bimetallic-actuated type.
  2. Direct -mounted, metal-case, vapor-actuated type.
  3. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type. Retain one or both subparagraphs below. If retaining more than one type of thermometer, indicate location of each on Drawings.

### 3.5 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F.
- B. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F.
- C. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 20 to 240 deg F.
- D. Scale Range for Steam and Steam-Condensate Piping: 20 to 240 deg F.
- E. Scale Range for Air Ducts: 0 to 100 deg F.

### 3.6 PRESSURE-GAGE SCHEDULE

- A. Pressure gages shall be the following:
  1. Liquid-filled or Sealed, direct-mounted, metal case.

3.7 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi.
- B. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi.
- C. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi.
- D. Scale Range for Steam Piping: 0 to 160 psi.

3.8 FLOWMETER SCHEDULE

- A. Flowmeters for Chilled-Water Piping: Turbine or Venturi type.
- B. Flowmeters for Condenser-Water Piping: Turbine or Venturi type.
- C. Flowmeters for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: Turbine or Venturi type.
- D. Flowmeters for Steam and Steam-Condensate Piping: Turbine or Venturi type.

END OF SECTION 230519



## SECTION 230523.12 - BALL VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Brass ball valves.
  - 2. Bronze ball valves.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
  - 1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded-end valves.
  - 2. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
  - 3. ASME B16.18 for solder-joint connections.
  - 4. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
  - 5. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- C. Bronze valves shall be made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.
- D. Refer to HVAC valve schedule articles for applications of valves.
- E. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.

- F. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Valve Actuator Types:
  - 1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger.
  - 2. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves smaller than NPS 4 (DN 100).
- H. Valves in Insulated Piping:
  - 1. Include 2-inch (50-mm) stem extensions.
  - 2. Extended operating handle of nonthermal-conductive material, and protective sleeves that allow operation of valves without breaking the vapor seals or disturbing insulation.
  - 3. Memory stops that are fully adjustable after insulation is applied.
- I. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

## 2.2 BRASS BALL VALVES

- A. Brass Ball Valves, One Piece:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. KITZ Corporation.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - b. CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
    - c. Body Design: One piece.
    - d. Body Material: Forged brass.
    - e. Ends: Threaded.
    - f. Seats: PTFE.
    - g. Stem: Brass.
    - h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
    - i. Port: Reduced.
- B. Brass Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port and Brass Trim, Threaded Ends:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. American Valve, Inc.
    - b. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - c. Crane; Crane Energy Flow Solutions.
    - d. DynaQuip Controls.
    - e. Hammond Valve.

- f. Jomar Valve.
- g. KITZ Corporation.
- h. Lance Valves.
- i. Legend Valve & Fitting, Inc.
- j. Marwin Valve; Richards Industries.
- k. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- l. NIBCO INC.
- m. Red-White Valve Corp.
- n. Siemens Industry, Inc., Building Technologies Division.
- o. Stockham; Crane Energy Flow Solutions.
- p. WATTS.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
- d. Body Design: Two piece.
- e. Body Material: Forged brass.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE.
- h. Stem: Brass.
- i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- j. Port: Full.

C. Brass Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port and Brass Trim, Press Ends:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

- a. American Valve, Inc.
- b. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
- c. Crane; Crane Energy Flow Solutions.
- d. Hammond Valve.
- e. Jomar Valve.
- f. KITZ Corporation.
- g. Legend Valve & Fitting, Inc.
- h. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- i. NIBCO INC.
- j. Stockham; Crane Energy Flow Solutions.
- k. WATTS.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
- c. Body Design: Two piece.
- d. Body Material: Forged brass.
- e. Ends: Press.
- f. Seats: PTFE or RPTFE.

- g. Stem: Brass.
- h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- i. Port: Full.
- j. O-Ring Seal: Buna-N or EPDM.

D. Brass Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim, Threaded Ends:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

- a. Crane; Crane Energy Flow Solutions.
- b. Flow-Tek, Inc.
- c. Hammond Valve.
- d. Jamesbury; Metso.
- e. Jenkins Valves; Crane Energy Flow Solutions.
- f. KITZ Corporation.
- g. Marwin Valve; Richards Industries.
- h. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- i. NIBCO INC.
- j. RuB Inc.
- k. Siemens Industry, Inc., Building Technologies Division.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
- d. Body Design: Two piece.
- e. Body Material: Forged brass.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE.
- h. Stem: Stainless steel.
- i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- j. Port: Full.

E. Brass Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Regular Port and Brass Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

- a. Hammond Valve.
- b. Jamesbury; Metso.
- c. Legend Valve & Fitting, Inc.
- d. Marwin Valve; Richards Industries.
- e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- f. NIBCO INC.
- g. Siemens Industry, Inc., Building Technologies Division.
- h. WATTS.



2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
- d. Body Design: Two piece.
- e. Body Material: Forged brass.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE.
- h. Stem: Brass.
- i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- j. Port: Regular.

F. Brass Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Regular Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

- a. Jamesbury; Metso.
- b. Marwin Valve; Richards Industries.
- c. Siemens Industry, Inc., Building Technologies Division.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
- d. Body Design: Two piece.
- e. Body Material: Brass or bronze.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE.
- h. Stem: Stainless steel.
- i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- j. Port: Regular.

## 2.3 BRONZE BALL VALVES

A. Bronze Ball Valves, One-Piece with Bronze Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

- a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
- b. NIBCO INC.
- c. WATTS.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
- c. Body Design: One piece.
- d. Body Material: Bronze.
- e. Ends: Threaded.
- f. Seats: PTFE.
- g. Stem: Bronze.
- h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- i. Port: Reduced.

B. Bronze Ball Valves, One-Piece with Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

- a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
- b. NIBCO INC.
- c. WATTS.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
- c. Body Design: One piece.
- d. Body Material: Bronze.
- e. Ends: Threaded.
- f. Seats: PTFE.
- g. Stem: Stainless steel.
- h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- i. Port: Reduced.

C. Bronze Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port and Bronze or Brass Trim, Threaded Ends:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

- a. American Valve, Inc.
- b. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
- c. Crane; Crane Energy Flow Solutions.
- d. Hammond Valve.
- e. Lance Valves.
- f. Legend Valve & Fitting, Inc.
- g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- h. NIBCO INC.
- i. Red-White Valve Corp.
- j. WATTS.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
- d. Body Design: Two piece.
- e. Body Material: Bronze.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE.
- h. Stem: Bronze.
- i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- j. Port: Full.

D. Bronze Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

- a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
- b. Crane; Crane Energy Flow Solutions.
- c. Hammond Valve.
- d. Lance Valves.
- e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- f. NIBCO INC.
- g. Red-White Valve Corp.
- h. WATTS.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
- d. Body Design: Two piece.
- e. Body Material: Bronze.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE.
- h. Stem: Stainless steel.
- i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- j. Port: Full.

E. Bronze Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Regular Port and Bronze or Brass Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

- a. American Valve, Inc.
- b. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
- c. DynaQuip Controls.
- d. Hammond Valve.
- e. Jenkins Valves; Crane Energy Flow Solutions.
- f. Lance Valves.

- g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- h. NIBCO INC.
- i. Stockham; Crane Energy Flow Solutions.
- j. WATTS.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
- d. Body Design: Two piece.
- e. Body Material: Bronze.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE.
- h. Stem: Bronze.
- i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- j. Port: Regular.

F. Bronze Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Regular Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

- a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
- b. Hammond Valve.
- c. Jenkins Valves; Crane Energy Flow Solutions.
- d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- e. NIBCO INC.
- f. WATTS.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
- d. Body Design: Two piece.
- e. Body Material: Bronze.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE.
- h. Stem: Stainless steel.
- i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- j. Port: Regular.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.

### 3.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.
- B. Select valves with the following end connections:
  - 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option or press-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
  - 2. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends.

### 3.3 CHILLED-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze ball valves, two piece, with bronze trim, regular port, threaded joint ends.
  - 1. Valves may be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.

### 3.4 CONDENSER-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze ball valves, two piece, with bronze trim, regular port, threaded-joint ends.
  - 1. Valves may be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.

### 3.5 HEATING-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: bronze ball valves, two piece, with bronze trim, and regular port.

3.6 LOW-PRESSURE STEAM VALVE SCHEDULE (15 PSIG (104 kPa) OR LESS)

- A. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze ball valves, two piece with bronze trim, and regular port.

3.7 HIGH-PRESSURE STEAM VALVE SCHEDULE (MORE THAN 15 PSIG (104 kPa))

- A. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze, two piece with bronze trim, and regular port.

3.8 STEAM-CONDENSATE VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze ball valves, two piece, with bronze trim, and regular port.

END OF SECTION 230523.12

## SECTION 230529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
  - 2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 3. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
  - 4. Fastener systems.
  - 5. Equipment supports.
  - 6. Roof mounted supports

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for HVAC piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - 1. Design supports for multiple pipes capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
  - 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
  - 3. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:

Include Product Data for components:

1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
  2. Equipment supports.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
  2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
  3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
  4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
  5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
- B. Stainless-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
  2. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
  3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.
- C. Copper Pipe Hangers:
1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
  2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel.

### 2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.



### 2.3 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig (862-kPa) minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig (862-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
- C. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- D. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- E. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches (50 mm) beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

### 2.4 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, stainless-steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

### 2.5 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

### 2.6 ROOF MOUNTED SUPPORTS

- A. Support piping on roof with an engineered prefabricated PHP System, or approved equivalent, designed for installation without roof penetrations, flashing or damage to the roofing material. The system shall consist of bases, made of high density polypropylene plastics with UV Protection, a HDG structural steel frame and suitable pipe hangers for the application. Nuts, threaded rods and washers shall be HDG, spring nuts and bolts for spring nuts will be electro-plated. System shall be custom designed to fit piping and conduit to be installed and the actual conditions of service.
- B. Support ductwork on roof with an engineered prefabricated PHP-Duct system, or approved equivalent, designed for installation without roof penetrations, flashing or damage to the roofing material. The system shall consist of bases, made of high density polypropylene plastics with UV Protection, and a HDG structural steel frame. Nuts, threaded rods and washers shall be HDG, spring nuts and bolts for spring nuts

will be electroplated. System shall be custom designed to fit the load requirements that will be required.

## 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
  - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
  - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- D. Fastener System Installation:
  - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
  - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.

- F. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- G. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- H. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- I. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- J. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- K. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- L. Insulated Piping:
  - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
    - a. Piping Operating Above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
    - b. Piping Operating Below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
    - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
  - 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
    - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
  - 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
    - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
  - 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
    - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 8 to DN 90): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.048 inch (1.22 mm) thick.
    - b. NPS 4 (DN 100): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.

- c. NPS 5 and NPS 6 (DN 125 and DN 150): 18 inches (457 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.
  - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14 (DN 200 to DN 350): 24 inches (610 mm) long and 0.075 inch (1.91 mm) thick.
  - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24 (DN 400 to DN 600): 24 inches (610 mm) long and 0.105 inch (2.67 mm) thick.
5. Pipes NPS 8 (DN 200) and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
  6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

### 3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

### 3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
  1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches (40 mm).

### 3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils (0.05 mm).
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

### 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and metal trapeze pipe hangers and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers and stainless-steel attachments for hostile environment applications.
- G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- H. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- I. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- J. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750).
  - 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F (566 deg C), pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24 (DN 100 to DN 600), requiring up to 4 inches (100 mm) of insulation.
  - 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36 (DN 20 to DN 900), requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches (100 mm) of insulation.

4. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200).
  5. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750).
  6. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36 (DN 100 to DN 900), with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
  7. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36 (DN 100 to DN 900), with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
  8. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30 (DN 25 to DN 750), from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
  9. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 (DN 50 to DN 1050) if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
- K. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 (DN 24 to DN 600).
  2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 (DN 20 to DN 600) if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- L. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches (150 mm) for heavy loads.
  2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F (49 to 232 deg C) piping installations.
- M. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
  2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joint construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
  3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
  4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
  5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
  6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  7. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below, or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:

- a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb (340 kg).
  - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb (680 kg).
  - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb (1360 kg).
8. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
  9. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
- N. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
  3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- O. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches (32 mm).
  2. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
  3. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
- P. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- Q. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION 230529





## SECTION 230548 - VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR HVAC

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Elastomeric isolation pads.
2. Elastomeric isolation mounts.
3. Restrained elastomeric isolation mounts.
4. Open-spring isolators.
5. Housed-spring isolators.
6. Restrained-spring isolators.
7. Housed-restrained-spring isolators.
8. Pipe-riser resilient support.
9. Resilient pipe guides.
10. Elastomeric hangers.
11. Spring hangers.
12. Snubbers.
13. Restraints - rigid type.
14. Restraints - cable type.
15. Restraint accessories.
16. Post-installed concrete anchors.
17. Concrete inserts.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 210548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment" for devices for fire-suppression equipment and systems.
2. Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for devices for plumbing equipment and systems.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- B. Shop Drawings:

1. Detail fabrication and assembly of equipment bases.

2. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal:

1. For each seismic-restraint and wind-load protection device, including seismic-restrained mounting, pipe-riser resilient support, snubber, seismic restraint, seismic-restraint accessory, concrete anchor and insert, and restrained isolation roof-curb rail that is required by this Section or is indicated on Drawings, submit the following:
  - a. Seismic and Wind-Load Restraint, and Vibration Isolation Base Selection: Select vibration isolators, seismic and wind-load restraints, and vibration isolation bases complying with performance requirements, design criteria, and analysis data.
  - b. Riser Supports: Include riser diagrams and calculations showing anticipated expansion and contraction at each support point, initial and final loads on building structure, spring deflection changes, and seismic loads. Include certification by professional engineer that riser system was examined for excessive stress and that none exists.
  - c. Concrete Anchors and Inserts: Include calculations showing anticipated seismic and wind loads. Include certification that device is approved by an NRTL for seismic reinforcement use.
  - d. Seismic Design Calculations: Submit all input data and loading calculations prepared under "Seismic Design Calculations" Paragraph in "Performance Requirements" Article.
  - e. Wind-Load Design Calculations: Submit all static and dynamic loading calculations prepared under "Wind-Load Design Calculations" Paragraph in "Performance Requirements" Article.
  - f. Qualified Professional Engineer: All designated-design submittals for seismic- and wind-restraint calculations are to be signed and sealed by qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
2. Seismic- and Wind-Restraint Detail Drawing:
  - a. Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of seismic and wind restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.
  - b. Details: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacings. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and values of forces transmitted to the structure during seismic events. Indicate association with vibration isolation devices.
  - c. Coordinate seismic-restraint and vibration isolation details with wind-restraint details required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply also with requirements in other Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.
3. All delegated-design submittals for seismic- and wind-restraint detail Drawings are to be signed and sealed by qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

4. Product Listing, Preapproval, and Evaluation Documentation: By an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum ratings of restraint items and basis for approval (tests or calculations).
5. Design Calculations for Vibration Isolation Devices: Calculate static and dynamic loading due to equipment weight and operating forces required to select proper vibration isolators, and to design vibration isolation bases.
6. Riser Supports: Include riser diagrams and calculations showing anticipated expansion and contraction at each support point, initial and final loads on building structure, and spring deflection changes. Include certification that riser system was examined for excessive stress and that none exists.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of vibration isolation device installation and seismic bracing for HVAC piping and equipment with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and restraints, if any.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Seismic Qualification Data: Provide special certification for designated seismic systems as indicated in ASCE/SEI 7-16, Paragraph 13.2.2, "Special Certification Requirements for Designated Seismic Systems" for all Designated Seismic Systems identified as such on Drawings or in the Specifications.
  1. Provide equipment manufacturer's written certification for each designated active mechanical seismic device and system, stating that it will remain operable following the design earthquake. Certification must be based on requirements of ASCE/SEI 7 and AHRI 1270 (AHRI 1271), including shake table testing per ICC-ES AC156 or a similar nationally recognized testing standard procedure acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction or experience data as permitted by ASCE/SEI 7-16.
  2. Provide equipment manufacturer's written certification that components with hazardous contents maintain containment following the design earthquake by methods required in ASCE/SEI 7-16.
  3. Submit evidence demonstrating compliance with these requirements for approval to authorities having jurisdiction after review and acceptance by a licensed professional engineer.
  4. The following HVAC systems and components are Designated Seismic Systems and require written special certification of seismic qualification by manufacturer:
- E. Wind-Force Performance Certification: Provide special certification for HVAC components subject to high wind exposure and impact damage and designated on Drawings or in the Specifications to require wind-force performance certification.
  1. Provide equipment manufacturer's written certification for each designated HVAC device, stating that it will remain in place and operable following the design wind event and comply with all requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

2. Provide manufacturer's written certification for each designated louver, damper, or similar device, stating that it will remain in place and protect opening from penetration of windborne debris and comply with all requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Certification must be based on ICC-ES or similar nationally recognized testing standard procedures acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct testing indicated, be an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and be acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- C. Seismic- and Wind-Load-Restraint Device Load Ratings: Devices to be tested and rated in accordance with applicable code requirements and authorities having jurisdiction. Devices to be listed by a nationally recognized third party that requires periodic follow-up inspections and has a listing directory available to the public. Provide third-party listing by one or more of the following: an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design seismic and wind-load control system.
  1. Seismic and Wind-Load Performance: Equipment shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions and high wind events determined in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7-16.
- B. Seismic Design Calculations:
  1. Perform calculations to obtain force information necessary to properly select seismic-restraint devices, fasteners, and anchorage. Perform calculations using methods acceptable to applicable code authorities and as presented in ASCE/SEI 7-16. Where "ASCE/SEI 7" is used throughout this Section, it is to be understood that the edition referred to in this subparagraph is the edition intended as reference throughout the Section Text.
- C. Wind-Load Design Calculations:
  1. Perform calculations to obtain force information necessary to properly select wind-load-restraint devices, fasteners, and anchorage. Perform calculations

using methods acceptable to applicable code authorities and as presented in ASCE/SEI 7-16. Where "ASCE/SEI 7" is used throughout this Section, it is to be understood that the edition referred to in this subparagraph is intended as referenced throughout the Section Text unless otherwise noted.

- D. Consequential Damage: Provide additional seismic restraints for suspended HVAC components or anchorage of floor-, roof-, or wall-mounted HVAC components as indicated in ASCE/SEI 7-16 so that failure of a non-essential or essential HVAC component will not cause failure of any other essential architectural, mechanical, or electrical building component.
- E. Fire/Smoke Resistance: Seismic- and wind-load-restraint devices that are not constructed of ferrous metals must have a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested by an NRTL in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, and be so labeled.
- F. Component Supports:
  - 1. Load ratings, features, and applications of all reinforcement components must be based on testing standards of a nationally recognized testing agency.
  - 2. All component support attachments must comply with force and displacement resistance requirements of ASCE/SEI 7-16 Section 13.6.

## 2.2 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION PADS

- A. Elastomeric Isolation Pads: .
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
    - b. CADDY; nVent.
    - c. California Dynamics Corporation.
    - d. Isolation Technology, Inc.
    - e. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
    - f. Korfund.
    - g. Mason Industries, Inc.
    - h. Novia; A Division of C&P.
    - i. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
    - j. Vibration Isolation.
    - k. Vibration Management Corp.
    - l. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
  - 2. Fabrication: Single or multiple layers of sufficient durometer stiffness for uniform loading over pad area.
  - 3. Size: Factory or field cut to match requirements of supported equipment.
  - 4. Pad Material: Oil and water resistant with elastomeric properties. Neoprene rubber, silicone rubber, or other elastomeric material.
  - 5. Surface Pattern: Smooth, ribbed, or waffle pattern.

6. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.
7. Load-bearing metal plates adhered to pads.
8. Sandwich-Core Material: Resilient and elastomeric.
  - a. Surface Pattern: Smooth, ribbed, or waffle pattern.
  - b. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.

## 2.3 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION MOUNTS

### A. Double-Deflection, Elastomeric Isolation Mounts: .

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
  - b. CADDY; nVent.
  - c. California Dynamics Corporation.
  - d. Isolation Technology, Inc.
  - e. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - f. Korfund.
  - g. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - h. Novia; A Division of C&P.
  - i. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
  - j. Vibration Isolation.
  - k. Vibration Management Corp.
  - l. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
2. Mounting Plates:
  - a. Top Plate: Encapsulated steel load transfer top plates, factory drilled and threaded with threaded studs or bolts.
  - b. Baseplate: Encapsulated steel bottom plates with holes provided for anchoring to support structure.
3. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene rubber, silicone rubber, or other elastomeric material.

## 2.4 RESTRAINED ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION MOUNTS

### A. Restrained Elastomeric Isolation Mounts: .

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
  - b. CADDY; nVent.
  - c. California Dynamics Corporation.
  - d. Isolation Technology, Inc.

- e. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - f. Korfund.
  - g. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - h. Novia; A Division of C&P.
  - i. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
  - j. Vibration Isolation.
  - k. Vibration Management Corp.
  - l. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
2. Description: All-directional isolator with seismic restraints containing two separate and opposing elastomeric elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.
- a. Housing: Cast-ductile iron or welded steel.
  - b. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material.

## 2.5 OPEN-SPRING ISOLATORS

### A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators: .

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
  - b. CADDY; nVent.
  - c. California Dynamics Corporation.
  - d. Isolation Technology, Inc.
  - e. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - f. Korfund.
  - g. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - h. Novia; A Division of C&P.
  - i. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
  - j. Vibration Isolation.
  - k. Vibration Management Corp.
  - l. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
6. Baseplates: Factory-drilled steel plate for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Baseplates shall limit floor load to **500 psig (3447 kPa)**.
7. Top Plate and Adjustment Bolt: Threaded top plate with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.

## 2.6 HOUSED-SPRING ISOLATORS

### A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators in Two-Part Telescoping Housing: .

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
  - b. CADDY; nVent.
  - c. California Dynamics Corporation.
  - d. Isolation Technology, Inc.
  - e. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - f. Korfund.
  - g. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - h. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
  - i. Vibration Isolation.
  - j. Vibration Management Corp.
  - k. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
6. Two-Part Telescoping Housing: A steel top and bottom frame separated by an elastomeric material and enclosing the spring isolators.
  - a. Drilled base housing for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig (3447 kPa).
  - b. Top housing with elastomeric pad.

## 2.7 RESTRAINED-SPRING ISOLATORS

### A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators with Vertical-Limit Stop Restraint:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
  - b. CADDY; nVent.
  - c. California Dynamics Corporation.
  - d. Isolation Technology, Inc.
  - e. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - f. Korfund.
  - g. Mason Industries, Inc.



- h. Novia; A Division of C&P.
  - i. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
  - j. Vibration Isolation.
  - k. Vibration Management Corp.
  - l. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
2. Housing: Steel housing with vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to weight being removed.
- a. Base with holes for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig (3447 kPa).
  - b. Top plate with elastomeric pad.
  - c. Internal leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.
3. Restraint: Limit stop as required for equipment and authorities having jurisdiction.
4. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
5. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
6. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
7. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

## 2.8 HOUSED-RESTRAINED-SPRING ISOLATORS

- A. Freestanding, Steel, Open-Spring Isolators with Vertical-Limit Stop Restraint in Two-Part Telescoping Housing:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
    - b. CADDY; nVent.
    - c. California Dynamics Corporation.
    - d. Isolation Technology, Inc.
    - e. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
    - f. Korfund.
    - g. Mason Industries, Inc.
    - h. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
    - i. Vibration Isolation.
    - j. Vibration Management Corp.
    - k. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
  - 2. Two-Part Telescoping Housing: A steel top and bottom frame separated by an elastomeric material and enclosing the spring isolators. Housings are equipped with adjustable snubbers to limit vertical movement.

- a. Drilled base housing for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig (3447 kPa).
  - b. Threaded top housing with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.
3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

## 2.9 PIPE-RISER RESILIENT SUPPORT

- A. All-Directional, Acoustical Pipe Anchor Consisting of Two Steel Tubes Separated by a Minimum 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) Thick Neoprene:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. California Dynamics Corporation.
    - b. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
    - c. Mason Industries, Inc.
    - d. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
    - e. Vibration Management Corp.
  2. Vertical-Limit Stops: Steel and neoprene vertical-limit stops arranged to prevent vertical travel in both directions.
  3. Maximum Load Per Support: 500 psig (3447 KPa) on isolation material providing equal isolation in all directions.

## 2.10 RESILIENT PIPE GUIDES

- A. Telescopic Arrangement of Two Steel Tubes or Post and Sleeve Arrangement Separated by a Minimum 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) Thick Neoprene:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. California Dynamics Corporation.
    - b. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
    - c. Mason Industries, Inc.
    - d. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
    - e. Vibration Management Corp.
    - f. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

2. Factory-Set Height Guide with Shear Pin: Shear pin shall be removable and reinsertable to allow for selection of pipe movement. Guides shall be capable of motion to meet location requirements.

## 2.11 ELASTOMERIC HANGERS

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
  - b. CADDY; nVent.
  - c. California Dynamics Corporation.
  - d. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - e. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - f. Novia; A Division of C&P.
  - g. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
  - h. Vibration Isolation.
  - i. Vibration Management Corp.
  - j. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
2. Frame: Steel, fabricated with a connection for an upper threaded hanger rod and an opening on the underside to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular lower hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
3. Damping Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material with a projecting bushing for the underside opening preventing steel to steel contact.

## 2.12 SPRING HANGERS

- A. Combination Coil-Spring and Elastomeric-Insert Hanger with Spring and Insert in Compression:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
    - b. CADDY; nVent.
    - c. California Dynamics Corporation.
    - d. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
    - e. Mason Industries, Inc.
    - f. Novia; A Division of C&P.
    - g. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
    - h. Vibration Isolation.
    - i. Vibration Management Corp.
    - j. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

2. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
  3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
  7. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
- 
8. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.
  9. Self-centering hanger-rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.

## 2.13 SNUBBERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  1. CADDY; nVent.
  2. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  3. Mason Industries, Inc.
  4. Vibration Management Corp.
  5. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
- B. Description: Factory fabricated using welded structural-steel shapes and plates, anchor bolts, and replaceable resilient isolation washers and bushings.
  1. Post-Installed Concrete Anchor Bolts: Secure to concrete surface with post-installed concrete anchors. Anchors to be seismically prequalified in accordance with ACI 355.2 testing and designated in accordance with ACI 318-14 Ch. 17 for 2015 or 2018 IBC.
  2. Preset Concrete Inserts: Seismically prequalified in accordance with ICC-ES AC446 testing.
  3. Anchors in Masonry: Design in accordance with TMS 402.
  4. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene.
  5. Resilient Cushion: Maximum 1/4-inch (6-mm) air gap, and minimum 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick.

## 2.14 RESTRAINTS - RIGID TYPE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. B-line; Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  2. CADDY; nVent.
  3. California Dynamics Corporation.
  4. Hilti, Inc.
  5. Isolation Technology, Inc.
  6. TOLCO.
  7. Unistrut; Atkore International.
  8. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
- B. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated bracing assembly made of AISI S110-07-S1 slotted steel channels, ANSI/ASTM A53/A53M steel pipe as per NFPA 13, or other rigid steel brace member. Includes accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end and other matching components and with corrosion-resistant coating; rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.

## 2.15 RESTRAINTS - CABLE TYPE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. B-line; Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  2. CADDY; nVent.
  3. Loos & Co.
  4. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
- B. Seismic-Restraint Cables: ASTM A1023/A1023M galvanized or ASTM A603 galvanized-steel cables. End connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for seismic-restraining cable service; with fittings attached by means of poured socket, swaged socket or mechanical (Flemish eye) loop.
- C. Restraint cable assembly with cable fittings must comply with ASCE/SEI 19. All cable fittings and complete cable assembly must maintain the minimum cable breaking force. U-shaped cable clips and wedge-type end fittings do not comply and are unacceptable.

## 2.16 RESTRAINT ACCESSORIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. B-line; Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  2. CADDY; nVent.

3. Hilti, Inc.
  4. Loos & Co.
  5. Mason Industries, Inc.
  6. TOLCO.
  7. Unistrut; Atkore International.
- B. Hanger-Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections to hanger rod. Non-metallic stiffeners are unacceptable.
- C. Hinged and Swivel Brace Attachments: Multifunctional steel connectors for attaching hangers to rigid channel bracings and restraint cables.
- D. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor Bolts: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of anchor bolts and studs.
- E. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of attachment devices used.
- F. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.

## 2.17 POST-INSTALLED CONCRETE ANCHORS

- A. Mechanical Anchor Bolts:
1. Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E488/E488M.
- B. Provide post-installed concrete anchors that have been prequalified for use in wind-load applications. Post-installed concrete anchors must comply with all requirements of ASCE/SEI 7-16, Ch. 13.
1. Prequalify post-installed anchors in concrete in accordance with ACI 355.2 or other approved qualification testing procedures.
  2. Prequalify post-installed anchors in masonry in accordance with approved qualification procedures.
- C. Expansion-type anchor bolts are not permitted for equipment in excess of 10 hp (7.46 kW) that is not vibration isolated.
1. Undercut expansion anchors are permitted.

## 2.18 CONCRETE INSERTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. B-line; Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  2. Hilti, Inc.
  3. Mason Industries, Inc.
  4. Powers Fasteners.
  5. Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.
  6. Unistrut; Atkore International.
- B. Provide preset concrete inserts that are seismically prequalified in accordance with ICC-ES AC466 testing.
- C. Comply with ANSI/MSS SP-58.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATIONS

- A. Multiple Pipe Supports: Secure pipes to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Hanger-Rod Stiffeners: Install where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods due to seismic forces.
- C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength is adequate to carry present and future static, wind load, and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF VIBRATION-CONTROL, WIND-LOAD CONTROL, AND SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES

- A. Provide vibration-control devices for systems and equipment where indicated in Equipment Schedules or Vibration-Control Devices Schedules, where indicated on Drawings, or where Specifications indicate they are to be installed on specific equipment and systems.
- B. Provide seismic-restraint and wind-load control devices for systems and equipment where indicated in Equipment Schedules or Seismic-Restraint Devices Schedules, where indicated on Drawings, where Specifications indicate they are to be installed on specific equipment and systems, and where required by applicable codes.
- C. Coordinate location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- D. Installation of vibration isolators, wind-load restraints, must not cause any change of position of equipment, piping, or ductwork resulting in stresses or misalignment.
- E. Comply with requirements in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.

F. Equipment Restraints:

1. Install seismic snubbers on HVAC equipment mounted on vibration isolators. Locate snubbers as close as possible to vibration isolators and bolt to equipment base and supporting structure.
2. Install resilient bolt isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch (3.2 mm).
3. Install seismic-restraint, and wind-load-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that provides required submittals for component.

G. Piping Restraints:

1. Comply with requirements in MSS SP-127.
2. Space lateral supports a maximum of 40 feet (12 m) o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of 80 feet (24 m) o.c.
3. Brace a change of direction longer than 12 feet (3.7 m).

H. Install seismic- and wind-load-restraint cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.

I. Install seismic- and wind-load-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that provides required submittals for component.

J. Install bushing assemblies for anchor bolts for floor-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media between anchor bolt and mounting hole in concrete base.

K. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.

L. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.

M. Mechanical Anchor Bolts:

1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
3. Wedge-Type Anchor Bolts: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
4. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
5. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless steel anchors for exterior applications.



### 3.3 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION

- A. Provide flexible connections in piping systems where they cross structural seismic joints and other point where differential movement may occur. Provide adequate flexibility to accommodate differential movement as determined in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7. Comply with requirements in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties" for piping flexible connections.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust isolators after system is at operating weight.
- B. Adjust limit stops on restrained-spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
  - 2. Provide evidence of recent calibration of test equipment by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3. Schedule test with Owner, through Architect, before connecting anchorage device to restrained component (unless postconnection testing has been approved), and with at least seven days' advance notice.
  - 4. Obtain Architect's approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.
  - 5. Test no fewer than four of each type and size of installed anchors and fasteners selected by Architect.
  - 6. Test to 90 percent of rated proof load of device.
  - 7. Measure isolator restraint clearance.
  - 8. Measure isolator deflection.
  - 9. Verify snubber minimum clearances.
  - 10. Test and adjust restrained-air-spring isolator controls and safeties.
- C. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- D. Units will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 230548



## SECTION 230553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Equipment labels.
  - 2. Warning signs and labels.
  - 3. Pipe labels.
  - 4. Duct labels.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTAL

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Metal Labels for Equipment:
  - 1. Material and Thickness: anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
  - 2. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
  - 3. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
  - 4. Fasteners: Stainless-steel self-tapping screws.
  - 5. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

- C. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4) bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## 2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: White.
- C. Background Color: Red.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

## 2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
  - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.

2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) high.

## 2.4 DUCT LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: White.
- C. Background Color: Black.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Duct Label Contents: Include identification of duct service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, duct size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
  1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with duct system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each duct label to indicate flow direction.
  2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) high.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

### 3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

### 3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
1. Near each valve and control device.
  2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
  3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
  4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
  5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
  6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet (15 m) along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet (7.6 m) in areas of congested piping and equipment.
  7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
- B. Pipe Label Color Schedule:
1. Chilled-Water Piping:
    - a. Background Color: Green.
    - b. Letter Color: White.
  2. Condenser-Water Piping:
    - a. Background Color: Green.
    - b. Letter Color: White.
  3. Heating Water Piping:
    - a. Background Color: Green.
    - b. Letter Color: White.
  4. Refrigerant Piping:
    - a. Background Color: Green.
    - b. Letter Color: White.
  5. Low-Pressure Steam Piping:
    - a. Background Color: Blue.
    - b. Letter Color: White.
  6. High-Pressure Steam Piping:
    - a. Background Color: Blue.
    - b. Letter Color: White.
  7. Steam Condensate Piping:

- a. Background Color: Blue.
- b. Letter Color: White.

### 3.4 DUCT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install plastic-laminated duct labels with permanent adhesive on air ducts in the following color codes:
  1. Blue: For cold-air supply ducts.
  2. Yellow: For hot-air supply ducts.
  3. Green: For exhaust-, outside-, relief-, return-, and mixed-air ducts.
  4. ASME A13.1 Colors and Designs: For hazardous material exhaust.
- B. Locate labels near points where ducts enter into concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of 50 feet (15 m) in each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by removable ceiling system.

END OF SECTION 230553





## SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Balancing Air Systems:

- a. Constant-volume air systems.
    - b. Dual-duct systems.
    - c. Variable-air-volume systems.
    - d. Multizone systems.
    - e. Induction-unit systems.
    - f. Dedicated outdoor air systems.
    - g. Modular air handling units.
    - h. Blower coil units.
    - i. Fan coil units.
    - j. Fan powered terminal units.
    - k. Single duct terminal units.
    - l. Fans.

- 2. Balancing Hydronic Piping Systems:

- a. Constant-flow hydronic systems.
    - b. Variable-flow hydronic systems.
    - c. Primary-secondary hydronic systems.

- 3. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Equipment:

- a. Heat exchangers.
    - b. Motors.
    - c. Chillers.
    - d. Cooling towers.
    - e. Condensing units.
    - f. Boilers.
    - g. Heat-transfer coils.

- 4. Testing, adjusting, and balancing existing systems and equipment.
  - 5. Sound tests.

6. Vibration tests.
7. Duct leakage tests.
8. Control system verification.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- C. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- D. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.
- E. TAB Specialist: An entity engaged to perform TAB Work.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB contractor and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 15 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report as specified in Part 3.
- C. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- D. Certified TAB reports.
- E. Sample report forms.
- F. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:
  1. Instrument type and make.
  2. Serial number.
  3. Application.
  4. Dates of use.
  5. Dates of calibration.

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. TAB Contractor Qualifications: Engage a TAB entity certified by AABC, NEBB or TABB.
  1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB contractor and certified by AABC, NEBB or TABB.

2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB contractor and who is certified by AABC, NEBB or TABB as a TAB technician.
- B. TAB Conference: Meet with Architect, Owner and Construction Manager on approval of the TAB strategies and procedures plan to develop a mutual understanding of the details. Require the participation of the TAB field supervisor and technicians. Provide seven days' advance notice of scheduled meeting time and location.
  1. Agenda Items:
    - a. The Contract Documents examination report.
    - b. The TAB plan.
    - c. Coordination and cooperation of trades and subcontractors.
    - d. Coordination of documentation and communication flow.
- C. Certify TAB field data reports and perform the following:
  1. Review field data reports to validate accuracy of data and to prepare certified TAB reports.
  2. Certify that the TAB team complied with the approved TAB plan and the procedures specified and referenced in this Specification.
- D. TAB Report Forms: Use standard TAB contractor's forms approved by Architect, Owner and Construction Manager.
- E. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: As described in ASHRAE 111, Section 5, "Instrumentation."
- F. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."
- G. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy the site and existing building during entire TAB period. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.
- B. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner may occupy completed areas of building before Substantial Completion. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

## 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Notice: Provide seven days' advance notice for each test. Include scheduled test dates and times.

- B. Perform TAB after leakage and pressure tests on air and water distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 TAB SPECIALISTS

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, available TAB contractors that may be engaged include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Carolina Air and Water Balancing Company.
  - 2. Palmetto Air and Water balance.

### 3.2 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems' designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
- B. Examine systems for installed balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are accessible.
- C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems' output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine ceiling plenums and underfloor air plenums used for supply, return, or relief air to verify that they meet the leakage class of connected ducts as specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" and Section 233116 "Nonmetal Ducts" and are properly separated from adjacent areas. Verify that penetrations in plenum walls are sealed and fire-stopped if required.
- F. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves.
  - 1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
  - 2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's

"HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.

- G. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- H. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- I. Examine HVAC equipment and filters and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- J. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.
- K. Examine strainers. Verify that startup screens are replaced by permanent screens with indicated perforations.
- L. Examine three-way valves for proper installation for their intended function of diverting or mixing fluid flows.
- M. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- N. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.
- O. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- P. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

### 3.3 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures.
- B. Complete system-readiness checks and prepare reports. Verify the following:
  - 1. Permanent electrical-power wiring is complete.
  - 2. Hydronic systems are filled, clean, and free of air.
  - 3. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
  - 4. Equipment and duct access doors are securely closed.
  - 5. Balance, smoke, and fire dampers are open.
  - 6. Isolating and balancing valves are open and control valves are operational.
  - 7. Ceilings are installed in critical areas where air-pattern adjustments are required and access to balancing devices is provided.
  - 8. Windows and doors can be closed so indicated conditions for system operations can be met.

### 3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing" and in this Section.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."
- B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
  - 1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
  - 2. After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors that comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
  - 3. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Section 230713 "Duct Insulation," Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation," and Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

### 3.5 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.
- C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.
- D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
- E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- I. Check for airflow blockages.

- J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.
- L. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."

### 3.6 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
  - 1. Measure total airflow.
    - a. Where sufficient space in ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow.
  - 2. Measure fan static pressures as follows to determine actual static pressure:
    - a. Measure outlet static pressure as far downstream from the fan as practical and upstream from restrictions in ducts such as elbows and transitions.
    - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
    - c. Measure inlet static pressure of single-inlet fans in the inlet duct as near the fan as possible, upstream from the flexible connection, and downstream from duct restrictions.
    - d. Measure inlet static pressure of double-inlet fans through the wall of the plenum that houses the fan.
  - 3. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up an air-handling unit, rooftop unit, and other air-handling and -treating equipment.
    - a. Report the cleanliness status of filters and the time static pressures are measured.
  - 4. Measure static pressures entering and leaving other devices, such as sound traps, heat-recovery equipment, and air washers, under final balanced conditions.
  - 5. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
  - 6. Obtain approval from Architect, Owner and Construction Manager for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
  - 7. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload will occur. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.

- B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
  - 1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
    - a. Where sufficient space in submain and branch ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow for that zone.
  - 2. Measure static pressure at a point downstream from the balancing damper, and adjust volume dampers until the proper static pressure is achieved.
  - 3. Remeasure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted. Continue to adjust submain and branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
- C. Measure air outlets and inlets without making adjustments.
  - 1. Measure terminal outlets using a direct-reading hood or outlet manufacturer's written instructions and calculating factors.
- D. Adjust air outlets and inlets for each space to indicated airflows within specified tolerances of indicated values. Make adjustments using branch volume dampers rather than extractors and the dampers at air terminals.
  - 1. Adjust each outlet in same room or space to within specified tolerances of indicated quantities without generating noise levels above the limitations prescribed by the Contract Documents.
  - 2. Adjust patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.

### 3.7 PROCEDURES FOR DUAL-DUCT SYSTEMS

- A. Verify that the cooling coil is capable of full-system airflow, and set mixing boxes at full-cold airflow position for fan volume.
- B. Measure static pressure in both hot and cold ducts at the end of the longest duct run to determine that sufficient static pressure exists to operate controls of mixing boxes and to overcome resistance in the ducts and outlets downstream from mixing boxes.
  - 1. If insufficient static pressure exists, increase airflow at the fan.
- C. Test and adjust the constant-volume mixing boxes as follows:
  - 1. Verify both hot and cold operations by adjusting the thermostat and observing changes in air temperature and volume.
  - 2. Verify sufficient inlet static pressure before making volume adjustments.
  - 3. Adjust mixing boxes to indicated airflows within specified tolerances. Measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse readings or by measuring static pressure at mixing-box taps if provided by mixing-box manufacturer.
- D. Do not over pressurize ducts.



- E. Remeasure static pressure in both hot and cold ducts at the end of the longest duct run to determine that sufficient static pressure exists to operate controls of mixing boxes and to overcome resistance in the ducts and outlets downstream from mixing boxes.
- F. Adjust variable-air-volume, dual-duct systems in the same way as constant-volume, dual-duct systems; adjust maximum- and minimum-airflow setting of each mixing box.

### 3.8 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-AIR-VOLUME SYSTEMS

- A. Compensating for Diversity: When the total airflow of all terminal units is more than the indicated airflow of the fan, place a selected number of terminal units at a minimum set-point airflow with the remainder at maximum-airflow condition until the total airflow of the terminal units equals the indicated airflow of the fan. Select the reduced-airflow terminal units so they are distributed evenly among the branch ducts.
- B. Pressure-Independent, Variable-Air-Volume Systems: After the fan systems have been adjusted, adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:
  - 1. Set outdoor-air dampers at minimum, and set return- and exhaust-air dampers at a position that simulates full-cooling load.
  - 2. Select the terminal unit that is most critical to the supply-fan airflow and static pressure. Measure static pressure. Adjust system static pressure so the entering static pressure for the critical terminal unit is not less than the sum of the terminal-unit manufacturer's recommended minimum inlet static pressure plus the static pressure needed to overcome terminal-unit discharge system losses.
  - 3. Measure total system airflow. Adjust to within indicated airflow.
  - 4. Set terminal units at maximum airflow and adjust controller or regulator to deliver the designed maximum airflow. Use terminal-unit manufacturer's written instructions to make this adjustment. When total airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
  - 5. Set terminal units at minimum airflow and adjust controller or regulator to deliver the designed minimum airflow. Check air outlets for a proportional reduction in airflow the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
    - a. If air outlets are out of balance at minimum airflow, report the condition but leave outlets balanced for maximum airflow.
  - 6. Remeasure the return airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow.
    - a. Adjust the fan and balance the return-air ducts and inlets the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
  - 7. Measure static pressure at the most critical terminal unit and adjust the static-pressure controller at the main supply-air sensing station to ensure that adequate static pressure is maintained at the most critical unit.
  - 8. Record final fan-performance data.

- C. Pressure-Dependent, Variable-Air-Volume Systems without Diversity: After the fan systems have been adjusted, adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:
1. Balance variable-air-volume systems the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
  2. Set terminal units and supply fan at full-airflow condition.
  3. Adjust inlet dampers of each terminal unit to indicated airflow and verify operation of the static-pressure controller. When total airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
  4. Readjust fan airflow for final maximum readings.
  5. Measure operating static pressure at the sensor that controls the supply fan if one is installed, and verify operation of the static-pressure controller.
  6. Set supply fan at minimum airflow if minimum airflow is indicated. Measure static pressure to verify that it is being maintained by the controller.
  7. Set terminal units at minimum airflow and adjust controller or regulator to deliver the designed minimum airflow. Check air outlets for a proportional reduction in airflow the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
    - a. If air outlets are out of balance at minimum airflow, report the condition but leave the outlets balanced for maximum airflow.
  8. Measure the return airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow.
    - a. Adjust the fan and balance the return-air ducts and inlets the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
- D. Pressure-Dependent, Variable-Air-Volume Systems with Diversity: After the fan systems have been adjusted, adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:
1. Set system at maximum indicated airflow by setting the required number of terminal units at minimum airflow. Select the reduced-airflow terminal units so they are distributed evenly among the branch ducts.
  2. Adjust supply fan to maximum indicated airflow with the variable-airflow controller set at maximum airflow.
  3. Set terminal units at full-airflow condition.
  4. Adjust terminal units starting at the supply-fan end of the system and continuing progressively to the end of the system. Adjust inlet dampers of each terminal unit to indicated airflow. When total airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
  5. Adjust terminal units for minimum airflow.
  6. Measure static pressure at the sensor.
  7. Measure the return airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow. Adjust the fan and balance the return-air ducts and inlets the same as described for constant-volume air systems.

### 3.9 PROCEDURES FOR MULTIZONE SYSTEMS

- A. Set unit at maximum airflow through the cooling coil.
- B. Adjust each zone's balancing damper to achieve indicated airflow within the zone.

### 3.10 PROCEDURES FOR INDUCTION-UNIT SYSTEMS

- A. Balance primary-air risers by measuring static pressure at the nozzles of the top and bottom units of each riser to determine which risers must be throttled. Adjust risers to indicated airflow within specified tolerances.
- B. Adjust each induction unit.

### 3.11 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports with pertinent design data, and number in sequence starting at pump to end of system. Check the sum of branch-circuit flows against the approved pump flow rate. Correct variations that exceed plus or minus 5 percent.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" piping layouts.
- C. Prepare hydronic systems for testing and balancing according to the following, in addition to the general preparation procedures specified above:
  - 1. Open all manual valves for maximum flow.
  - 2. Check liquid level in expansion tank.
  - 3. Check makeup water-station pressure gage for adequate pressure for highest vent.
  - 4. Check flow-control valves for specified sequence of operation, and set at indicated flow.
  - 5. Set differential-pressure control valves at the specified differential pressure. Do not set at fully closed position when pump is positive-displacement type unless several terminal valves are kept open.
  - 6. Set system controls so automatic valves are wide open to heat exchangers.
  - 7. Check pump-motor load. If motor is overloaded, throttle main flow-balancing device so motor nameplate rating is not exceeded.
  - 8. Check air vents for a forceful liquid flow exiting from vents when manually operated.

### 3.12 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Measure water flow at pumps. Use the following procedures except for positive-displacement pumps:
  - 1. Verify impeller size by operating the pump with the discharge valve closed. Read pressure differential across the pump. Convert pressure to head and correct for

differences in gage heights. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.

- a. If impeller sizes must be adjusted to achieve pump performance, obtain approval from Architect, Owner and Construction Manager and comply with requirements in Section 232123 "Hydronic Pumps."
  2. Check system resistance. With all valves open, read pressure differential across the pump and mark pump manufacturer's head-capacity curve. Adjust pump discharge valve until indicated water flow is achieved.
    - a. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motors in overload conditions.
  3. Verify pump-motor brake horsepower. Calculate the intended brake horsepower for the system based on pump manufacturer's performance data. Compare calculated brake horsepower with nameplate data on the pump motor. Report conditions where actual amperage exceeds motor nameplate amperage.
  4. Report flow rates that are not within plus or minus 10 percent of design.
- B. Measure flow at all automatic flow control valves to verify that valves are functioning as designed.
- C. Measure flow at all pressure-independent characterized control valves, with valves in fully open position, to verify that valves are functioning as designed.
- D. Set calibrated balancing valves, if installed, at calculated presettings.
- E. Measure flow at all stations and adjust, where necessary, to obtain first balance.
  1. System components that have Cv rating or an accurately cataloged flow-pressure-drop relationship may be used as a flow-indicating device.
- F. Measure flow at main balancing station and set main balancing device to achieve flow that is 5 percent greater than indicated flow.
- G. Adjust balancing stations to within specified tolerances of indicated flow rate as follows:
  1. Determine the balancing station with the highest percentage over indicated flow.
  2. Adjust each station in turn, beginning with the station with the highest percentage over indicated flow and proceeding to the station with the lowest percentage over indicated flow.
  3. Record settings and mark balancing devices.
- H. Measure pump flow rate and make final measurements of pump amperage, voltage, rpm, pump heads, and systems' pressures and temperatures including outdoor-air temperature.
- I. Measure the differential-pressure-control-valve settings existing at the conclusion of balancing.

- J. Check settings and operation of each safety valve. Record settings.

### 3.13 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Balance systems with automatic two- and three-way control valves by setting systems at maximum flow through heat-exchange terminals and proceed as specified above for hydronic systems.

### 3.14 PROCEDURES FOR PRIMARY-SECONDARY HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Balance the primary circuit flow first and then balance the secondary circuits.

### 3.15 PROCEDURES FOR STEAM SYSTEMS

- A. Measure and record upstream and downstream pressure of each piece of equipment.
- B. Measure and record upstream and downstream steam pressure of pressure-reducing valves.
- C. Check settings and operation of automatic temperature-control valves, self-contained control valves, and pressure-reducing valves. Record final settings.
- D. Check settings and operation of each safety valve. Record settings.
- E. Verify the operation of each steam trap.

### 3.16 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT EXCHANGERS

- A. Measure water flow through all circuits.
- B. Adjust water flow to within specified tolerances.
- C. Measure inlet and outlet water temperatures.
- D. Measure inlet steam pressure.
- E. Check settings and operation of safety and relief valves. Record settings.

### 3.17 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

- A. Motors, 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:
  - 1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
  - 2. Motor horsepower rating.
  - 3. Motor rpm.
  - 4. Efficiency rating.

5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
7. Starter thermal-protection-element rating.

- B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test for proper operation at speeds varying from minimum to maximum. Test the manual bypass of the controller to prove proper operation. Record observations including name of controller manufacturer, model number, serial number, and nameplate data.

### 3.18 PROCEDURES FOR CHILLERS

- A. Balance water flow through each evaporator and condenser to within specified tolerances of indicated flow with all pumps operating. With only one chiller operating in a multiple chiller installation, do not exceed the flow for the maximum tube velocity recommended by the chiller manufacturer. Measure and record the following data with each chiller operating at design conditions:

1. Evaporator-water entering and leaving temperatures, pressure drop, and water flow.
2. For water-cooled chillers, condenser-water entering and leaving temperatures, pressure drop, and water flow.
3. Evaporator and condenser refrigerant temperatures and pressures, using instruments furnished by chiller manufacturer.
4. Power factor if factory-installed instrumentation is furnished for measuring kilowatts.
5. Kilowatt input if factory-installed instrumentation is furnished for measuring kilowatts.
6. Capacity: Calculate in tons of cooling.
7. For air-cooled chillers, verify condenser-fan rotation and record fan and motor data including number of fans and entering- and leaving-air temperatures.

### 3.19 PROCEDURES FOR COOLING TOWERS

- A. Shut off makeup water for the duration of the test, and verify that makeup and blowdown systems are fully operational after tests and before leaving the equipment. Perform the following tests and record the results:

1. Measure condenser-water flow to each cell of the cooling tower.
2. Measure entering- and leaving-water temperatures.
3. Measure wet- and dry-bulb temperatures of entering air.
4. Measure wet- and dry-bulb temperatures of leaving air.
5. Measure condenser-water flow rate recirculating through the cooling tower.
6. Measure cooling-tower spray pump discharge pressure.
7. Adjust water level and feed rate of makeup water system.
8. Measure flow through bypass.

### 3.20 PROCEDURES FOR CONDENSING UNITS

- A. Verify proper rotation of fans.
- B. Measure entering- and leaving-air temperatures.
- C. Record compressor data.

### 3.21 PROCEDURES FOR BOILERS

- A. Hydronic Boilers: Measure and record entering- and leaving-water temperatures and water flow.
- B. Steam Boilers: Measure and record entering-water temperature and flow and leaving-steam pressure, temperature, and flow.

### 3.22 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS

- A. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each water coil:
  - 1. Entering- and leaving-water temperature.
  - 2. Water flow rate.
  - 3. Water pressure drop.
  - 4. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
  - 5. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air for cooling coils.
  - 6. Airflow.
  - 7. Air pressure drop.
- B. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each electric heating coil:
  - 1. Nameplate data.
  - 2. Airflow.
  - 3. Entering- and leaving-air temperature at full load.
  - 4. Voltage and amperage input of each phase at full load and at each incremental stage.
  - 5. Calculated kilowatt at full load.
  - 6. Fuse or circuit-breaker rating for overload protection.
- C. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each steam coil:
  - 1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
  - 2. Airflow.
  - 3. Air pressure drop.
  - 4. Inlet steam pressure.
- D. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each refrigerant coil:
  - 1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
  - 2. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.

3. Airflow.
4. Air pressure drop.
5. Refrigerant suction pressure and temperature.

### 3.23 PROCEDURES FOR TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING EXISTING SYSTEMS

- A. Perform a preconstruction inspection of existing equipment that is to remain and be reused.
  1. Measure and record the operating speed, airflow, and static pressure of each fan.
  2. Measure motor voltage and amperage. Compare the values to motor nameplate information.
  3. Check the refrigerant charge.
  4. Check the condition of filters.
  5. Check the condition of coils.
  6. Check the operation of the drain pan and condensate-drain trap.
  7. Check bearings and other lubricated parts for proper lubrication.
  8. Report on the operating condition of the equipment and the results of the measurements taken. Report deficiencies.
- B. Before performing testing and balancing of existing systems, inspect existing equipment that is to remain and be reused to verify that existing equipment has been cleaned and refurbished. Verify the following:
  1. New filters are installed.
  2. Coils are clean and fins combed.
  3. Drain pans are clean.
  4. Fans are clean.
  5. Bearings and other parts are properly lubricated.
  6. Deficiencies noted in the preconstruction report are corrected.
- C. Perform testing and balancing of existing systems to the extent that existing systems are affected by the renovation work.
  1. Compare the indicated airflow of the renovated work to the measured fan airflows, and determine the new fan speed and the face velocity of filters and coils.
  2. Verify that the indicated airflows of the renovated work result in filter and coil face velocities and fan speeds that are within the acceptable limits defined by equipment manufacturer.
  3. If calculations increase or decrease the air flow rates and water flow rates by more than 5 percent, make equipment adjustments to achieve the calculated rates. If increase or decrease is 5 percent or less, equipment adjustments are not required.
  4. Balance each air outlet.



### 3.24 TOLERANCES

- A. Set HVAC system's air flow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:
  - 1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 10 percent.
  - 2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 10 percent.
  - 3. Heating-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent.
  - 4. Cooling-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent.

### 3.25 REPORTING

- A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems' balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems' balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.
- B. Status Reports: Prepare biweekly progress reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

### 3.26 FINAL REPORT

- A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.
  - 1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
  - 2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
- B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:
  - 1. Pump curves.
  - 2. Fan curves.
  - 3. Manufacturers' test data.
  - 4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
  - 5. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and product data.
- C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:
  - 1. Title page.
  - 2. Name and address of the TAB contractor.
  - 3. Project name.
  - 4. Project location.
  - 5. Architect's name and address.

6. Engineer's name and address.
  7. Contractor's name and address.
  8. Report date.
  9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
  10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
  11. Summary of contents including the following:
    - a. Indicated versus final performance.
    - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
    - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
  12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
  13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
  14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
  15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
    - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
    - b. Conditions of filters.
    - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
    - d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
    - e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
    - f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
    - g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
    - h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
  2. Water and steam flow rates.
  3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
  4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
  5. Terminal units.
  6. Balancing stations.
  7. Position of balancing devices.
- E. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
    - a. Unit identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Make and type.
    - d. Model number and unit size.
    - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
    - f. Unit arrangement and class.
    - g. Discharge arrangement.

- h. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
    - i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).
    - j. Number, make, and size of belts.
    - k. Number, type, and size of filters.
  - 2. Motor Data:
    - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
    - b. Horsepower and rpm.
    - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
    - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
    - e. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
    - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).
  - 3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Total air flow rate in cfm (L/s).
    - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
    - c. Fan rpm.
    - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
    - e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
    - f. Preheat-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
    - g. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
    - h. Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
    - i. Outdoor airflow in cfm (L/s).
    - j. Return airflow in cfm (L/s).
    - k. Outdoor-air damper position.
    - l. Return-air damper position.
    - m. Vortex damper position.
- F. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:
  - 1. Coil Data:
    - a. System identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Coil type.
    - d. Number of rows.
    - e. Fin spacing in fins per inch (mm) o.c.
    - f. Make and model number.
    - g. Face area in sq. ft. (sq. m).
    - h. Tube size in NPS (DN).
    - i. Tube and fin materials.
    - j. Circuiting arrangement.
  - 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Air flow rate in cfm (L/s).
    - b. Average face velocity in fpm (m/s).

- c. Air pressure drop in inches wg (Pa).
  - d. Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F (deg C).
  - e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F (deg C).
  - f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F (deg C).
  - g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F (deg C).
  - h. Water flow rate in gpm (L/s).
  - i. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig (kPa).
  - j. Entering-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
  - k. Leaving-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
  - l. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
  - m. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig (kPa).
  - n. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F (deg C).
  - o. Inlet steam pressure in psig (kPa).
- G. Gas- and Oil-Fired Heat Apparatus Test Reports: In addition to manufacturer's factory startup equipment reports, include the following:
- 1. Unit Data:
    - a. System identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Make and type.
    - d. Model number and unit size.
    - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
    - f. Fuel type in input data.
    - g. Output capacity in Btu/h (kW).
    - h. Ignition type.
    - i. Burner-control types.
    - j. Motor horsepower and rpm.
    - k. Motor volts, phase, and hertz.
    - l. Motor full-load amperage and service factor.
    - m. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
    - n. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).
  - 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Total air flow rate in cfm (L/s).
    - b. Entering-air temperature in deg F (deg C).
    - c. Leaving-air temperature in deg F (deg C).
    - d. Air temperature differential in deg F (deg C).
    - e. Entering-air static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
    - f. Leaving-air static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
    - g. Air static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
    - h. Low-fire fuel input in Btu/h (kW).
    - i. High-fire fuel input in Btu/h (kW).
    - j. Manifold pressure in psig (kPa).
    - k. High-temperature-limit setting in deg F (deg C).
    - l. Operating set point in Btu/h (kW).
    - m. Motor voltage at each connection.
    - n. Motor amperage for each phase.

- o. Heating value of fuel in Btu/h (kW).
  - H. Electric-Coil Test Reports: For electric furnaces, duct coils, and electric coils installed in central-station air-handling units, include the following:
    - 1. Unit Data:
      - a. System identification.
      - b. Location.
      - c. Coil identification.
      - d. Capacity in Btu/h (kW).
      - e. Number of stages.
      - f. Connected volts, phase, and hertz.
      - g. Rated amperage.
      - h. Air flow rate in cfm (L/s).
      - i. Face area in sq. ft. (sq. m).
      - j. Minimum face velocity in fpm (m/s).
    - 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
      - a. Heat output in Btu/h (kW).
      - b. Air flow rate in cfm (L/s).
      - c. Air velocity in fpm (m/s).
      - d. Entering-air temperature in deg F (deg C).
      - e. Leaving-air temperature in deg F (deg C).
      - f. Voltage at each connection.
      - g. Amperage for each phase.
  - I. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:
    - 1. Fan Data:
      - a. System identification.
      - b. Location.
      - c. Make and type.
      - d. Model number and size.
      - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
      - f. Arrangement and class.
      - g. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
      - h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).
    - 2. Motor Data:
      - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
      - b. Horsepower and rpm.
      - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
      - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
      - e. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
      - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).

- g. Number, make, and size of belts.
3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Total airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
    - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
    - c. Fan rpm.
    - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
    - e. Suction static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
- J. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:
1. Report Data:
    - a. System and air-handling-unit number.
    - b. Location and zone.
    - c. Traverse air temperature in deg F (deg C).
    - d. Duct static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
    - e. Duct size in inches (mm).
    - f. Duct area in sq. ft. (sq. m).
    - g. Indicated air flow rate in cfm (L/s).
    - h. Indicated velocity in fpm (m/s).
    - i. Actual air flow rate in cfm (L/s).
    - j. Actual average velocity in fpm (m/s).
    - k. Barometric pressure in psig (Pa).
- K. Air-Terminal-Device Reports:
1. Unit Data:
    - a. System and air-handling unit identification.
    - b. Location and zone.
    - c. Apparatus used for test.
    - d. Area served.
    - e. Make.
    - f. Number from system diagram.
    - g. Type and model number.
    - h. Size.
    - i. Effective area in sq. ft. (sq. m).
  2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Air flow rate in cfm (L/s).
    - b. Air velocity in fpm (m/s).
    - c. Preliminary air flow rate as needed in cfm (L/s).
    - d. Preliminary velocity as needed in fpm (m/s).
    - e. Final air flow rate in cfm (L/s).
    - f. Final velocity in fpm (m/s).
    - g. Space temperature in deg F (deg C).

- L. System-Coil Reports: For reheat coils and water coils of terminal units, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
    - a. System and air-handling-unit identification.
    - b. Location and zone.
    - c. Room or riser served.
    - d. Coil make and size.
    - e. Flowmeter type.
  2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Air flow rate in cfm (L/s).
    - b. Entering-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
    - c. Leaving-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
    - d. Water pressure drop in feet of head or psig (kPa).
    - e. Entering-air temperature in deg F (deg C).
    - f. Leaving-air temperature in deg F (deg C).
- M. Pump Test Reports: Calculate impeller size by plotting the shutoff head on pump curves and include the following:
1. Unit Data:
    - a. Unit identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Service.
    - d. Make and size.
    - e. Model number and serial number.
    - f. Water flow rate in gpm (L/s).
    - g. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig (kPa).
    - h. Required net positive suction head in feet of head or psig (kPa).
    - i. Pump rpm.
    - j. Impeller diameter in inches (mm).
    - k. Motor make and frame size.
    - l. Motor horsepower and rpm.
    - m. Voltage at each connection.
    - n. Amperage for each phase.
    - o. Full-load amperage and service factor.
    - p. Seal type.
  2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Static head in feet of head or psig (kPa).
    - b. Pump shutoff pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
    - c. Actual impeller size in inches (mm).
    - d. Full-open flow rate in gpm (L/s).
    - e. Full-open pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
    - f. Final discharge pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
    - g. Final suction pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).

- h. Final total pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
- i. Final water flow rate in gpm (L/s).
- j. Voltage at each connection.
- k. Amperage for each phase.

N. Instrument Calibration Reports:

1. Report Data:

- a. Instrument type and make.
- b. Serial number.
- c. Application.
- d. Dates of use.
- e. Dates of calibration.

### 3.27 INSPECTIONS

A. Initial Inspection:

- 1. After testing and balancing are complete, operate each system and randomly check measurements to verify that the system is operating according to the final test and balance readings documented in the final report.
- 2. Check the following for each system:
  - a. Measure airflow of at least 10 percent of air outlets.
  - b. Measure water flow of at least 5 percent of terminals.
  - c. Measure room temperature at each thermostat/temperature sensor. Compare the reading to the set point.
  - d. Verify that balancing devices are marked with final balance position.
  - e. Note deviations from the Contract Documents in the final report.

B. Final Inspection:

- 1. After initial inspection is complete and documentation by random checks verifies that testing and balancing are complete and accurately documented in the final report, request that a final inspection be made by Architect, Owner and Construction Manager.
- 2. The TAB contractor's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of Architect, Owner and Construction Manager.
- 3. Architect, Owner and Construction Manager shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
- 4. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
- 5. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.



- C. TAB Work will be considered defective if it does not pass final inspections. If TAB Work fails, proceed as follows:
  - 1. Recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection.
  - 2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may contract the services of another TAB contractor to complete TAB Work according to the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the original TAB contractor's final payment.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.28 ADDITIONAL TESTS

- A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.
- B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION 230593



## SECTION 230713 - DUCT INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:
  - 1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
  - 2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
  - 3. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
  - 4. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
  - 5. Indoor, concealed, Type I, commercial, kitchen hood exhaust.
  - 6. Indoor, exposed, Type I, commercial, kitchen hood exhaust.
  - 7. Indoor, concealed oven and warewash exhaust.
  - 8. Indoor, exposed oven and warewash exhaust.
  - 9. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
  - 10. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
  - 11. Outdoor, concealed supply and return.
  - 12. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 23 Section "HVAC Piping Insulation."
  - 2. Division 23 Section "Metal Ducts" for duct liners.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Duct Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule," and "Aboveground, Outdoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type II with factory-applied vinyl jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corp.; SoftTouch Duct Wrap.
    - b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
    - c. Knauf Insulation; Friendly Feel Duct Wrap.
    - d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley Wrap.
    - e. Owens Corning; SOFTR All-Service Duct Wrap.
- G. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corp.; Commercial Board.
    - b. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; FBX.
    - c. Johns Manville; 800 Series Spin-Glas.
    - d. Knauf Insulation; Insulation Board.
    - e. Manson Insulation Inc.; AK Board.

- f. Owens Corning; Fiberglas 700 Series.

## 2.2 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEMS

- A. Fire-Rated Blanket: High-temperature, flexible, blanket insulation with FSK jacket that is tested and certified to provide a 1-hour fire rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corp.; FlameChek.
    - b. Johns Manville; Firetemp Wrap.
    - c. Nelson Fire Stop Products; Nelson FSB Flameshield Blanket.
    - d. Thermal Ceramics; FireMaster Duct Wrap.
    - e. 3M; Fire Barrier Wrap Products.
    - f. Unifrax Corporation; FyreWrap.

## 2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
  - 2. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 3. Use adhesive that complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers," including 2004 Addenda.
- C. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.

- c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-50.
  - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
2. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  3. Use adhesive that complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers," including 2004 Addenda.
- D. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 739, Dow Silicone.
    - b. Johns Manville; Zeston Perma-Weld, CEEL-TITE Solvent Welding Adhesive.
    - c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; Welding Adhesive.
    - d. Speedline Corporation; Polyco VP Adhesive.
  2. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  3. Use adhesive that complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers," including 2004 Addenda.

## 2.4 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.
    - b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm (0.009 metric perm) at 43-mil (1.09-mm) dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
  4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.

- C. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-10.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 550.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 46-50.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-50.
    - e. Vimasco Corporation; WC-1/WC-5.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms (1.2 metric perms) at 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
  4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.

## 2.5 SEALANTS

### A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
  - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
  - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
  - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
5. Color: Aluminum.
6. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Use sealants that comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers," including 2004 Addenda.

### B. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
5. Color: White.
6. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Use sealants that comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers," including 2004 Addenda.

## 2.6 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
  1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
  2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
  3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
  4. FSP Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
  5. Vinyl Jacket: White vinyl with a permeance of 1.3 perms (0.86 metric perm) when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure A, and complying with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

## 2.7 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

- A. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. (34 g/sq. m) with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. (4 strands by 4 strands/sq. mm), in a Leno weave, for ducts.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Mast-A-Fab.
    - b. Vimasco Corporation; Elastafab 894.

## 2.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.



- B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.
- C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
    - b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
    - c. Proto Corporation; LoSmoke.
    - d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.
  - 2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
  - 3. Color: Color-code jackets based on system. Color as selected by Architect.
- D. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
    - b. ITW Insulation Systems; Aluminum and Stainless-Steel Jacketing.
    - c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.
  - 2. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
  - 3. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
  - 4. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
  - 5. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
- E. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil- (1.5-mm-) thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a crosslaminated polyethylene film covered with stucco-embossed aluminum-foil facing.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Polyguard Products, Inc.; Alumaguard 60.

## 2.9 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.

- b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.
  - c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.
  - d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.
2. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
  3. Thickness: 11.5 mils (0.29 mm).
  4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
  5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
  7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 491 AWF FSK.
    - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.
    - c. Compac Corporation; 110 and 111.
    - d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW NT, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.
  2. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
  3. Thickness: 6.5 mils (0.16 mm).
  4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
  5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
  7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 370 White PVC tape.
    - b. Compac Corporation; 130.
    - c. Venture Tape; 1506 CW NS.
  2. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
  3. Thickness: 6 mils (0.15 mm).
  4. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch (0.7 N/mm) in width.
  5. Elongation: 500 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch (3.3 N/mm) in width.
- D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 488 AWF.
    - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
    - c. Compac Corporation; 120.

- d. Venture Tape; 3520 CW.
2. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
3. Thickness: 3.7 mils (0.093 mm).
4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch (1.1 N/mm) in width.
5. Elongation: 5 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch (6.2 N/mm) in width.

## 2.10 SECUREMENTS

- A. Aluminum Bands: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick, 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide with wing seal or closed seal.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
    - b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping, Seals, and Springs.
- B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:
  1. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
    - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Perforated Base Insul-Hangers.
      - 2) GEMCO; Perforated Base.
      - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Spindle.
    - b. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030-inch (0.76 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
    - c. Spindle: Aluminum, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
    - d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
  2. Nonmetal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate fastened to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
    - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      - 1) GEMCO; Nylon Hangers.

- 2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Nylon Insulation Hangers.
  - b. Baseplate: Perforated, nylon sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.
  - c. Spindle: Nylon, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated, up to 2-1/2 inches (63 mm).
  - d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
3. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
  - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Self-Adhering Insul-Hangers.
    - 2) GEMCO; Peel & Press.
    - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Self Stick.
  - b. Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030-inch (0.76 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
  - c. Spindle: Aluminum, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
  - d. Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.
4. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick, aluminum sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.
  - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; RC-150.
    - 2) GEMCO; R-150.
    - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; WA-150.
    - 4) Nelson Stud Welding; Speed Clips.
  - b. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.
5. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work included, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) GEMCO.

2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.

- C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- D. Wire: 0.080-inch (2.0-mm) nickel-copper alloy.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work included, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. C & F Wire.

## 2.11 CORNER ANGLES

- A. PVC Corner Angles: 30 mils (0.8 mm) thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch (25 by 25 mm), PVC according to ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C. White or color-coded to match adjacent surface.
- B. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch (1.0 mm) thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch (25 by 25 mm), aluminum according to ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

### 3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.
- B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.

- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
  - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.
  - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches (50 mm) o.c.
    - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
  - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches (100 mm) beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

### 3.3 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm) below top of roof flashing.
  4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm).
  4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm).
- E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm).
  2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
  2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
  3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:

- a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches (450 mm) and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches (400 mm) o.c.
  - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches (450 mm), place pins 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. each way, and 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
  - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
  - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
  - e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
  - f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches (50 mm) from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch (13-mm) outward-clinching staples, 1-inch (25 mm) o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
- a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
  - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F (10 deg C) at 18-foot (5.5-m) intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches (75 mm).
5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches (450 mm) o.c.
6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
- B. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
  2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.



3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
  - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches (450 mm) and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches (400 mm) o.c.
  - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches (450 mm), space pins 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. each way, and 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
  - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
  - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
  - e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier.

Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches (50 mm) from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch (13-mm) outward-clinching staples, 1-inch (25 mm) o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.

- a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
  - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F (10 deg C) at 18-foot (5.5-m) intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches (75 mm).
5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
  6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.

### 3.5 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
  2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
  3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
  4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide joint strips at end joints.
  5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.
- B. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch (25-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- C. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. and at end joints.

### 3.6 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Where fire-rated insulation system is indicated, secure system to ducts and duct hangers and supports to maintain a continuous fire rating.
- B. Insulate duct access panels and doors to achieve same fire rating as duct.
- C. Install firestopping at penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Fire-stop systems are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.7 FINISHES

- A. Insulation with ASJ or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below.
1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
    - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- C. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Inspect ductwork, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each duct system defined in the "Duct Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

### 3.9 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:
  - 1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
  - 2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
  - 3. Indoor, concealed, Type I, commercial, kitchen hood exhaust.
  - 4. Indoor, exposed, Type I, commercial, kitchen hood exhaust.
  - 5. Indoor, concealed oven and warewash exhaust.
  - 6. Indoor, exposed oven and warewash exhaust.
  - 7. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
  - 8. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
  - 9. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
  - 10. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
  - 11. Outdoor, concealed supply and return.
  - 12. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.
- B. Items Not Insulated:
  - 1. Fibrous-glass ducts.
  - 2. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
  - 3. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
  - 4. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
  - 5. Flexible connectors.
  - 6. Vibration-control devices.
  - 7. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

### 3.10 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Concealed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

- B. Concealed, round and flat-oval, return-air duct insulation shall be the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
  2. Mineral-Fiber Board: [1-1/2 inches (38 mm)] [2 inches (50 mm)] [3 inches (75 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick and [2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m)] [3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m)] [6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m)] nominal density.
  3. Polyolefin: [1 inch (25 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick.
- C. Concealed, round and flat-oval, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
- D. Concealed, round and flat-oval, exhaust-air duct insulation shall be the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
- E. Concealed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
- F. Concealed, rectangular, return-air duct insulation shall be the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
- G. Concealed, rectangular, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
- H. Concealed, rectangular, exhaust-air duct insulation between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior shall be the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
- I. Concealed, Type I, Commercial, Kitchen Hood Exhaust Duct and Plenum Insulation: Fire-rated board; thickness as required to achieve 2-hour fire rating.
- J. Concealed, supply-air plenum insulation shall be the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
- K. Concealed, return-air plenum insulation shall be the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
- L. Concealed, outdoor-air plenum insulation shall be the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
- M. Concealed, exhaust-air plenum insulation shall be the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
- N. Exposed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation shall be the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
- O. Exposed, round and flat-oval, return-air duct insulation shall be the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
- P. Exposed, round and flat-oval, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
- Q. Exposed, round and flat-oval, exhaust-air duct insulation shall be the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
- R. Exposed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
- S. Exposed, rectangular, return-air duct insulation shall be the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
- T. Exposed, rectangular, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
- U. Exposed, rectangular, exhaust-air duct insulation shall be the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

- V. Exposed, Type I, Commercial, Kitchen Hood Exhaust Duct and Plenum Insulation: Fire-rated board; thickness as required to achieve 2-hour fire rating.
- W. Exposed, supply-air plenum insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
- X. Exposed, return-air plenum insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
- Y. Exposed, outdoor-air plenum insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
- Z. Exposed, exhaust-air plenum insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

### 3.12 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Ducts and Plenums, Concealed:
  - 1. None.
  - 2. PVC: 20 mils (0.5 mm) thick.
  - 3. Aluminum, Stucco Embossed: 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick.
- D. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed:
  - 1. None.
  - 2. PVC: 20 mils (0.5 mm) thick.
  - 3. Aluminum, Stucco Embossed: 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick.

END OF SECTION 230713

## SECTION 230719 - HVAC PIPING INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following HVAC piping systems:
  1. Condensate drain piping.
  2. Chilled-water piping.
  3. Condenser-water piping.
  4. Heating hot-water piping.
  5. Steam and steam condensate piping.
  6. Refrigerant suction and hot-gas piping.
  7. Heated fuel-oil piping.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

#### 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields.

- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

## 1.7 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Insulation materials will be listed and labeled per UL723, if available.
- D. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- E. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- F. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- G. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials, and listed and labeled per UL723 at 25/50, if available.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aerocel.
    - b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex, Armaflex Ultra.
    - c. K-Flex USA; Insul-Lock, Insul-Tube, and K-FLEX LS.



- H. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corp.; SoftTouch Duct Wrap.
    - b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
    - c. Knauf Insulation; Friendly Feel Duct Wrap.
    - d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley Wrap.
    - e. Owens Corning; SOFTR All-Service Duct Wrap.
- I. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; Coreplus 1200.
    - b. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok.
    - c. Knauf Insulation; 1000-Degree Pipe Insulation.
    - d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley-K.
    - e. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe Insulation.
  2. Type I, 850 deg F (454 deg C) Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  3. Type II, 1200 deg F (649 deg C) Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type II, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

## 2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

- A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Super-Stik.

## 2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aero seal.
    - b. Armacell LLC; Armaflex 520 Adhesive.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.
    - d. K-Flex USA; R-373 Contact Adhesive.
  2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
  2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- D. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK and PVDC Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-50.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.4 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
  1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.
    - b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm (0.009 metric perm) at 43-mil (1.09-mm) dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
  4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.
- C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-30.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 501.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-35.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-10.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm (0.03 metric perm) at 35-mil (0.9-mm) dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 82 deg C).
  4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.

- D. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below-ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Encacel.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 570.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 60-95/60-96.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm (0.033 metric perm) at 30-mil (0.8-mm) dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 104 deg C).
  4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.
- E. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-10.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 550.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 46-50.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-50.
    - e. Vimasco Corporation; WC-1/WC-5.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms (1.2 metric perms) at 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
  4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.

## 2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-50 AHV2.
  - b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-36.
  - c. Vimasco Corporation; 713 and 714.
3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over pipe insulation.
  4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 82 deg C).
  5. Color: White.

## 2.6 SEALANTS

### A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
  - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
  - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
  - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
5. Color: Aluminum.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

### B. ASJ Flashing Sealants and Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
5. Color: White.

6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
  1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
  2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
  3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

## 2.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.
- C. Metal Jacket:
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
    - b. ITW Insulation Systems; Aluminum and Stainless Steel Jacketing.
    - c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.
  2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
    - a. Factory cut and rolled to size.
    - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
    - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- (0.025-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
    - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
    - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
      - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.

- 2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
- 3) Tee covers.
- 4) Flange and union covers.
- 5) End caps.
- 6) Beveled collars.
- 7) Valve covers.
- 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

## 2.9 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.
    - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.
    - c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.
    - d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.
  2. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
  3. Thickness: 11.5 mils (0.29 mm).
  4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
  5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
  7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 491 AWF FSK.
    - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.
    - c. Compac Corporation; 110 and 111.
    - d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW NT, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.
  2. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
  3. Thickness: 6.5 mils (0.16 mm).
  4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
  5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
  7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 488 AWF.
  - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
  - c. Compac Corporation; 120.
  - d. Venture Tape; 3520 CW.
2. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
3. Thickness: 3.7 mils (0.093 mm).
4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch (1.1 N/mm) in width.
5. Elongation: 5 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch (6.2 N/mm) in width.

## 2.10 SECUREMENTS

### A. Bands:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
  - b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping, Seals, and Springs.
2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick, 3/4 inch (19 mm) wide with wing seal or closed seal.
3. Aluminum: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick, 3/4 inch (19 mm) wide with wing seal or closed seal.
4. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

### B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) wide, stainless steel or Monel.

### C. Wire: 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) soft-annealed, stainless steel.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. C & F Wire.



## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
  - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
  - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
  - 3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
  - 1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils (0.127 mm) thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils (0.127 mm) thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F (60 and 149 deg C). Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
  - 2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F (0 and 149 deg C) with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
- C. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

### 3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
  - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
  - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.
  - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at [2 inches (50 mm)] [4 inches (100 mm)] o.c.
    - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
  - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.

- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches (100 mm) beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
  - 1. Vibration-control devices.
  - 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
  - 3. Nameplates and data plates.
  - 4. Manholes.
  - 5. Handholes.
  - 6. Cleanouts.

### 3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
  - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm) below top of roof flashing.
  - 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
  - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm).
  - 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

- E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
  - 1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
  - 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
  - 1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
  - 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
  - 4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
  - 5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
  - 6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.

7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
  8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
  9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
  2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
  3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
  4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm) over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
  5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
  2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.

3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

### 3.7 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.

4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch (25 mm), and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

### 3.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.

1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at seams and joints.
2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick coats of lagging adhesive.
3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.

B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide joint strips at end joints.
5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

C. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. and at end joints.

### 3.9 FINISHES

- A. Pipe Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below.
  - 1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
    - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

### 3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

### 3.11 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
  - 1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
  - 2. Underground piping.
  - 3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.



### 3.12 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F:
  - 1. NPS <1-1/2": Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1/2" thick.
  - 2. NPS ≥1 1/2": Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1" thick.
- B. Chilled Water Supply and Return:
  - 1. NPS <1-1/2": Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1/2" thick.
  - 2. NPS ≥1-1/2": Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1" thick.
- C. Condenser-Water Supply and Return:
  - 1. NPS <1-1/2": Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1/2" thick.
  - 2. NPS ≥1-1/2": Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1" thick.
- D. Heating-Hot-Water Supply and Return, 141 Deg F to 200 Deg F:
  - 1. NPS <1-1/2": Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Mineral Fiber: 1-1/2" thick.
  - 2. NPS ≥1-1/2": Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Mineral Fiber: 2" thick.
- E. High Pressure(100 psig) Steam and Steam Condensate, 251 Deg F – 350 Deg F:
  - 1. NPS <1": Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Mineral Fiber: 3" thick.
  - 2. NPS 1" to <1-1/2": Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Mineral Fiber: 4" thick.

3. NPS 1-1/2" to <4": Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Mineral Fiber: 4-1/2" thick
  
  4. NPS 4" to <8": Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Mineral Fiber: 4-1/2" thick.
  
  5. NPS ≥8": Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Mineral Fiber: 4-1/2" thick.
- F. Low Pressure(15 psig) Steam and Steam Condensate, 201 Deg F – 250 Deg F:
1. NPS <1": Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Mineral Fiber: 2-1/2" thick.
  
  2. NPS 1" to <1-1/2": Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Mineral Fiber: 2-1/2" thick.
  
  3. NPS 1-1/2" to <4": Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Mineral Fiber: 2-1/2" thick.
  
  4. NPS 4" to <8": Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Mineral Fiber: 3" thick
  
  5. NPS >8": Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Mineral Fiber: 3" thick.
- G. Refrigerant Suction, Hot-Gas Piping and Flexible Tubing:
1. NPS <1/1/2": Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1/2" thick.
  
  2. NPS ≥1-1/2": Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1" thick.

### 3.13 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Chilled Water:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Mineral-Fiber: 3" thick.

B. Condenser-Water Supply and Return:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Mineral-Fiber: 2" thick.

C. Heating-Hot-Water Supply and Return, 141 Deg F to 200 Deg F:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Mineral-Fiber: 2" thick.

D. High Pressure (100 psig) Steam and Steam Condensate, 251 Deg F - 350 Deg F:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Mineral-Fiber: 3" thick.

E. Low Pressure (15 psig) Steam and Steam Condensate 201 Deg F - 20 Deg F:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Mineral-Fiber: 4" thick.

F. Refrigerant Suction, Hot-Gas Piping and Flexible Tubing:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Mineral-Fiber: 2" thick.

G. Fuel Oil Piping, Heated:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.

### 3.14 OUTDOOR, UNDERGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Insulation for underground piping is specified in Section 232113.13 "Underground Hydronic Piping".

3.15 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Concealed:
- D. Piping, Exposed:
  - 1. Aluminum, Corrugated: 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick.

3.16 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Concealed:
  - 1. Aluminum, Corrugated: 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick.
- D. Piping, Exposed:
  - 1. Aluminum, Corrugated 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick.

3.17 UNDERGROUND, FIELD-INSTALLED INSULATION JACKET

- A. For underground direct-buried piping applications, install underground direct-buried jacket over insulation material.

END OF SECTION 230719

## SECTION 232113 - HYDRONIC PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes pipe and fitting materials, joining methods, special-duty valves, and specialties for the following:
  - 1. Hot-water heating piping.
  - 2. Chilled-water piping.
  - 3. Condenser-water piping.
  - 4. Makeup-water piping.
  - 5. Condensate-drain piping.
  - 6. Blowdown-drain piping.
  - 7. Air-vent piping.
  - 8. Safety-valve-inlet and -outlet piping.
- B. See Division 23 Section "Hydronic Pumps" for pumps, motors, and accessories for hydronic piping.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Hydronic piping components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure and temperature:
  - 1. Hot-Water Heating Piping: 150 psig (kPa) at 200 deg F (93 deg C).
  - 2. Chilled-Water Piping: 150 psig (kPa) at 200 deg F (93 deg C).
  - 3. Condenser-Water Piping: 150 psig (kPa) at 150 deg F (66 deg C).
  - 4. Makeup-Water Piping: 80 psig (552 kPa) at 150 deg F (66 deg C).
  - 5. Condensate-Drain Piping: 150 deg F (66 deg C).
  - 6. Blowdown-Drain Piping: 200 deg F (93 deg C).
  - 7. Air-Vent Piping: 200 deg F (93 deg C).
  - 8. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping: Equal to the pressure of the piping system to which it is attached.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
  - 1. Plastic pipe and fittings with solvent cement.

2. Pressure-seal fittings.
  3. Valves. Include flow and pressure drop curves based on manufacturer's testing for calibrated-orifice balancing valves and automatic flow-control valves.
  4. Air control devices.
  5. Chemical treatment.
  6. Hydronic specialties.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail, at 1/4 (1:50) scale, the piping layout, fabrication of pipe anchors, hangers, supports for multiple pipes, alignment guides, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to the building structure. Detail location of anchors, alignment guides, and expansion joints and loops.
- C. Operation and maintenance data.
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation. Safety valves and pressure vessels shall bear the appropriate ASME label. Fabricate and stamp air separators and expansion tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B).
- B. Annealed-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A).
- C. DWV Copper Tubing: ASTM B 306, Type DWV.
- D. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Victaulic Company.
    - b. Basis-of-Design: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Victaulic Style 607.
    - c. Grooved-End Copper Fittings: ASTM B 75 (ASTM B 75M), copper tube or ASTM B 594, bronze casting with grooves or shoulders constructed to accept grooved-end couplings; with nuts and bolts to secure grooved pipe and fittings. Installation-ready Copper IR fittings shall meet the same gasket material specification as couplings.
    - d. Grooved-End-Tube Couplings: Rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated: gasketed fitting. Ductile-iron housing with keys matching pipe and fitting

- grooves, pre-lubricated EHP-EPDM gasket rated for minimum 250 deg F (121 deg C) for use with housing, and steel bolts and nuts.
- e. Grooved butterfly valves may be utilized on grooved copper piping systems; Victaulic Series 608.
  - f. Installation-Ready Fittings for Grooved Copper Tube: Ductile-iron cast housing; PVDF fitting liner; two integrated Installation-Ready couplings with EHP-EDPM gaskets. For use on n 2"-3" K, L, M, and DWV copper rated for -30 deg F to +180 deg F. UI Classified in accordance with ANSI/NSF 61 for cold and hot potable water service and ANSI/NSF 372.
  - g. Victaulic PRV Station: Factory assembled pressure reducing valve (PRV) Station, Style 386 A-E, may be utilized in accordance with the requirements of the specification.
- 2. Grooved-End Copper Fittings: ASTM B 75 (ASTM B 75M), copper tube or ASTM B 584, bronze casting.
  - 3. Grooved-End-Tube Couplings: Rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated; gasketed fitting. Ductile-iron housing with keys matching pipe and fitting grooves, prelubricated EPDM gasket rated for minimum 250 deg F (121 deg C) for use with housing, and steel bolts and nuts.
- E. Grooved Pipe Joint Construction: Square cut pipe ends and roll groove ends of pipe in accordance to manufacturer's specification. Gaskets shall be verified as suitable for the intended service and shall be coated on the lips with a thin uniform coat of lubricant in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions. For installation-ready coupling housing shall engage both grooves, otherwise the housing shall be assembled over the gasket and shall engage both grooves. The nuts shall be uniformly tightened until the housing pads are firmly together metal to metal allowing visual inspection, or until properly tightened per manufacturer's specification and instructions. A factory trained representative shall provide on-site training for contractor's field personnel in the use of grooving tools and installation of grooved joint products. The representative shall periodically visit the jobsite and review contractor is following best recommended practices in grooved product installation including visual inspection of installation. (A distributor's representative is not considered qualified to conduct the training or jobsite visit(s).) To assure uniformity and compatibility of piping components in grooved end piping systems, all grooved products and grooving tools utilized shall be supplied by a single manufacturer with smart tools recommended.
- F. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

## 2.2 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel with plain ends; type, grade, and wall thickness as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.
- B. Cast-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4; Classes 125 and 250 as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.
- C. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Classes 150 and 300 as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.

- D. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Classes 150, 250, and 300 as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.
- E. Cast-Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Classes 25, 125, and 250; raised ground face, and bolt holes spot faced as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.
- F. Wrought Cast- and Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
  - 1. Material Group: 1.1.
  - 2. End Connections: Butt welding.
  - 3. Facings: Raised face.
- G. Grooved Mechanical-Joint Fittings and Couplings:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Victaulic Company.
  - 2. Joint Fittings: ASTM A 536, Grade 65-45-12 ductile iron; ASTM A 47/A 47M, Grade 32510 malleable iron; ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type F, E, or S, Grade B fabricated steel; or ASTM A 106, Grade B steel fittings with grooves or shoulders constructed to accept grooved-end couplings; with nuts, bolts, locking pin, locking toggle, or lugs to secure grooved pipe and fittings.
  - 3. Couplings: Ductile- or malleable-iron housing and synthetic rubber gasket of central cavity pressure-responsive design; with nuts, bolts, locking pin, locking toggle, or lugs to secure grooved pipe and fittings.
  - 4. Grooved Mechanical pipe coupling system including the following fittings, valves and specialty products, as manufactured by Victaulic, may be used in lieu of flanged or welded steel piping 2" and larger for hot water, chilled water, condenser water, glycol, and steam.
  - 5. Couplings: Ductile-iron housing and E/EHP-EPDM gasket of central cavity pressure-responsive design rated for 250 deg F: with nuts and bolts to secure grooved pipe and fittings. Basis of design products:
    - a. NPS ½" to 2": Quick Vic Small Diameter Installation Ready Couplings for plain end pipe, Style P07
    - b. NPS 2" to 12": Rigid Installation-Ready Grooved Couplings, Style 107
    - c. NPS 2" to 8": Flexible Installation-Ready Grooved Couplings, Style 177
    - d. NPS ¾" to 12": Flexible Couplings, Style 77
    - e. NPS 14" and above: Advanced Grooved System Couplings, Style W07, W77
  - 6. Grooved butterfly valves, strainers, suction diffusers and specialties may be utilized on CH, HW, and CW grooved piping; Victaulic Series 761, W761, Series 716, 779, W715 Series 730, 732, W730, W732, Series 731, W731.
  - 7. Three Victaulic Style 177, 77, W77 flexible couplings may be used in lieu of a flexible connector for vibration attenuation and stress relief with engineer approval on CH, HW, and CW Piping. The couplings shall be placed in close proximity to the source of the vibration.



8. Victaulic Style 177, 77, W77 Flexible couplings or Style 155 expansion joint may be used to accommodate expansion contraction on distribution or riser CH, HW, and CW piping with engineer approval.
  9. Victaulic Series 380, 381, 382, 383 Vibration Isolation Pump Drops: Factory assembled, grooved end pump drop assembly. Installation-Ready, containing 3 flexible couplings for vibration attenuation, Style 761 master Seal butterfly isolation valves, and pressure and temperature ports. Suction drop shall contain either a suction diffuser or strainer, dependent on design requirements. Discharge drop shall contain Style 779 check valve with Venturi flow meter.
  10. Victaulic Style 26 Vic-Header: Factory fabricated grooved end header all-in-one assembly for fluid distribution. Header shall consist of an ASTM A53, Grade B, standard-weight pipe spool with required outlet connections.
  11. Victaulic Series 385 Vibration Isolation Air Handling drops: Factory assembled, grooved end, installation ready assembly provides isolation, straining, balancing and draining. Swing joint accommodates installation.
- H. Grooved Pipe Joint Construction: Square cut pipe ends and roll groove ends of pipe in accordance to manufacturer's specifications. Tools shall be Victaulic VE270FSD, RG5200i or other model as recommended by Victaulic. Use roll sets compatible with the pipe material and wall thickness per Victaulic installation instructions (I-100). Gaskets shall be verified as suitable for the intended service and shall be coated on the lips with a thin uniform coat of lubricant in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions. For installation-ready coupling housing shall engage both grooves, otherwise the housing shall be assembled over the gasket and shall engage both grooves. The nuts shall be uniformly tightened until the housing pads are firmly together metal to metal allowing visual inspection, or until properly tightened per manufacturer's specifications and instructions. A factory trained representative shall provide on -site training for contractor's field personnel in the use of grooving tools and installation of grooved joint products. The representative shall periodically visit the jobsite and review contractor is following best recommended practices in grooved product installation including visual inspection of installation. (A distributor's representative is not considered qualified to conduct the training or jobsite visit(s).) To assure uniformity and compatibility of piping components in grooved end piping systems, all grooved products and grooving tools utilized shall be supplied by a single manufacturer with smart tools recommended.
- I. Small Diameter (1/2"-2") Steel Pipe and Fittings

**QuickVic™ SD Installation-Ready™ System for Carbon Steel Pipe**

Installation-Ready™ fittings for Schedule 10 through Schedule 80 plain end carbon steel piping in HVAC and mechanical applications sizes NPS ½" thru 2" (DN15 thru DN50). System rated for a working pressure of 300 psi (2065 kPA). Fitting shall consist of a ductile iron housing conforming to ASTM A536, Grade 65-45-12, with Installation-Ready™ ends [orange enamel coated] [or] [zinc coated]. Fittings complete with gasket liner, zinc-electroplated steel bolts and nuts as per the mechanical properties of ASTM A449, and 300 series stainless steel retainer.

1. **QuickVic™ SD Installation-Ready™** Fittings for Carbon Steel Pipe shall be Victaulic Style/Number P07, P08, P10, P11, P20, P25, P27, P50, P60, designed for installation onto plain end pipe without prior disassembly of the fitting.
2. Fittings require metal-to-metal contact across the entire bolt pad section for correct assembly.

3. Inspection window provides visual post-installation verification of retainer engagement.
4. Patented “Leak-If-Not-Tightened” feature provides immediate feedback as the system is being filled.
5. Continuous Gasket Lining: Pressure-responsive, synthetic rubber for use with the non-wetted interior housing surfaces.

Valves: DZR brass body, [chrome-plated brass] [stainless-steel] ball and stem, full port, blow-out-proof stem with double EPDM O-ring, PTFE seats, zinc-plated carbon steel handle with orange vinyl grip, and plain ends for use with the Victaulic **QuickVic™ SD** Installation Ready system in sizes ½” through 2” (DN15 through DN50). Rated for services to 300 psi (2065 kPa). Victaulic Series P89.

Dielectric Fittings: Fitting shall be a copper-silicon casting conforming to UNS C87850. Fitting shall have plain ends. Victaulic Style P47 and P97.

Tools: Cut and mark tool, designed to cut and mark the insertion depth of the pipe simultaneously to ensure proper coupling and fittings installation. Victaulic PC3110.

## 2.3 PLASTIC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. CPVC Plastic Pipe: ASTM F 441/F 441M, Schedules 40 and 80, plain ends as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.
- B. CPVC Plastic Pipe Fittings: Socket-type pipe fittings, ASTM F 438 for Schedule 40 pipe; ASTM F 439 for Schedule 80 pipe.
- C. PVC Plastic Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedules 40 and 80, plain ends as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.
- D. PVC Plastic Pipe Fittings: Socket-type pipe fittings, ASTM D 2466 for Schedule 40 pipe; ASTM D 2467 for Schedule 80 pipe.
- E. Victaulic PGS-300 CPVC Piping system. Victaulic style 357 installation-ready coupling for CPVC/PVC, Style 356 Transition coupling for direct connection to existing groove componentry (grooved valves, metallic fittings, etc.), and Victaulic Style 358 Reducing Couplings for direct connection of pipes of different ODs.
  1. Ductile-iron housing and Grade “P” Fluoroelastomer gasket of central cavity pressure-responsive design rated for 0°F to 180° with nuts and bolts to secure grooved pipe and fittings.
  2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 300 psig

## 2.4 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.

1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
  - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
  - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
- B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for joining copper with copper; or BAg-1, silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.
- F. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
  1. CPVC Piping: ASTM F 493.
    - a. CPVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 490 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
    - b. Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
    - c. Solvent cement and adhesive primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers," including 2004 Addenda.
  2. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.
    - a. PVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
    - b. Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
    - c. Solvent cement and adhesive primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers," including 2004 Addenda.
- G. Gasket Material: Thickness, material, and type suitable for fluid to be handled and working temperatures and pressures.

## 2.5 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
  - b. IPEX Inc.
  - c. KBi.
2. CPVC and PVC one-piece fitting with one threaded brass or copper insert and one Schedule 80 solvent-cement-joint end.

B. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
  - b. IPEX Inc.
  - c. KBi.
  - d. NIBCO INC.
2. MSS SP-107, CPVC and PVC union. Include brass or copper end, Schedule 80 solvent-cement-joint end, rubber gasket, and threaded union.

## 2.6 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
    - b. Central Plastics Company.
    - c. Hart Industries International, Inc.
    - d. Jomar International Ltd.
    - e. Matco-Norca, Inc.
    - f. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
    - g. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - h. Wilkins; a Zurn company.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.

- b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
- c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

## 2.7 VALVES

- A. Gate, Globe, Check, Ball, and Butterfly Valves: Comply with requirements specified in Division 23 Section "General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping."
- B. Automatic Temperature-Control Valves, Actuators, and Sensors: Comply with requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."
- C. Bronze, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
    - b. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; a division of ITT Industries.
    - c. Flow Design Inc.
    - d. Gerand Engineering Co.
    - e. Griswold Controls.
    - f. Taco.
    - g. Tour & Anderson; available through Victaulic Company.
  - 2. Body: Bronze, ball or plug type with calibrated orifice or venturi.
  - 3. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
  - 4. Plug: Resin.
  - 5. Seat: PTFE.
  - 6. End Connections: Threaded or socket.
  - 7. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
  - 8. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
  - 9. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig (860 kPa).
  - 10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).
- D. Cast-Iron or Steel, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
    - b. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; a division of ITT Industries.
    - c. Flow Design Inc.
    - d. Gerand Engineering Co.
    - e. Griswold Controls.
    - f. Taco.
    - g. Tour & Anderson; available through Victaulic Company.

2. Body: Cast-iron or steel body, ball, plug, or globe pattern with calibrated orifice or venturi.
3. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
4. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
5. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
6. Seat: PTFE.
7. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
8. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
9. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
10. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig (860 kPa).
11. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

E. Diaphragm-Operated, Pressure-Reducing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Amtrol, Inc.
  - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
  - c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; a division of ITT Industries.
  - d. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - e. Spence Engineering Company, Inc.
  - f. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Body: Bronze or brass.
3. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
4. Seat: Brass.
5. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
6. Diaphragm: EPT.
7. Low inlet-pressure check valve.
8. Inlet Strainer: SS materials, removable without system shutdown.
9. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
10. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.

F. Diaphragm-Operated Safety Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Amtrol, Inc.
  - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
  - c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; a division of ITT Industries.
  - d. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - e. Spence Engineering Company, Inc.
  - f. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Body: Bronze or brass.

3. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
4. Seat: Brass.
5. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
6. Diaphragm: EPT.
7. Wetted, Internal Work Parts: Brass and rubber.
8. Inlet Strainer: SS materials, removable without system shutdown.
9. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
10. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IV, and selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.

G. Automatic Flow-Control Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Flow Design Inc.
  - b. Griswold Controls.
  - c. Tour & Anderson; available through Victaulic Company.
2. Body: Brass or ferrous metal.
3. Piston and Spring Assembly: Corrosion resistant, tamper proof, self cleaning, and removable.
4. Combination Assemblies: Include bronze or brass-alloy ball valve.
5. Identification Tag: Marked with zone identification, valve number, and flow rate.
6. Size: Same as pipe in which installed.
7. Performance: Maintain constant flow, plus or minus 5 percent over system pressure fluctuations.
8. Minimum CWP Rating: 175 psig (1207 kPa)].
9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 200 deg F (93 deg C).

## 2.8 AIR CONTROL DEVICES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Amtrol, Inc.
2. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
3. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; a division of ITT Industries.
4. Taco.
5. Watts

B. Manual Air Vents:

1. Body: Bronze.
2. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
3. Operator: Screwdriver or thumbscrew.
4. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2 (DN 15).

5. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/8 (DN 6).
6. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 225 deg F (107 deg C).

C. ASME Bladder Type EXPANSION TANKS

1. Manufacturers:
  - a. Taco, Inc.
  - b. ITT Bell & Gossett
  - c. Amtrol Inc
  - d. Watts
2. Construction: Welded steel, designed, tested and stamped in accordance with ASME (BPV code sec VIII, div 1); supplied with National Board Form U-1, rated for working pressure of 150 psi , with flexible heavy duty butyl rubber bladder. Bladder shall be able to accept the full volume of the expansion tank and shall be removable and replaceable. Bladder shall be NSF 61 rated for potable water service and shall be manufactured with FDA approved materials.
3. Accessories: Pressure gage (field installed by others) and air-charging fitting.
4. Automatic Cold Water Fill Assembly (field installed by others): Pressure reducing valve, reduced pressure double check back flow preventer, test cocks, strainer, vacuum breaker, and valved by-pass.
5. Size:
  - a. Hot Water, Model CA450-125, Capacity: 119 Gallons.
  - b. Chilled Water, Model CBX30-125, Capacity: 5 Gallons Acceptance.
  - c. Domestic Water, Model PAX254-150, Capacity: 31 Gallons Acceptance.
  - d. Capacity of submitted tanks must be equal to or greater than specified units. No exceptions unless stated in an addendum.

D. AIR and DIRT SEPARATORS

1. Manufacturers:
  - a. Taco, Inc; 4900 (size and capacity as called for on plans)
  - b. Weinman.
  - c. Flamco.
  - d. Watts.
2. Air and dirt removal device shall be constructed of steel. It shall be designed, fabricated and stamped per ASME Section VIII Division 1 with a maximum working pressure of 150 psi at 270°F. Manufacturer shall be holder of ASME U stamp.
3. Units up to three 3-inch in size shall be provided with threaded connections as standard.  
Units four 4-inch and larger shall be provided with flanged system connections



as standard. Inlet and outlet connections to be inline with piping system. Both inlet and outlet to be in the same horizontal and vertical planes.

4. Each air and dirt removal device shall be equipped with a brass conical shaped air venting chamber designed to minimize system fluid from fouling the venting assembly. The air vent shall be able to be closed to allow flushing and purging of dirt via side port without dirt passing through vent on initial system fill.
5. A brass flushing cock shall be located on the side of each separator to facilitate fast-fill and removal of the floating impurities from the air system interface within the separator.
6. A blow down valve shall be provided by the unit manufacturer on the bottom of each unit to allow blow down and cleaning. On units 2 ½" and smaller the valve and all of its fittings shall be 1". On units three 3" and larger the valve and all openings shall be 2".
7. The air and dirt removal device shall remove air down to 18 microns and shall remove dirt/debris down to 35 microns. The unit shall be 100% efficient at removing dirt down to 90 microns in 100 passes or less.
8. The unit manufacturer shall provide the owner and design engineer third party independent test data certifying that their unit performs to the above standards. Suppliers not providing these independent performance test results will not be acceptable.

## 2.9 CHEMICAL TREATMENT

- A. Bypass Chemical Feeder: Welded steel construction; 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure; 5-gal. (19-L) capacity; with fill funnel and inlet, outlet, and drain valves.
  1. Chemicals: Specially formulated, based on analysis of makeup water, to prevent accumulation of scale and corrosion in piping and connected equipment.
- B. Ethylene and Propylene Glycol: Industrial grade with corrosion inhibitors and environmental-stabilizer additives for mixing with water in systems indicated to contain antifreeze or glycol solutions.

## 2.10 HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Y-Pattern Strainers:
  1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.

2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
  3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
  4. CWP Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).
- B. Stainless-Steel Bellow, Flexible Connectors:
1. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze, wire-reinforcing protective jacket.
  2. End Connections: Threaded or flanged to match equipment connected.
  3. Performance: Capable of 3/4-inch (20-mm) misalignment.
  4. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
  5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).
- C. Expansion fittings are specified in Division 23 Section "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Hot-water heating piping, aboveground, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be the following:
1. Type L (Type B), drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and brazed joints.
- B. Hot-water heating piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, shall be the following:
1. Schedule 40 steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
- C. Hot-Water Heating Piping Installed Belowground and within Slabs: Type K (A), annealed-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints. Use the fewest possible joints.
- D. Chilled-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be the following:
1. Type L (Type B), drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and brazed joints.
- E. Chilled-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, shall be the following:
1. Schedule 40 steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.

- F. Chilled-Water Piping Installed Belowground and within Slabs: Type K (A), annealed-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints. Use the fewest possible joints.
- G. Condenser-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be the following:
  - 1. Schedule 40 steel pipe; Class 150, malleable-iron fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; and threaded joints.
- H. Condenser-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, shall be the following:
  - 1. Schedule 40 steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
- I. Condenser-Water Piping Installed Belowground and within Slabs: Type K (A), annealed-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints. Use the fewest possible joints.
- J. Makeup-water piping installed aboveground shall be the following:
  - 1. Type L (B), drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.
- K. Makeup-Water Piping Installed Belowground and within Slabs: Type K (A), annealed-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints. Use the fewest possible joints.
- L. Condensate-Drain Piping: Type M (C), drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.
- M. Blowdown-Drain Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which blowdown drain is installed.
- N. Air-Vent Piping:
  - 1. Inlet: Same as service where installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to the piping manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Outlet: Type K (A), annealed-temper copper tubing with soldered or flared joints.
- O. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping for Hot-Water Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which safety valve is installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to the piping manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.2 VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. Install shutoff-duty valves at each branch connection to supply mains, and at supply connection to each piece of equipment.

- B. All pressure independent valves for individual coil control shall be provided as part of Hydronic Coil Piping / Hose Kit Packages as specified in section 15 700. Control valve actuators will be (supplied and installed by the controls contractor) or (supplied by the controls contractor and shipped to the pressure independent valve manufacturer for factory installation). The controls contractor is responsible for wiring and testing the valve actuators.
- C. Install check valves at each pump discharge and elsewhere as required to control flow direction.
- D. Install safety valves at hot-water generators and elsewhere as required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Install drip-pan elbow on safety-valve outlet and pipe without valves to the outdoors; and pipe drain to nearest floor drain or as indicated on Drawings. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1, for installation requirements.
- E. Install pressure-reducing valves at makeup-water connection to regulate system fill pressure.

### 3.3 PIPING INSTALLATIONS

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicate piping locations and arrangements if such were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.

- K. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation and servicing of valves.
- L. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 3/4 (DN 20) ball valve, and short NPS 3/4 (DN 20) threaded nipple with cap, at low points in piping system mains and elsewhere as required for system drainage.
- M. Install piping at a uniform grade of 0.2 percent upward in direction of flow.
- N. Reduce pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with level side up.
- O. Install branch connections to mains using mechanically formed tee fittings in main pipe, with the branch connected to the bottom of the main pipe. For up-feed risers, connect the branch to the top of the main pipe.
- P. Install valves according to Division 23 Section "General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping."
- Q. Install unions in piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to valves, at final connections of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
- R. Install flanges in piping, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, at final connections of equipment and elsewhere as indicated.
- S. Install strainers on inlet side of each control valve, pressure-reducing valve, solenoid valve, in-line pump, and elsewhere as indicated. Install NPS 3/4 (DN 20) nipple and ball valve in blowdown connection of strainers NPS 2 (DN 50) and larger. Match size of strainer blowoff connection for strainers smaller than NPS 2 (DN 50).
- T. Install expansion loops, expansion joints, anchors, and pipe alignment guides as specified in Division 23 Section "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping."
- U. Identify piping as specified in Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- V. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Division 23 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- W. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Division 23 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- X. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Division 23 Section "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

### 3.4 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger, support, and anchor devices are specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment." Comply with the following requirements for maximum spacing of supports.
- B. Seismic restraints are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- C. Install the following pipe attachments:
  - 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal piping less than 20 feet (6 m) long.
  - 2. Adjustable roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal piping 20 feet (6 m) or longer.
  - 3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet (6 m) or longer, supported on a trapeze.
  - 4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
  - 5. Provide copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
  - 6. On plastic pipe, install pads or cushions on bearing surfaces to prevent hanger from scratching pipe.
- D. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
  - 1. NPS 3/4 (DN 20): Maximum span, 7 feet (2.1 m); minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
  - 2. NPS 1 (DN 25): Maximum span, 7 feet (2.1 m); minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
  - 3. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): Maximum span, 9 feet (2.7 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - 4. NPS 2 (DN 50): Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - 5. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Maximum span, 11 feet (3.4 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - 6. NPS 3 (DN 80): Maximum span, 12 feet (3.7 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - 7. NPS 4 (DN 100): Maximum span, 14 feet (4.3 m); minimum rod size, 1/2 inch (13 mm).
- E. Install hangers for drawn-temper copper piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
  - 1. NPS 3/4 (DN 20): Maximum span, 5 feet (1.5 m); minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
  - 2. NPS 1 (DN 25): Maximum span, 6 feet (1.8 m); minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
  - 3. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): Maximum span, 8 feet (2.4 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).

4. NPS 2 (DN 50): Maximum span, 8 feet (2.4 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  5. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Maximum span, 9 feet (2.7 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  6. NPS 3 (DN 80): Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
- F. Plastic Piping Hanger Spacing: Space hangers according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions for service conditions. Avoid point loading. Space and install hangers with the fewest practical rigid anchor points.
- G. Support vertical runs at roof, at each floor, and at 10-foot (3-m) intervals between floors.

### 3.5 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
  2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- G. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
- H. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
  2. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.

3. PVC Pressure Piping: Join ASTM D 1785 schedule number, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
  4. PVC Nonpressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
- I. Grooved Joints: Assemble joints with coupling and gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Cut or roll grooves in ends of pipe based on pipe and coupling manufacturer's written instructions for pipe wall thickness. Use grooved-end fittings and rigid, grooved-end-pipe couplings.
  - J. Mechanically Formed, Copper-Tube-Outlet Joints: Use manufacturer-recommended tool and procedure, and brazed joints.

### 3.6 HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install manual air vents at high points in piping, at heat-transfer coils, and elsewhere as required for system air venting.
- B. Install piping from boiler air outlet, air separator, or air purger to expansion tank with a 2 percent upward slope toward tank.
- C. Install in-line air separators in pump suction. Install drain valve on air separators NPS 2 (DN 50) and larger.
- D. Install bypass chemical feeders in each hydronic system where indicated, in upright position with top of funnel not more than 48 inches (1200 mm) above the floor. Install feeder in minimum NPS 3/4 (DN 20) bypass line, from main with full-size, full-port, ball valve in the main between bypass connections. Install NPS 3/4 (DN 20) pipe from chemical feeder drain, to nearest equipment drain and include a full-size, full-port, ball valve.
- E. Install expansion tanks above the air separator. Install tank fitting in tank bottom and charge tank. Use manual vent for initial fill to establish proper water level in tank.
  1. Install tank fittings that are shipped loose.
  2. Support tank from floor or structure above with sufficient strength to carry weight of tank, piping connections, fittings, plus tank full of water. Do not overload building components and structural members.

### 3.7 TERMINAL EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS

- A. Sizes for supply and return piping connections shall be the same as or larger than equipment connections.
- B. Install control valves in accessible locations close to connected equipment.
- C. Install ports for pressure gages and thermometers at coil inlet and outlet connections according to Division 23 Section "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."



### 3.8 CHEMICAL TREATMENT

- A. Fill system with fresh water and add liquid alkaline compound with emulsifying agents and detergents to remove grease and petroleum products from piping. Circulate solution for a minimum of 24 hours, drain, clean strainer screens, and refill with fresh water.
- B. Add initial chemical treatment and maintain water quality in ranges noted above for the first year of operation.

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prepare hydronic piping according to ASME B31.9 and as follows:
  - 1. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
  - 2. Provide temporary restraints for expansion joints that cannot sustain reactions due to test pressure. If temporary restraints are impractical, isolate expansion joints from testing.
  - 3. Flush hydronic piping systems with clean water; then remove and clean or replace strainer screens.
  - 4. Isolate equipment from piping. If a valve is used to isolate equipment, its closure shall be capable of sealing against test pressure without damage to valve. Install blinds in flanged joints to isolate equipment.
  - 5. Install safety valve, set at a pressure no more than one-third higher than test pressure, to protect against damage by expanding liquid or other source of overpressure during test.
- B. Perform the following tests on hydronic piping:
  - 1. Use ambient temperature water as a testing medium unless there is risk of damage due to freezing. Another liquid that is safe for workers and compatible with piping may be used.
  - 2. While filling system, use vents installed at high points of system to release air. Use drains installed at low points for complete draining of test liquid.
  - 3. Isolate expansion tanks and determine that hydronic system is full of water.
  - 4. All water piping shall be proven tight under 150 psi hydrostatic pressure for two hours without loss of pressure before being covered. Blank-off equipment not designed for this test. All joints shall be proven tight.
  - 5. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 10 minutes, examine piping, joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing components, and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.
  - 6. Prepare written report of testing.
- C. Perform the following before operating the system:
  - 1. Open manual valves fully.
  - 2. Inspect pumps for proper rotation.
  - 3. Set makeup pressure-reducing valves for required system pressure.
  - 4. Inspect air vents at high points of system and determine if all are installed and operating freely (automatic type), or bleed air completely (manual type).

5. Set temperature controls so all coils are calling for full flow.
6. Inspect and set operating temperatures of hydronic equipment, such as boilers, chillers, cooling towers, to specified values.
7. Verify lubrication of motors and bearings.

END OF SECTION 232113

## SECTION 232116 - HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Hydronic specialty valves.
  - 2. Air-control devices.
  - 3. Strainers.
  - 4. Connectors.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data.

#### 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Differential Pressure Meter: For each type of balancing valve and automatic flow control valve, include flowmeter, probes, hoses, flow charts, and carrying case.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.
- B. Safety Valves and Pressure Vessels: Shall bear the appropriate ASME label. Fabricate and stamp air separators and expansion tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 HYDRONIC SPECIALTY VALVES

#### A. Plastic Ball Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. American Valve, Inc.
  - b. Asahi/America.
  - c. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
  - d. Colonial Engineering, Inc.
  - e. Georg Fischer Inc.
  - f. Hayward Flow Control.
  - g. IPEX USA LLC.
  - h. Jomar Valve.
  - i. KBI (King Bros. Industries).
  - j. Legend Valve & Fitting, Inc.
  - k. NIBCO INC.
  - l. Plast-O-Matic Valves, Inc.
  - m. SMC The Specialty Mfg. Co.
  - n. Thermoplastic Valves, Inc.
  - o. WATTS.
2. Body: One-, two-, or three-piece CPVC or PVC to match piping.
3. Ball: Full-port CPVC or PVC to match piping.
4. Seats: PTFE.
5. Seals: EPDM.
6. End Connections: Socket, union, or flanged.
7. Handle Style: Tee shape.
8. CWP Rating: Equal to piping service.
9. Maximum Operating Temperature: Equal to piping service.
10. Comply with MSS SP-122.

#### B. Plastic Butterfly Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. American Valve, Inc.
  - b. Asahi/America.
  - c. Colonial Engineering, Inc.
  - d. Georg Fischer Inc.
  - e. Hayward Flow Control.
  - f. IPEX USA LLC.
  - g. Legend Valve & Fitting, Inc.
  - h. NIBCO INC.

- i. Plast-O-Matic Valves, Inc.
- j. SMC The Specialty Mfg. Co.
- k. Thermoplastic Valves, Inc.
- l. WATTS.

2. Body: PVC or CPVC to match piping wafer type for installation between flanges.
3. Disc: EPDM-coated steel.
4. Seats: PTFE.
5. Handle Style: Locking lever.
6. CWP Rating: Equal to piping service.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: Equal to piping service.

C. Plastic Check Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. American Valve, Inc.
  - b. Asahi/America.
  - c. Colonial Engineering, Inc.
  - d. Georg Fischer Inc.
  - e. Hayward Flow Control.
  - f. IPEX USA LLC.
  - g. KBI (King Bros. Industries).
  - h. Legend Valve & Fitting, Inc.
  - i. NIBCO INC.
  - j. Plast-O-Matic Valves, Inc.
  - k. SMC The Specialty Mfg. Co.
  - l. Thermoplastic Valves, Inc.
  - m. WATTS.
2. Body: Bronze, ball or plug type with calibrated orifice or venturi.
3. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
4. Plug: Resin.
5. Seat: PTFE.
6. End Connections: Threaded or socket.
7. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
8. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
9. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig (860 kPa).
10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

D. Bronze, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
  - b. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.

- c. Flow Design, Inc.
  - d. Gerand Engineering Co.
  - e. Grinnell G-Fire by Johnson Controls Company.
  - f. Griswold Controls.
  - g. Hays Fluid Controls.
  - h. HCI; Hydronics Components Inc.
  - i. Nexus Valve, Inc.
  - j. NIBCO INC.
  - k. NuTech Hydronic Specialty Products.
  - l. Oventrop Corporation.
  - m. Red-White Valve Corp.
  - n. TACO Comfort Solutions, Inc.
  - o. Tour & Andersson; available through Victaulic Company.
  - p. Tunstall Corporation.
  - q. Victaulic Company.
  - r. WATTS.
2. Body: Bronze, ball or plug type with calibrated orifice or venturi.
  3. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
  4. Plug: Resin.
  5. Seat: PTFE.
  6. End Connections: Threaded or socket.
  7. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
  8. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
  9. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig (860 kPa).
  10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).
- E. Cast-Iron or Steel, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
    - b. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
    - c. Flow Design, Inc.
    - d. Gerand Engineering Co.
    - e. Grinnell G-Fire by Johnson Controls Company.
    - f. Griswold Controls.
    - g. Hays Fluid Controls.
    - h. HCI; Hydronics Components Inc.
    - i. Nexus Valve, Inc.
    - j. NIBCO INC.
    - k. NuTech Hydronic Specialty Products.
    - l. Oventrop Corporation.
    - m. Red-White Valve Corp.
    - n. TACO Comfort Solutions, Inc.
    - o. Tour & Andersson; available through Victaulic Company.
    - p. Tunstall Corporation.
    - q. Victaulic Company.

r. WATTS.

2. Body: Cast-iron or steel body, ball, plug, or globe pattern with calibrated orifice or venturi.
3. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
4. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
5. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
6. Seat: PTFE.
7. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
8. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
9. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
10. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig (860 kPa).
11. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

F. Diaphragm-Operated, Pressure-Reducing Valves: ASME labeled.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. AMTROL, Inc.
  - b. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - c. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
  - d. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
  - e. Spence Engineering Company, Inc.
  - f. Victaulic Company.
  - g. WATTS.
2. Body: Bronze or brass.
3. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
4. Seat: Brass.
5. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
6. Diaphragm: EPT.
7. Low inlet-pressure check valve.
8. Inlet Strainer: removable without system shutdown.
9. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
10. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.

G. Diaphragm-Operated Safety Valves: ASME labeled.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. AMTROL, Inc.
  - b. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - c. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
  - d. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
  - e. Spence Engineering Company, Inc.

- f. WATTS.
  - 2. Body: Bronze or brass.
  - 3. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
  - 4. Seat: Brass.
  - 5. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
  - 6. Diaphragm: EPT.
  - 7. Wetted, Internal Work Parts: Brass and rubber.
  - 8. Inlet Strainer: removable without system shutdown.
  - 9. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
  - 10. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IV, and selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.
  
- H. Automatic Flow-Control Valves:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Caleffi.
    - b. Flow Design, Inc.
    - c. Flowcon Americas LLC.
    - d. Griswold Controls.
    - e. Hays Fluid Controls.
    - f. HCI; Hydronics Components Inc.
    - g. Nexus Valve, Inc.
    - h. NIBCO INC.
    - i. NuTech Hydronic Specialty Products.
    - j. Oventrop Corporation.
    - k. Red-White Valve Corp.
    - l. Tunstall Corporation.
    - m. WATTS.
  - 2. Body: Brass or ferrous metal.
  - 3. Flow Control Assembly, provide either of the following:
    - a. Piston and Spring Assembly: Stainless steel, tamper proof, self-cleaning, and removable.
    - b. Elastomeric Diaphragm and Polyphenylsulfone Orifice Plate: Operating ranges within 2- to 80-psig (14- to 550-kPa) differential pressure.
  - 4. Combination Assemblies: Include bronze or brass-alloy ball valve.
  - 5. Identification Tag: Marked with zone identification, valve number, and flow rate.
  - 6. Size: Same as pipe in which installed.
  - 7. Performance: Maintain constant flow within plus or minus 10 percent, regardless of system pressure fluctuations.
  - 8. Minimum CWP Rating: 175 psig (1207 kPa).
  - 9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 200 deg F (93 deg C).



## 2.2 AIR-CONTROL DEVICES

### A. Manual Air Vents:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. AMTROL, Inc.
  - b. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - c. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
  - d. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
  - e. Hays Fluid Controls.
  - f. HCI; Hydronics Components Inc.
  - g. Nexus Valve, Inc.
  - h. NuTech Hydronic Specialty Products.
  - i. TACO Comfort Solutions, Inc.
  - j. WATTS.
2. Body: Bronze.
3. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
4. Operator: Screwdriver or thumbscrew.
5. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2 (DN 15).
6. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/8 (DN 6).
7. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 225 deg F (107 deg C).

### B. Automatic Air Vents:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by the following] [provide products by one of the following] [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:
  - a. AMTROL, Inc.
  - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
  - c. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
  - d. Flamco; a division of AALBERTS Ind.
  - e. Nexus Valve, Inc.
  - f. NuTech Hydronic Specialty Products.
  - g. Spirotherm, Inc.
  - h. TACO Comfort Solutions, Inc.
  - i. WATTS.
2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
3. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
4. Operator: Noncorrosive metal float.
5. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2 (DN 15).
6. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/4 (DN 8).
7. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F (116 deg C).

C. Expansion Tanks:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. AMTROL, Inc.
  - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
  - c. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
  - d. Flo Fab Inc.
  - e. TACO Comfort Solutions, Inc.
  - f. WATTS.
2. Tank: Welded steel, rated for 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure and 375 deg F (191 deg C) maximum operating temperature, with taps in bottom of tank for tank fitting and taps in end of tank for gage glass. Tanks shall be factory tested after taps are fabricated and shall be labeled according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
3. Air-Control Tank Fitting: Cast-iron body, copper-plated tube, brass vent tube plug, and stainless-steel ball check, 100-gal. (379-L) unit only; sized for compression-tank diameter. Provide tank fittings for 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure and 250 deg F (121 deg C) maximum operating temperature.
4. Tank Drain Fitting: Brass body, nonferrous internal parts; 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure and 240 deg F (116 deg C) maximum operating temperature; constructed to admit air to compression tank, drain water, and close off system.
5. Gage Glass: Full height with dual manual shutoff valves, [3/4-inch- (20-mm-)] diameter gage glass, and slotted-metal glass guard.

D. In-Line Air Separators:

1. <Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>
2. Tank: One-piece cast iron with an integral weir constructed to decelerate system flow to maximize air separation.
3. Maximum Working Pressure: Up to 175 psig (1207 kPa).
4. Maximum Operating Temperature: Up to 300 deg F (149 deg C).

E. Air Purgers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. AMTROL, Inc.
  - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
  - c. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
  - d. Spirotherm, Inc.
  - e. TACO Comfort Solutions, Inc.
  - f. WATTS.

2. Body: Cast iron with internal baffles that slow the water velocity to separate the air from solution and divert it to the vent for quick removal.
3. Maximum Working Pressure: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
4. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

## 2.3 STRAINERS

### A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Keckley Company.
  - b. Metraflex Company (The).
  - c. Titan Flow Control, Inc.
  - d. WATTS.
2. Body: ASTM A126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
3. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
4. Strainer Screen: Stainless-steel, 40-mesh strainer, or perforated stainless-steel basket.
5. CWP Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).

## 2.4 CONNECTORS

### A. Stainless-Steel Bellow, Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze, wire-reinforcing protective jacket.
2. End Connections: Threaded or flanged to match equipment connected.
3. Performance: Capable of 3/4-inch (20-mm) misalignment.
4. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. Install shutoff-duty valves at each branch connection to supply mains and at supply connection to each piece of equipment.
- B. Install calibrated-orifice, balancing valves at each branch connection to return main.

- C. Install calibrated-orifice, balancing valves in the return pipe of each heating or cooling terminal.
- D. Install check valves at each pump discharge and elsewhere as required to control flow direction.
- E. Install safety valves at hot-water generators and elsewhere as required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Install drip-pan elbow on safety-valve outlet and pipe without valves to the outdoors; pipe drain to nearest floor drain or as indicated on Drawings. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1, for installation requirements.
- F. Install pressure-reducing valves at makeup-water connection to regulate system fill pressure.

### 3.2 HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install manual air vents at high points in piping, at heat-transfer coils, and elsewhere as required for system air venting.
- B. Install automatic air vents at high points of system piping in mechanical equipment rooms only. Install manual vents at heat-transfer coils and elsewhere as required for air venting.
- C. Install piping from boiler air outlet, air separator, or air purger to expansion tank with a 2 percent upward slope toward tank.
- D. Install in-line air separators in pump suction. Install drain valve on air separators NPS 2 (DN 50) and larger.
- E. Install tangential air separator in pump suction. Install blowdown piping with gate or full-port ball valve; extend full size to nearest floor drain.
- F. Install expansion tanks above the air separator. Install tank fitting in tank bottom and charge tank. Use manual vent for initial fill to establish proper water level in tank.
  - 1. Install tank fittings that are shipped loose.
  - 2. Support tank from floor or structure above with sufficient strength to carry weight of tank, piping connections, fittings, plus tank full of water. Do not overload building components and structural members.
- G. Install expansion tanks on the floor. Vent and purge air from hydronic system, and ensure that tank is properly charged with air to suit system Project requirements.

END OF SECTION 232116

## SECTION 233113 - METAL DUCTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
  - 2. Double-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
  - 3. Single-wall round ducts and fittings.
  - 4. Double-wall round ducts and fittings.
  - 5. Sheet metal materials.
  - 6. Duct liner.
  - 7. Sealants and gaskets.
  - 8. Hangers and supports.
  - 9. Seismic-restraint devices.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.
- B. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports and seismic restraints shall withstand the effects of gravity and seismic loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and SMACNA's "Seismic Restraint Manual: Guidelines for Mechanical Systems."
- C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:
  - 1. Liners and adhesives.
  - 2. Sealants and gaskets.

3. Seismic-restraint devices.

B. Delegated-Design Submittal:

1. Design Calculations: Calculations, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation for selecting hangers and supports and seismic restraints.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Duct installation in congested spaces, indicating coordination with general construction, building components, and other building services. Indicate proposed changes to duct layout.
2. Suspended ceiling components.
3. Structural members to which duct will be attached.
4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
5. Penetrations of smoke barriers and fire-rated construction.
6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
  - a. Lighting fixtures.
  - b. Air outlets and inlets.
  - c. Speakers.
  - d. Sprinklers.
  - e. Access panels.
  - f. Perimeter moldings.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum," for aluminum supports. AWS D9.1M/D9.1, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.

B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.
2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum," for aluminum supports.
3. AWS D9.1M/D9.1, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.

C. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."

D. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

### 2.2 DOUBLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. McGill AirFlow LLC.
  - 2. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.
- B. Rectangular Ducts: Fabricate ducts with indicated dimensions for the inner duct.
- C. Outer Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- E. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular

Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

- F. Interstitial Insulation: Fibrous-glass liner complying with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
  - 1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.039 W/m x K) at 75 deg F (24 deg C) mean temperature.
  - 2. Install spacers that position the inner duct at uniform distance from outer duct without compressing insulation.
  - 3. Coat insulation with antimicrobial coating.
  - 4. Cover insulation with polyester film complying with UL 181, Class 1.
- G. Interstitial Insulation: Flexible elastomeric duct liner complying with ASTM C 534, Type II for sheet materials, and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
  - 1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.25 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.034 W/m x K) at 75 deg F (24 deg C) mean temperature.
- H. Inner Duct: Minimum 0.028-inch (0.7-mm) perforated galvanized sheet steel having 3/32-inch- (2.4-mm-) diameter perforations, with overall open area of 23 percent.
- I. Formed-on Transverse Joints (Flanges): Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Traverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- J. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

## 2.3 SINGLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Lindab Inc.
    - b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
    - c. SEMCO Incorporated.
    - d. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.
    - e. Spiral Manufacturing Co., Inc.



- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - 1. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches (1524 mm) in Diameter: Flanged.
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - 1. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches (2286 mm) in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
  - 2. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches (1830 mm) in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
- D. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

#### 2.4 DOUBLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Lindab Inc.
  - 2. McGill AirFlow LLC.
  - 3. SEMCO Incorporated.
  - 4. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.
- B. Outer Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
    - a. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches (1524 mm) in Diameter: Flanged.

2. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - a. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches (2286 mm) in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
  - b. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches (1830 mm) in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
3. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. Inner Duct: Minimum 0.028-inch (0.7-mm) perforated galvanized sheet steel having 3/32-inch- (2.4-mm-) diameter perforations, with overall open area of 23 percent.
- D. Interstitial Insulation: Fibrous-glass liner complying with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
  1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.039 W/m x K) at 75 deg F (24 deg C) mean temperature.
  2. Install spacers that position the inner duct at uniform distance from outer duct without compressing insulation.
  3. Coat insulation with antimicrobial coating.
  4. Cover insulation with polyester film complying with UL 181, Class 1.
- E. Interstitial Insulation: Flexible elastomeric duct liner complying with ASTM C 534, Type II for sheet materials, and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
  1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.25 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.034 W/m x K) at 75 deg F (24 deg C) mean temperature.

## 2.5 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
  1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90 (Z275).
  2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.

- C. PVC-Coated, Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
  - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90 (Z275).
  - 2. Minimum Thickness for Factory-Applied PVC Coating: 4 mils (0.10 mm) thick on sheet metal surface of ducts and fittings exposed to corrosive conditions, and minimum 1 mil (0.025 mm) thick on opposite surface.
  - 3. Coating Materials: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for use on ducts listed and labeled by an NRTL for compliance with UL 181, Class 1.
- D. Carbon-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, with oiled, matte finish for exposed ducts.
- E. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304 or 316, as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article; cold rolled, annealed, sheet. Exposed surface finish shall be No. 2B, No. 2D, No. 3, or No. 4 as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article.
- F. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M) Alloy 3003, H14 temper; with mill finish for concealed ducts, and standard, one-side bright finish for duct surfaces exposed to view.
- G. Factory- or Shop-Applied Antimicrobial Coating:
  - 1. Apply to the surface of sheet metal that will form the interior surface of the duct. An untreated clear coating shall be applied to the exterior surface.
  - 2. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
  - 3. Coating containing the antimicrobial compound shall have a hardness of 2H, minimum, when tested according to ASTM D 3363.
  - 4. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
  - 5. Shop-Applied Coating Color: Black.
  - 6. Antimicrobial coating on sheet metal is not required for duct containing liner treated with antimicrobial coating.
- H. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
  - 1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.
- I. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch (6-mm) minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches (900 mm) or less; 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches (900 mm).

## 2.6 DUCT LINER

- A. Flexible Elastomeric Duct Liner: Preformed, cellular, closed-cell, sheet materials complying with ASTM C 534, Type II, Grade 1; and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA Inc.
    - b. Armacell LLC.
    - c. Rubatex International, LLC
  2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
  3. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
    - a. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
    - b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- B. Insulation Pins and Washers:
1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch- (3.5-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) galvanized carbon-steel washer.
  2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick galvanized steel; with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.
- C. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 7-11, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."
1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
  2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
  3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
  4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
  5. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.

6. Apply adhesive coating on longitudinal seams in ducts with air velocity of 2500 fpm (12.7 m/s).
7. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches (100 mm) from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches (300 mm) transversely; at 3 inches (75 mm) from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches (450 mm) longitudinally.
8. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:
  - a. Fan discharges.
  - b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.
  - c. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts where air velocities are higher than 2500 fpm (12.7 m/s) or where indicated.
9. Secure insulation between perforated sheet metal inner duct of same thickness as specified for outer shell. Use mechanical fasteners that maintain inner duct at uniform distance from outer shell without compressing insulation.
  - a. Sheet Metal Inner Duct Perforations: 3/32-inch (2.4-mm) diameter, with an overall open area of 23 percent.
10. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.

## 2.7 SEALANT AND GASKETS

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- B. Two-Part Tape Sealing System:
  1. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.
  2. Tape Width: 4 inches (102 mm).
  3. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.
  4. Water resistant.
  5. Mold and mildew resistant.
  6. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa), positive and negative.
  7. Service: Indoor and outdoor.
  8. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 93 deg C).
  9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum.
  10. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

11. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

C. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

1. Application Method: Brush on.
2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
4. Water resistant.
5. Mold and mildew resistant.
6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa), positive and negative.
8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

D. Solvent-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

1. Application Method: Brush on.
2. Base: Synthetic rubber resin.
3. Solvent: Toluene and heptane.
4. Solids Content: Minimum 60 percent.
5. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 60.
6. Water resistant.
7. Mold and mildew resistant.
8. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
9. VOC: Maximum 395 g/L.
10. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
11. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa), positive or negative.
12. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
13. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

E. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.

1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
2. Type: S.
3. Grade: NS.
4. Class: 25.
5. Use: O.
6. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile

Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

- F. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.
- G. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:
  - 1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg (0.14 L/s per sq. m at 250 Pa) and shall be rated for 10-inch wg (2500-Pa) static-pressure class, positive or negative.
  - 2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
  - 3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

## 2.8 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.
- B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.
- C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1 (Table 5-1M), "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.
- E. Steel Cables for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A 492.
- F. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.
- G. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- H. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
  - 1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
  - 2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
  - 3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

## 2.9 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
  2. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  3. Hilti Corp.
  4. Kinetics Noise Control.
  5. Loos & Co.; Cableware Division.
  6. Mason Industries.
  7. TOLCO; a brand of NIBCO INC.
  8. Unistrut Corporation; Tyco International, Ltd.
- B. **General Requirements for Restraint Components:** Rated strengths, features, and applications shall be as defined in reports by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
1. **Structural Safety Factor:** Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least four times the maximum seismic forces to which they will be subjected.
- C. **Channel Support System:** Shop- or field-fabricated support assembly made of slotted steel channels rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces and with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end. Include matching components and corrosion-resistant coating.
- D. **Restraint Cables:** ASTM A 603, galvanized-steel cables with end connections made of cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; and with an automatic-locking and clamping device or double-cable clips.
- E. **Hanger Rod Stiffener:** Reinforcing steel angle clamped to hanger rod.
- F. **Mechanical Anchor Bolts:** Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.



- B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install round ducts in maximum practical lengths.
- D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.
- E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- H. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch (25 mm), plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
- J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
- K. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.
- L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction," Appendix G, "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.
- C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
- D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.

- E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

### 3.3 ADDITIONAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS FOR COMMERCIAL KITCHEN HOOD EXHAUST DUCT

- A. Install commercial kitchen hood exhaust ducts without dips and traps that may hold grease, and sloped a minimum of 2 percent to drain grease back to the hood.
- B. Install fire-rated access panel assemblies at each change in direction and at maximum intervals of 12 feet (3.7 m) in horizontal ducts, and at every floor for vertical ducts, or as indicated on Drawings. Locate access panel on top or sides of duct a minimum of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) from bottom of duct.
- C. Do not penetrate fire-rated assemblies except as allowed by applicable building codes and authorities having jurisdiction.

### 3.4 DUCT SEALING

- A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- B. Seal ducts to the following seal classes according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":
  - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - 2. Outdoor, Supply-Air Ducts: Seal Class A.
  - 3. Outdoor, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
  - 4. Outdoor, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.
  - 5. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg (500 Pa) and Lower: Seal Class B.
  - 6. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg (500 Pa): Seal Class A.
  - 7. Unconditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
  - 8. Unconditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class B.
  - 9. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg (500 Pa) and Lower: Seal Class C.
  - 10. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg (500 Pa): Seal Class B.
  - 11. Conditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class B.
  - 12. Conditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.

### 3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."

- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
  - 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
  - 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
  - 3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
  - 4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
  - 5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1 (Table 5-1M), "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches (610 mm) of each elbow and within 48 inches (1200 mm) of each branch intersection.
- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet (5 m).
- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

### 3.6 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT-DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Install ducts with hangers and braces designed to support the duct and to restrain against seismic forces required by applicable building codes. Comply with SMACNA's "Seismic Restraint Manual: Guidelines for Mechanical Systems."
  - 1. Space lateral supports a maximum of 40 feet (12 m) o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of 80 feet (24 m) o.c.
  - 2. Brace a change of direction longer than 12 feet (3.7 m).
- B. Select seismic-restraint devices with capacities adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads.
- C. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.
- D. Install cable restraints on ducts that are suspended with vibration isolators.
- E. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

- F. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing and restraints to structure, to flanges of beams, to upper truss chords of bar joists, or to concrete members.
- G. Drilling for and Setting Anchors:
  - 1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcement or embedded items during drilling. Notify the Architect if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
  - 2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
  - 3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
  - 4. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
  - 5. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior applications and stainless-steel anchors for applications exposed to weather.

### 3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

### 3.8 PAINTING

- A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer.

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Leakage Tests:
  - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for each test.
  - 2. Test the following systems:
    - a. Ducts with a Pressure Class Higher Than 3-Inch wg (750 Pa): Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 25 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.

- b. Supply Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg (500 Pa) or Higher: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 50 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
  - c. Return Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg (500 Pa) or Higher: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 50 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
  - d. Exhaust Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg (500 Pa) or Higher: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 50 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
  - e. Outdoor Air Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg (500 Pa) or Higher: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 50 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
  - f. Ductwork systems associated with life safety systems.
  - g. Ductwork systems located in concealed spaces such as chases, soffits, or other ceiling systems that have restricted access.
3. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.
  4. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.
  5. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.
  6. Give seven days' advance notice for testing.
- C. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:
1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.
  2. Test sections of metal duct system, chosen randomly by Owner, for cleanliness according to "Vacuum Test" in NADCA ACR, "Assessment, Cleaning and Restoration of HVAC Systems."
    - a. Acceptable Cleanliness Level: Net weight of debris collected on the filter media shall not exceed 0.75 mg/100 sq. cm.
- D. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- 3.10 DUCT CLEANING
- A. Clean new and existing duct system(s) before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
  - B. Use service openings for entry and inspection.
    1. Create new openings and install access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure class if required for cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated or lined duct. Patch insulation and liner as recommended by duct liner manufacturer. Comply with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for access panels and doors.

2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
3. Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.

C. Particulate Collection and Odor Control:

1. When venting vacuuming system inside the building, use HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for 0.3-micron-size (or larger) particles.
2. When venting vacuuming system to outdoors, use filter to collect debris removed from HVAC system, and locate exhaust downwind and away from air intakes and other points of entry into building.

D. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:

1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
4. Coils and related components.
5. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.
6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
7. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems.

E. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:

1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.
3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts, duct liner, or duct accessories.
4. Clean fibrous-glass duct liner with HEPA vacuuming equipment; do not permit duct liner to get wet. Replace fibrous-glass duct liner that is damaged, deteriorated, or delaminated or that has friable material, mold, or fungus growth.
5. Clean coils and coil drain pans according to NADCA 1992. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
6. Provide drainage and cleanup for wash-down procedures.
7. Antimicrobial Agents and Coatings: Apply EPA-registered antimicrobial agents if fungus is present. Apply antimicrobial agents according to manufacturer's written instructions after removal of surface deposits and debris.

### 3.11 START UP

- A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

### 3.12 DUCT SCHEDULE

#### A. Supply Ducts:

##### 1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg (500 Pa).
- b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: C.
- c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 24.
- d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.

##### 2. Ducts Connected to Constant-Volume Air-Handling Units:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive 3-inch wg (750 Pa).
- b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B.
- c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
- d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.

##### 3. Ducts Connected to Variable-Air-Volume Air-Handling Units:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive 3-inch wg (750 Pa).
- b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B.
- c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
- d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.

##### 4. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive 3-inch wg (750 Pa).
- b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B.
- c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
- d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.

#### B. Return Ducts:

##### 1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 1-inch wg (250 Pa).
- b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: C.
- c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 24.
- d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.

##### 2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg (500 Pa).
- b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B.

- c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
  - 3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 3-inch wg (750 Pa).
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
- C. Exhaust Ducts:
  - 1. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 1 and 2) Air:
    - a. Pressure Class: Negative 3-inch wg (750 Pa).
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
  - 2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg (500 Pa).
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
  - 3. Ducts Connected to Commercial Kitchen Hoods: Comply with NFPA 96.
    - a. Exposed to View: Type 304, stainless-steel sheet, No. 4 finish.
    - b. Concealed: Type 304, stainless-steel sheet, No. 2D finish.
    - c. Welded seams and joints.
    - d. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 3-inch wg (750 Pa).
    - e. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: Welded seams, joints, and penetrations.
    - f. SMACNA Leakage Class: 3.
  - 4. Ducts Connected to Dishwasher Hoods:
    - a. Type 304, stainless-steel sheet.
    - b. Exposed to View: No. 4 finish.
    - c. Concealed: No. 2D finish.
    - d. Welded seams and flanged joints with watertight EPDM gaskets.
    - e. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg (500 Pa).
    - f. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: Welded seams, joints, and penetrations.
    - g. SMACNA Leakage Class: 3.
  - 5. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting Laboratory and Process (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 3 and 4) Air:
    - a. Type 316, stainless-steel sheet.



- 1) Exposed to View: No. 4 finish.
- 2) Concealed: No. 2B finish.
  
- b. PVC-coated, galvanized sheet steel with thicker coating on duct interior.
- c. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 4-inch wg (1000 Pa).
- d. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: Welded seams, joints, and penetrations.
- e. SMACNA Leakage Class: 3.
  
6. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
  - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 3-inch wg (750 Pa).
  - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
  - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
  - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
  
- D. Outdoor-Air (Not Filtered, Heated, or Cooled) Ducts:
  1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 1-inch wg (250 Pa).
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: C.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 24.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
  
  2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg (500 Pa).
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
  
  3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg (500 Pa).
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
  
- E. Intermediate Reinforcement:
  1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel or carbon steel coated with zinc-chromate primer.
  2. PVC-Coated Ducts:
    - a. Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
    - b. Not Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
  
  3. Stainless-Steel Ducts:
    - a. Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.

- b. Not Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
  - 4. Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum.
- F. Liner:
- 1. Supply Air Ducts: Flexible elastomeric 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
  - 2. Return Air Ducts: Flexible elastomeric, 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - 3. Exhaust Air Ducts: Flexible elastomeric, 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - 4. Supply Fan Plenums: Flexible elastomeric, 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
  - 5. Return- and Exhaust-Fan Plenums: Flexible elastomeric, 2 inches (51 mm) thick.
  - 6. Transfer Ducts: Flexible elastomeric, 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- G. Double-Wall Duct Interstitial Insulation:
- 1. Supply Air Ducts: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
  - 2. Return Air Ducts: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - 3. Exhaust Air Ducts: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- H. Elbow Configuration:
- 1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
    - a. Velocity 1000 fpm (5 m/s) or Lower:
      - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
      - 2) Mitered Type RE 4 without vanes.
    - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm (5 to 7.6 m/s):
      - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio.
      - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
      - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
    - c. Velocity 1500 fpm (7.6 m/s) or Higher:
      - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
      - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
      - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
  - 2. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."

- a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
  - b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
  - c. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
3. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."
- a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
    - 1) Velocity 1000 fpm (5 m/s) or Lower: 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and three segments for 90-degree elbow.
    - 2) Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm (5 to 7.6 m/s): 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and four segments for 90-degree elbow.
    - 3) Velocity 1500 fpm (7.6 m/s) or Higher: 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and five segments for 90-degree elbow.
    - 4) Radius-to Diameter Ratio: 1.5.
  - b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches (305 mm) and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
  - c. Round Elbows, 14 Inches (356 mm) and Larger in Diameter: Standing seam.
- I. Branch Configuration:
1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."
    - a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
    - b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Spin in.
  2. Round and Flat Oval: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
    - a. Velocity 1000 fpm (5 m/s) or Lower: 90-degree tap.
    - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm (5 to 7.6 m/s): Conical tap.
    - c. Velocity 1500 fpm (7.6 m/s) or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

END OF SECTION 233113



## SECTION 233300 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Backdraft and pressure relief dampers.
  - 2. Barometric relief dampers.
  - 3. Manual volume dampers.
  - 4. Control dampers.
  - 5. Fire dampers.
  - 6. Ceiling dampers.
  - 7. Smoke dampers.
  - 8. Combination fire and smoke dampers.
  - 9. Corridor dampers.
  - 10. Flange connectors.
  - 11. Turning vanes.
  - 12. Duct-mounted access doors.
  - 13. Flexible connectors.
  - 14. Flexible ducts.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
  - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90 (Z275).

2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.
- C. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304, and having a No. 2 finish for concealed ducts and No. 2 finish for exposed ducts.
- D. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, 1-side bright finish for exposed ducts.
- E. Extruded Aluminum: Comply with ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063, Temper T6.
- F. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.
- G. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch (6-mm) minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches (900 mm) or less; 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches (900 mm).

## 2.2 BACKDRAFT AND PRESSURE RELIEF DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  1. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  3. Nailor Industries Inc.
  4. Ruskin Company.
  5. Leader Industries.
- B. Description: Gravity balanced.
- C. Maximum Air Velocity: 2000 fpm (10 m/s).
- D. Maximum System Pressure: 2-inch wg (0.5 kPa).
- E. Frame: 0.063-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick extruded aluminum, with welded corners and mounting flange.
- F. Blades: Multiple single-piece blades, center-pivoted, maximum 6-inch (150-mm) width, 0.050-inch- (1.2-mm-) thick aluminum sheet with sealed edges.
- G. Blade Action: Parallel.
- H. Blade Seals: Neoprene, mechanically locked.
- I. Blade Axles:

1. Material: Aluminum.
  2. Diameter: 0.20 inch (5 mm).
- J. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
- K. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.
- L. Bearings: Steel ball or synthetic pivot bushings.
- M. Accessories:
1. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.
  2. Counterweights and spring-assist kits for vertical airflow installations.
  3. Electric actuators.
  4. Chain pulls.
  5. Screen Mounting: Front mounted in sleeve.
    - a. Sleeve Thickness: 20-gage (1.0-mm) minimum.
    - b. Sleeve Length: 6 inches (152 mm) minimum.
  6. Screen Mounting: Rear mounted.
  7. Screen Material: Aluminum.
  8. Screen Type: Insect.
  9. 90-degree stops.

### 2.3 BAROMETRIC RELIEF DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  3. Nailor Industries Inc.
  4. Ruskin Company.
  5. Leader Industries.
- B. Suitable for horizontal or vertical mounting.
- C. Maximum Air Velocity: 2000 fpm (10 m/s).
- D. Maximum System Pressure: 2-inch wg (0.5 kPa).
- E. Frame: 0.063-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick extruded aluminum, with welded corners and mounting flange.
- F. Blades:
1. Multiple, 0.050-inch- (1.2-mm-) thick aluminum sheet.
  2. Maximum Width: 6 inches (150 mm).

3. Action: Parallel.
4. Balance: Gravity.
5. Eccentrically pivoted.

G. Blade Seals: Neoprene.

H. Blade Axles: Nonferrous metal.

I. Tie Bars and Brackets:

1. Material: Aluminum.
2. Rattle free with 90-degree stop.

J. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.

K. Bearings: Bronze.

L. Accessories:

1. Flange on intake.
2. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressures.

## 2.4 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  - b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
  - c. METALAIRE, Inc.
  - d. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - e. Ruskin Company.
  - f. Leader Industries.
2. Standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream.
3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
4. Frames:
  - a. Hat-shaped, galvanized-steel channels, 0.064-inch (1.62-mm) minimum thickness.
  - b. Mitered and welded corners.
  - c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
5. Blades:
  - a. Multiple or single blade.
  - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.



- c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
    - d. Galvanized-steel, 0.064 inch (1.62 mm) thick.
  - 6. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
  - 7. Bearings:
    - a. Oil-impregnated bronze.
    - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg (750 Pa) or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
  - 8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
- B. Standard, Aluminum, Manual Volume Dampers:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
    - b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
    - c. METALAIRE, Inc.
    - d. Nailor Industries Inc.
    - e. Ruskin Company.
    - f. Leader Industries.
  - 2. Standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream.
  - 3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
  - 4. Frames: Hat-shaped, 0.10-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick, aluminum sheet channels; frames with flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
  - 5. Blades:
    - a. Multiple or single blade.
    - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
    - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
    - d. Roll-Formed Aluminum Blades: 0.10-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick aluminum sheet.
    - e. Extruded-Aluminum Blades: 0.050-inch- (1.2-mm-) thick extruded aluminum.
  - 6. Blade Axles: Nonferrous metal.
  - 7. Bearings:
    - a. Oil-impregnated bronze.
    - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg (750 Pa) or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
  - 8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.

C. Low-Leakage, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  - b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
  - c. METALAIRE, Inc.
  - d. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - e. Ruskin Company.
  - f. Leader Industries.
2. Low-leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.
3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
4. Frames:
  - a. Hat shaped.
  - b. Galvanized-steel channels, 0.064 inch (1.62 mm) thick.
  - c. Mitered and welded corners.
  - d. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
5. Blades:
  - a. Multiple or single blade.
  - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
  - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
  - d. Galvanized, roll-formed steel, 0.064 inch (1.62 mm) thick.
6. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
7. Bearings:
  - a. Oil-impregnated bronze.
  - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg (750 Pa) or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
8. Blade Seals: Neoprene.
9. Jamb Seals: Cambered stainless steel.
10. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
11. Accessories:
  - a. Include locking device to hold single-blade dampers in a fixed position without vibration.

D. Low-Leakage, Aluminum, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  - b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
  - c. METALAIRE, Inc.
  - d. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - e. Ruskin Company.
  - f. Leader Industries.
2. Low-leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.
  3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
  4. Frames: Hat-shaped, 0.10-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick, aluminum sheet channels; frames with flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
  5. Blades:
    - a. Multiple or single blade.
    - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
    - c. Roll-Formed Aluminum Blades: 0.10-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick aluminum sheet.
    - d. Extruded-Aluminum Blades: 0.050-inch- (1.2-mm-) thick extruded aluminum.
  6. Blade Axles: Nonferrous metal.
  7. Bearings:
    - a. Oil-impregnated bronze.
    - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg (750 Pa) or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
  8. Blade Seals: Neoprene.
  9. Jamb Seals: Cambered aluminum.
  10. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
  11. Accessories:
    - a. Include locking device to hold single-blade dampers in a fixed position without vibration.
- E. Jackshaft:
1. Size: 1-inch (25-mm) diameter.
  2. Material: Galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
  3. Length and Number of Mountings: As required to connect linkage of each damper in multiple-damper assembly.
- F. Damper Hardware:
1. Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle made of 3/32-inch- (2.4-mm-) thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch (19-mm) hexagon locking nut.
  2. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size.

3. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

## 2.5 CONTROL DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  1. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  2. Arrow United Industries; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  3. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  4. McGill AirFlow LLC.
  5. METALAIRE, Inc.
  6. Nailor Industries Inc.
  7. Ruskin Company.
  8. Leader Industries.
- B. Low-leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.
- C. Frames:
  1. Hat shaped.
  2. Galvanized-steel channels, 0.064 inch (1.62 mm) thick.
  3. Mitered and welded corners.
- D. Blades:
  1. Multiple blade with maximum blade width of 8 inches (200 mm).
  2. Opposed-blade design.
  3. Galvanized steel.
  4. 0.064 inch (1.62 mm) thick.
  5. Blade Edging: Closed-cell neoprene edging.
  6. Blade Edging: Inflatable seal blade edging, or replaceable rubber seals.
- E. Blade Axles: 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) diameter; galvanized steel; blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass; ends sealed against blade bearings.
  1. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 40 to plus 200 deg F (minus 40 to plus 93 deg C).
- F. Bearings:
  1. Oil-impregnated bronze.
  2. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg (750 Pa) or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
  3. Thrust bearings at each end of every blade.

## 2.6 FIRE DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Arrow United Industries; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  3. McGill AirFlow LLC.
  4. METALAIRE, Inc.
  5. Nailor Industries Inc.
  6. Ruskin Company.
  7. Leader Industries.
- B. Type: Dynamic; rated and labeled according to UL 555 by an NRTL.
- C. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg (1-kPa) static pressure class and minimum 2000-fpm (10-m/s) velocity.
- D. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 and 3 hours.
- E. Frame: Curtain type with blades outside airstream; fabricated with roll-formed, 0.034-inch- (0.85-mm-) thick galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.
- F. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, galvanized sheet steel.
1. Minimum Thickness: 0.052 or 0.138 inch (1.3 or 3.5 mm) thick, as indicated, and of length to suit application.
  2. Exception: Omit sleeve where damper-frame width permits direct attachment of perimeter mounting angles on each side of wall or floor; thickness of damper frame must comply with sleeve requirements.
- G. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.
- H. Blades: Roll-formed, interlocking, 0.034-inch- (0.85-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034-inch- (0.85-mm-) thick, galvanized-steel blade connectors.
- I. Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and stainless-steel closure spring.
- J. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 165 deg F (74 deg C) rated, fusible links.
- K. Heat-Responsive Device: Electric resettable link and switch package, factory installed, 165 deg F (74 deg C) and 212 deg F (100 deg C) rated.

## 2.7 CEILING DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. McGill AirFlow LLC.
2. METALAIRE, Inc.
3. Nailor Industries Inc.
4. Ruskin Company.
5. Leader Industries.

B. General Requirements:

1. Labeled according to UL 555C by an NRTL.
2. Comply with construction details for tested floor- and roof-ceiling assemblies as indicated in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory."

C. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, round or rectangular, style to suit ceiling construction.

D. Blades: Galvanized sheet steel with refractory insulation.

E. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 165 deg F (74 deg C) rated, fusible links.

F. Fire Rating: 3 hours.

## 2.8 SMOKE DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
2. Nailor Industries Inc.
3. Ruskin Company.
4. Leader Industries.

B. General Requirements: Label according to UL 555S by an NRTL.

C. Smoke Detector: Provide Integral, 120V, factory wired smoke detector at each smoke damper. Provide integral relay base with form "c" contacts for connection to the fire alarm system (wiring to fire alarm system is provided under other divisions.). Smoke detector shall be rated for the air velocity present at each unit. Power for the smoke detector shall be prewired as a single-point connection, with the damper motor. Provide remote alarm indicator for each smoke damper, per NFPA 72.

D. Frame: Curtain type with blades outside airstream; fabricated with roll-formed, 0.034-inch- (0.85-mm-) thick galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.

E. Blades: Roll-formed, horizontal, interlocking, 0.034-inch- (0.85-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034-inch- (0.85-mm-) thick, galvanized-steel blade connectors.

F. Leakage: Class I.

G. Rated pressure and velocity to exceed design airflow conditions.

- H. Mounting Sleeve: Factory-installed, 0.052-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel; length to suit wall or floor application with factory-furnished silicone caulking.
- I. Damper Motors: Modulating or two-position action.
- J. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  - 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
  - 2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 26 Sections.
  - 3. Permanent-Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Motors: With oil-immersed and sealed gear trains.
  - 4. Spring-Return Motors: Equip with an integral spiral-spring mechanism where indicated. Enclose entire spring mechanism in a removable housing designed for service or adjustments. Size for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf (17 N x m) and breakaway torque rating of 150 in. x lbf (17 N x m).
  - 5. Outdoor Motors and Motors in Outdoor-Air Intakes: Equip with O-ring gaskets designed to make motors weatherproof. Equip motors with internal heaters to permit normal operation at minus 40 deg F (minus 40 deg C).
  - 6. Nonspring-Return Motors: For dampers larger than 25 sq. ft. (2.3 sq. m), size motor for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf (17 N x m) and breakaway torque rating of 300 in. x lbf (34 N x m).
  - 7. Electrical Connection: 115 V, single phase, 60 Hz.
- K. Accessories:
  - 1. Auxiliary switches for fan control or position indication.
  - 2. Test and reset switches, damper mounted.

## 2.9 COMBINATION FIRE AND SMOKE DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  - 2. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - 3. Ruskin Company.
  - 4. Leader Industries.
- B. Type: Static and dynamic; rated and labeled according to UL 555 and UL 555S by an NRTL.
- C. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg (1-kPa) static pressure class and minimum 2000-fpm (10-m/s) velocity.
- D. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 and 3 hours.

- E. Frame: Curtain type with blades outside airstream; fabricated with roll-formed, 0.034-inch- (0.85-mm-) thick galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.
- F. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 165 deg F (74 deg C) rated, fusible links.
- G. Heat-Responsive Device: Electric resettable link and switch package, factory installed, rated.
- H. Smoke Detector: Provide Integral, 120V, factory wired smoke detector at each fire/smoke damper. Provide integral relay base with form "c" contacts for connection to the fire alarm system (wiring to fire alarm system is provided under other divisions.). Smoke detector shall be rated for the air velocity present at each unit. Power for the smoke detector shall be prewired as a single-point connection, with the damper motor.
- I. Blades: Roll-formed, horizontal, interlocking, 0.034-inch- (0.85-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034-inch- (0.85-mm-) thick, galvanized-steel blade connectors.
- J. Leakage: Class I.
- K. Rated pressure and velocity to exceed design airflow conditions.
- L. Mounting Sleeve: Factory-installed, 0.052-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel; length to suit wall or floor application with factory-furnished silicone calking.
- M. Master control panel for use in dynamic smoke-management systems.
- N. Damper Motors: Modulating or two-position action.
- O. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  - 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
  - 2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 26 Sections.
  - 3. Permanent-Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Motors: With oil-immersed and sealed gear trains.
  - 4. Spring-Return Motors: Equip with an integral spiral-spring mechanism where indicated. Enclose entire spring mechanism in a removable housing designed for service or adjustments. Size for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf (17 N x m) and breakaway torque rating of 150 in. x lbf (17 N x m).
  - 5. Outdoor Motors and Motors in Outdoor-Air Intakes: Equip with O-ring gaskets designed to make motors weatherproof. Equip motors with internal heaters to permit normal operation at minus 40 deg F (minus 40 deg C).
  - 6. Nonspring-Return Motors: For dampers larger than 25 sq. ft. (2.3 sq. m), size motor for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf (17 N x m) and breakaway torque rating of 300 in. x lbf (34 N x m).
  - 7. Electrical Connection: 115 V, single phase, 60 Hz.



P. Accessories:

1. Auxiliary switches for fan control or position indication.
2. Test and reset switches, damper mounted.

2.10 CORRIDOR DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Nailor Industries Inc.
2. Ruskin Company.
3. Leader Industries.

B. General Requirements: Label combination fire and smoke dampers according to UL 555 for 1-1/2-hour rating by an NRTL.

C. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 165 deg F (74 deg C) rated, fusible links.

D. Heat-Responsive Device: Electric resettable link and switch package, factory installed, rated.

E. Frame: Curtain type with blades outside airstream; fabricated with roll-formed, 0.034-inch- (0.85-mm-) thick galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.

F. Blades: Roll-formed, horizontal, interlocking, 0.034-inch- (0.85-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034-inch- (0.85-mm-) thick, galvanized-steel blade connectors.

G. Mounting Sleeve: Factory-installed, 0.052-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel; length to suit wall or floor application.

H. Damper Motors: Modulating or two-position action.

I. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 26 Sections.
3. Permanent-Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Motors: With oil-immersed and sealed gear trains.
4. Spring-Return Motors: Equip with an integral spiral-spring mechanism where indicated. Enclose entire spring mechanism in a removable housing designed for service or adjustments. Size for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf (17 N x m) and breakaway torque rating of 150 in. x lbf (17 N x m).

5. Outdoor Motors and Motors in Outdoor-Air Intakes: Equip with O-ring gaskets designed to make motors weatherproof. Equip motors with internal heaters to permit normal operation at minus 40 deg F (minus 40 deg C).
6. Nonspring-Return Motors: For dampers larger than 25 sq. ft. (2.3 sq. m), size motor for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf (17 N x m) and breakaway torque rating of 300 in. x lbf (34 N x m).
7. Electrical Connection: 115 V, single phase, 60 Hz.

## 2.11 FLANGE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  2. Nexus PDQ; Division of Shilco Holdings Inc.
  3. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Description: Add-on or roll-formed, factory-fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.
- C. Material: Galvanized steel.
- D. Gage and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

## 2.12 TURNING VANES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  2. Duro Dyne Inc.
  3. METALAIRE, Inc.
- B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
  1. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.
- C. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Nonmetal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of resin-bonded fiberglass with acrylic polymer coating; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
- D. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 4-3, "Vaness and Vane Runners," and 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

- E. Vane Construction: Single wall.
- F. Vane Construction: Single wall for ducts up to 48 inches (1200 mm) wide and double wall for larger dimensions.

## 2.13 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  - 2. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  - 3. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  - 4. McGill AirFlow LLC.
  - 5. Nailor Industries Inc.
- B. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 7-2 (7-2M), "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and 7-3, "Access Doors - Round Duct."
  - 1. Door:
    - a. Double wall, rectangular.
    - b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
    - c. Vision panel.
    - d. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inch (25-by-25-mm) butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
    - e. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
  - 2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
  - 3. Number of Hinges and Locks:
    - a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches (300 mm) Square: No hinges and two sash locks.
    - b. Access Doors up to 18 Inches (460 mm) Square: Two hinges and two sash locks.
    - c. Access Doors up to 24 by 48 Inches (600 by 1200 mm): Three hinges and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.
    - d. Access Doors Larger Than 24 by 48 Inches (600 by 1200 mm): Four hinges and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.
- C. Pressure Relief Access Door:
  - 1. Door and Frame Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
  - 2. Door: Double wall with insulation fill with metal thickness applicable for duct pressure class.
  - 3. Operation: Open outward for positive-pressure ducts and inward for negative-pressure ducts.

4. Factory set at 10-inch wg (2500 Pa).
5. Doors close when pressures are within set-point range.
6. Hinge: Continuous piano.
7. Latches: Cam.
8. Seal: Neoprene or foam rubber.
9. Insulation Fill: 1-inch- (25-mm-) thick, fibrous-glass or polystyrene-foam board.

#### 2.14 DUCT ACCESS PANEL ASSEMBLIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  2. Flame Gard, Inc.
  3. 3M.
- B. Labeled according to UL 1978 by an NRTL.
- C. Panel and Frame: Minimum thickness 0.0528-inch (1.3-mm) carbon steel.
- D. Fasteners: Carbon steel. Panel fasteners shall not penetrate duct wall.
- E. Gasket: Comply with NFPA 96; grease-tight, high-temperature ceramic fiber, rated for minimum 2000 deg F (1093 deg C).
- F. Minimum Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa), positive or negative.

#### 2.15 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  2. Duro Dyne Inc.
  3. Ventfabrics, Inc.
- B. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.
- C. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- D. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) wide attached to 2 strips of 2-3/4-inch- (70-mm-) wide, 0.028-inch- (0.7-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch- (0.8-mm-) thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.
- E. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.

1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd. (880 g/sq. m).
  2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch (84 N/mm) in the warp and 360 lbf/inch (63 N/mm) in the filling.
  3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 93 deg C).
- F. Outdoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with weatherproof, synthetic rubber resistant to UV rays and ozone.
1. Minimum Weight: 24 oz./sq. yd. (810 g/sq. m).
  2. Tensile Strength: 530 lbf/inch (93 N/mm) in the warp and 440 lbf/inch (77 N/mm) in the filling.
  3. Service Temperature: Minus 50 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 45 to plus 121 deg C).
- G. High-Temperature System, Flexible Connectors: Glass fabric coated with silicone rubber.
1. Minimum Weight: 16 oz./sq. yd. (542 g/sq. m).
  2. Tensile Strength: 285 lbf/inch (50 N/mm) in the warp and 185 lbf/inch (32 N/mm) in the filling.
  3. Service Temperature: Minus 67 to plus 500 deg F (Minus 55 to plus 260 deg C).
- H. High-Corrosive-Environment System, Flexible Connectors: Glass fabric with chemical-resistant coating.
1. Minimum Weight: 14 oz./sq. yd. (474 g/sq. m).
  2. Tensile Strength: 450 lbf/inch (79 N/mm) in the warp and 340 lbf/inch (60 N/mm) in the filling.
  3. Service Temperature: Minus 67 to plus 500 deg F (Minus 55 to plus 260 deg C).
- I. Thrust Limits: Combination coil spring and elastomeric insert with spring and insert in compression, and with a load stop. Include rod and angle-iron brackets for attaching to fan discharge and duct.
1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
  2. Outdoor Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
  6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene.
  7. Coil Spring: Factory set and field adjustable for a maximum of 1/4-inch (6-mm) movement at start and stop.

## 2.16 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
  2. McGill AirFlow LLC.
- B. Noninsulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, 2-ply vinyl film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire.
1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa) positive and 1.0-inch wg (250 Pa) negative.
  2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm (20 m/s).
  3. Temperature Range: Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F (Minus 23 to plus 71 deg C).
- C. Noninsulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, black polymer film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire.
1. Pressure Rating: 4-inch wg (1000 Pa) positive and 0.5-inch wg (125 Pa) negative.
  2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm (20 m/s).
  3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 175 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 79 deg C).
- D. Noninsulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, multiple layers of aluminum laminate supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire.
1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa) positive and 1.0-inch wg (250 Pa) negative.
  2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm (20 m/s).
  3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 210 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 99 deg C).
- E. Noninsulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, aluminum laminate and polyester film with latex adhesive supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire.
1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa) positive and 1.0-inch wg (250 Pa) negative.
  2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm (20 m/s).
  3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 210 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 99 deg C).
- F. Noninsulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 0, interlocking spiral of aluminum foil.
1. Pressure Rating: 8-inch wg (2280 Pa) positive or negative.
  2. Maximum Air Velocity: 5000 fpm (25 m/s).
  3. Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 435 deg F (Minus 73 to plus 224 deg C).
- G. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, 2-ply vinyl film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; aluminized vapor-barrier film.

1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa) positive and 1.0-inch wg (250 Pa) negative.
  2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm (20 m/s).
  3. Temperature Range: Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F (Minus 23 to plus 71 deg C).
  4. Insulation R-value: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
- H. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, black polymer film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; aluminized vapor-barrier film.
1. Pressure Rating: 4-inch wg (1000 Pa) positive and 0.5-inch wg (125 Pa) negative.
  2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm (20 m/s).
  3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 175 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 79 deg C).
  4. Insulation R-Value: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
- I. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, multiple layers of aluminum laminate supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; aluminized vapor-barrier film.
1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa) positive and 1.0-inch wg (250 Pa) negative.
  2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm (20 m/s).
  3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 210 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 99 deg C).
  4. Insulation R-value: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
- J. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, aluminum laminate and polyester film with latex adhesive supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; aluminized vapor-barrier film.
1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa) positive and 1.0-inch wg (250 Pa) negative.
  2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm (20 m/s).
  3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 210 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 99 deg C).
  4. Insulation R-value: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
- K. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 0, interlocking spiral of aluminum foil; fibrous-glass insulation; aluminized vapor-barrier film.
1. Pressure Rating: 8-inch wg (2280 Pa) positive or negative.
  2. Maximum Air Velocity: 5000 fpm (25 m/s).
  3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 121 deg C).
  4. Insulation R-value: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
- L. Flexible Duct Connectors:
1. Clamps: Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action in sizes 3 through 18 inches (75 through 460 mm), to suit duct size.
  2. Non-Clamp Connectors: Adhesive plus sheet metal screws.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Install dampers at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.
  - 1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
  - 2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.
- E. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- F. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.
- G. Install fire and smoke dampers according to UL listing.
- H. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:
  - 1. On both sides of duct coils.
  - 2. Upstream from duct filters.
  - 3. At outdoor-air intakes and mixed-air plenums.
  - 4. At drain pans and seals.
  - 5. Downstream from manual volume dampers, control dampers, backdraft dampers, and equipment.
  - 6. Adjacent to and close enough to fire or smoke dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be pressure relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.
  - 7. At each change in direction and at maximum 50-foot (15-m) spacing.
  - 8. Upstream from turning vanes.
  - 9. Upstream or downstream from duct silencers.
  - 10. Control devices requiring inspection.
  - 11. Elsewhere as indicated.
- I. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.



J. Access Door Sizes:

1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches (200 by 125 mm).
2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches (300 by 150 mm).
3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches (460 by 250 mm).
4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches (530 by 355 mm).
5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches (635 by 355 mm).
6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches (635 by 430 mm).

K. Label access doors according to Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.

L. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.

M. For fans developing static pressures of 5-inch wg (1250 Pa) and more, cover flexible connectors with loaded vinyl sheet held in place with metal straps.

N. Connect terminal units to supply ducts with maximum 12-inch (300-mm) lengths of flexible duct. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.

O. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to ducts with maximum 60-inch (1500-mm) lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.

P. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with adhesive plus sheet metal screws.

Q. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.

R. Install thrust limits at centerline of thrust, symmetrical on both sides of equipment. Attach thrust limits at centerline of thrust and adjust to a maximum of 1/4-inch (6-mm) movement during start and stop of fans.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.
3. Operate fire, smoke, and combination fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and verify that proper heat-response device is installed.
4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.

END OF SECTION 233300



## SECTION 233423 - HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Ceiling-mounted ventilators.
  - 2. Centrifugal ventilators - roof downblast.
  - 3. Centrifugal ventilators - roof upblast and sidewall.
  - 4. Sidewall propeller fans.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For unit hangars and supports indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - 1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design vibration isolation and seismic restraints, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Seismic Performance: HVAC power ventilators shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
2. Component Importance Factor: 1.0.

C. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. See Mechanical Schedule Drawings for Basis of Design

## 2.2 CEILING-MOUNTED VENTILATORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. Acme Engineering & Manufacturing Corp.
2. American Coolair Corporation.
3. Broan-NuTone LLC.
4. Carnes Company.
5. FloAire National.
6. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
7. JencoFan.
8. Loren Cook Company.
9. PennBarry.
10. S & P USA Ventilation Systems, LLC.

B. Housing: Steel, lined with acoustical insulation.

C. Fan Wheel: Centrifugal wheels directly mounted on motor shaft. Fan shrouds, motor, and fan wheel removable for service.

D. Back-draft damper: Integral.

E. Grille: Aluminum, louvered grille with flange on intake and thumbscrew or spring retainer attachment to fan housing.

F. Electrical Requirements: Junction box for electrical connection on housing and receptacle for motor plug-in.

G. Accessories:

1. Variable-Frequency Motor Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
2. Manual Starter Switch: Single-pole rocker switch assembly with cover and pilot light.
3. Time-Delay Switch: Assembly with single-pole rocker switch, timer, and cover plate.
4. Motion Sensor: Motion detector with adjustable shutoff timer.
5. Ceiling Radiation Damper: Fire-rated assembly with ceramic blanket, stainless steel springs, and fusible link.

6. Filter: Washable aluminum to fit between fan and grille.
7. Isolation: Rubber-in-shear vibration isolators.
8. Manufacturer's standard roof jack or wall cap, and transition fittings.

## 2.3 CENTRIFUGAL VENTILATORS - ROOF DOWNBLAST

- A. Fan Construction: See Mechanical Schedule Drawings for Basis of Design

## 2.4 CENTRIFUGAL VENTILATORS - ROOF UPBLAST OR SIDEWALL

- A. Fan Construction: See Mechanical Schedule Drawings for Basis of Design

## 2.5 SIDEWALL PROPELLER FANS

- A. Fan Construction: See Mechanical Schedule Drawings for Basis of Design

## 2.6 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

## 2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. AMCA Certification: Fans shall comply with AMCA 11 and bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.
- C. Fan Sound Ratings: Comply with AMCA 311, and label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal. Sound ratings shall comply with AMCA 301. The fans shall be tested according to AMCA 300.
- D. Fan Performance Ratings: Comply with AMCA 211 and label fans with AMCA-Certified Rating Seal. The fans shall be tested for air performance - flow rate, fan pressure, power, fan efficiency, air density, speed of rotation, and fan efficiency - according to AMCA 210/ASHRAE 51.
- E. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.
- F. UL Standards: Power ventilators shall comply with UL 705. Power ventilators for use for restaurant kitchen exhaust shall also comply with UL 762.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION OF HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

- A. Install power ventilators level and plumb.
- B. Equipment Mounting:
  - 1. Install power ventilators on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s).
  - 2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic-control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
  - 3. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- C. Secure roof-mounted fans to roof curbs with zinc-plated hardware. See Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs.
- D. Ceiling Units: Suspend units from structure; use steel wire or metal straps.
- E. Support suspended units from structure using threaded steel rods and spring hangers with vertical-limit stops having a static deflection of 1 inch (25 mm). Vibration-control devices are specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
- F. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.
- G. Label units according to requirements specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

### 3.2 DUCTWORK CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

### 3.3 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
  - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch (13 mm) high.

### 3.4 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring according to Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- D. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
  - 2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
  - 3. Verify that there is adequate maintenance and access space.
  - 4. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
  - 5. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.
  - 6. Adjust belt tension.
  - 7. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
  - 8. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
  - 9. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
  - 10. Disable automatic temperature-control operators, energize motor and adjust fan to indicated rpm, and measure and record motor voltage and amperage.
  - 11. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.
  - 12. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- E. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Controls and equipment will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- B. Adjust belt tension.

- C. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.
- D. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design airflow.
- E. Lubricate bearings.

### 3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain centrifugal fans.

END OF SECTION 233423



## SECTION 233713.23 - REGISTERS AND GRILLES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Adjustable blade face registers and grilles.
- 2. Fixed face registers and grilles.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to registers and grilles.
- 2. Section 233713.13 "Air Diffusers" for various types of air diffusers.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 REGISTERS

- A. Adjustable Blade Face Register:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. A-J Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  - b. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
  - c. Carnes Company.
  - d. Dayus Register & Grille Inc.
  - e. Hart & Cooley Inc.
  - f. Kees, Inc.
  - g. Krueger.

- h. METALAIRE, Inc.
  - i. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - j. Price Industries.
  - k. Titus.
  - l. Tuttle & Bailey.
2. Capacities and Characteristics: See Mechanical Schedule Drawings for Basis of Design

## 2.2 GRILLES

### A. Adjustable Blade Face Grille:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
- a. A-J Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  - b. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
  - c. Carnes Company.
  - d. Dayus Register & Grille Inc.
  - e. Hart & Cooley Inc.
  - f. Kees, Inc.
  - g. Krueger.
  - h. METALAIRE, Inc.
  - i. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - j. Price Industries.
  - k. Raymon-Donco.
  - l. Shoemaker Mfg. Co.
  - m. Titus.
  - n. Tuttle & Bailey.
2. Capacities and Characteristics: See Mechanical Schedule Drawings for Basis of Design

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install registers and grilles level and plumb.
- B. Outlets and Inlets Locations: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.

- C. Install registers and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

### 3.2 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, adjust registers and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 233713.23



## SECTION 238146 - WATER-SOURCE UNITARY HEAT PUMPS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes unitary heat pumps with refrigerant-to-water heat exchangers, refrigeration circuits, and refrigerant compressor(s).

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

#### 1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of water-source unitary heat pumps that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, refrigeration components.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Four years from date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. ASHRAE Compliance:
  - 1. ASHRAE 15.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

- C. Comply with safety requirements in UL 484 for assembly of free-delivery, water-source heat pumps.

## 2.2 WATER-SOURCE UNITARY HEAT PUMPS, 6 TONS (21 kW) AND SMALLER

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Trane
  - 2. Climate Master
  - 3. FHP Manufacturing
- B. Description: Packaged water-source unitary heat pump with temperature controls; factory assembled, piped, wired, tested, and rated according to ASHRAE/ARI/ISO-13256-1.
  - 1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Capacities and Characteristics: See Schedule Drawings for Basis of Design

## 2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Hose Kits: Tag hose kits to equipment designations.
  - 1. Minimum Working Pressure: 400 psig (2758 kPa).
  - 2. Operating Temperatures: From 33 to 211 deg F (1 to 100 deg C).
  - 3. Hose Length: 36 inches (900 mm).
  - 4. Minimum Hose Diameter: Equal to water-source unitary heat-pump piping connection.
  - 5. Hose Material: Braided stainless steel with adapters for pipe connections.
  - 6. Isolation Valves: Two-piece, bronze-body ball valves with stainless-steel ball and stem, standard-port threaded connections, and galvanized-steel lever handle. Valves shall be factory installed on supply and return connections of both load-side and source-side heat exchangers. If balancing valve is combination shutoff type with memory stop, the isolation valve may be omitted on the return.
  - 7. Strainer: Y-pattern with blowdown valve in supply connections of both load and source side of heat exchangers.
  - 8. Balancing Valves: Mount in return connection. Include meter ports to allow flow measurement with differential pressure gage.
    - a. Automatic balancing valve, factory set to operate within 10 percent of design flow rate over a pressure range of 2 to 80 psig (13.8 to 552 kPa).
  - 9. Water-Regulating Valve Assemblies: A direct acting valve regulates discharge pressure during the cooling cycle, and a reverse acting valve regulates the

suction pressure during the heating cycle. Valves shall close when heat-pump compressor is not running.

10. Motorized Water Valve: Stop water flow through the unit when compressor is off. Slow-acting, 24-V dc valve with threaded connections is installed between isolation valves and heat exchanger.

B. Pump Module:

1. Minimum 1/6-hp, 120-V, single-phase pump, rated for at least 16 gpm (1 L/s) at 20 feet of head (59 kPa).
2. Include pump module hose kit with thread to barb fittings, hose, and hose clamps.
3. Three-way brass shut-off/flushing/purging valve.
4. Include controls to operate pump as required to maintain room temperature and ventilation set points.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Suspend water-source, unitary heat pumps from structure with all-thread hanger rods and spring hangers. Hanger rods and attachments to structure are specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment." Vibration hangers are specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
- B. Install wall-mounting thermostats and switch controls in electrical outlet boxes at heights to match lighting controls or as required in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."
- C. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties. Specific connection requirements are as follows:
  1. Connect supply and return hydronic piping to heat pump with hose kits.
- D. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer but not specified to be factory mounted.
- E. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow space for service and maintenance.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following field tests and inspections:
  1. After installing water to water heat pumps and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units for compliance with requirements.
  2. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.
  3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.

4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Heat pumps will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 238146



**APPENDIX**





# Fire Sprinkler System Specification Sheet

(Per §40-10-250)



### Project Data

**Project name:** South Carolina Educational Lottery 4<sup>th</sup> Floor Upfit

<b>Location in South Carolina:</b>	Address (street # & street name): 1333 Main St.	State project: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No
	City: Columbia	County: Richland
		State project #:

### Water Supply Information

(flow test data must be less than 1 year old per §40-10-250(A)(1))

Date test conducted: 08.14.20	Static pressure (psi): NA	Residual pressure (psi): NA	Flow (gpm): NA
<b>Distances of test gauges relative to the base of the riser:</b>		Horizontal (ft): NA	Vertical (elevation difference in ft): NA
<b>Source of water supply:</b>	<input type="checkbox"/> Municipal dead-end <input type="checkbox"/> Municipal circulation <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Other: Fire Pump (Attached Test Results)		Pipe Size (in.): NA
<b>Test data by/from:</b>	Name: Rickey Pierce		Title: Technician
	Organization: National Safety Corporation, LLP		Telephone #: 1-855-463-7669
<b>Fire pump:</b>	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No	Pump Capacity (gpm): 754	Churn Pressure (psi): 145
	<input type="checkbox"/> New <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Existing	Rated Pressure (psi): 116	Pressure @ 150% flow (psi): 82
<b>On-site storage tank:</b>	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> New <input type="checkbox"/> Existing	Tank capacity (gallons):

### NFPA Hazard Classification

(attach continuation page when necessary)

Area #	Class or Code Reference	Description of Hazard Protected (commodity description, storage height, and arrangement as applicable.)
1	Light Hazard	Print Room.

### Design Parameters

(attach continuation page when necessary)

Area #	System Type	Density (gpm/ft <sup>2</sup> ) / Area (ft <sup>2</sup> ) or Other (reference code section)	Inside Hose (gpm)	Outs de Hose (gpm)
1	Wet	.10/1500	0	100

**Seismic Design Data:** S<sub>s</sub> = 0.347

### Codes and Standards

(attach continuation page when necessary)

**Applicable Codes, Standards & Editions** (i.e. "2006 IBC", "2007 NFPA 13", etc.) **for the Scope of Work on the Sprinkler System**  
 2018 IBC, 2018 IFC, NFPA 13-2016

Scope of work (such as sprinkler system A.G. from 1'-0" A.F.F., U.G. from tap to 5'-0" outside, etc.) and notes (attach continuation page when necessary):  
 The project scope of work includes the relocation of flexible drops, arm-overs for flexible drops where applicable and branch lines for Print Room 411.

### Specifier's Information

Name: Wesley G. Brown, P.E.	
Engineering services provided through a firm: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	
Firm name: SSOE   Stevens & Wilkinson	
Address: Post Office Drawer 7	
City: Columbia	
State: SC	Zip: 29202
Phone #: 803-576-5360	Fax #: 803-254-6209
E-mail: wbrown@ssoe.com	



Revision No.:   0  

Page   1   of   1  

Signature: Wesley G. Brown

Date: 08/6/21



# Statement of Special Inspections

Project: 4<sup>th</sup> Floor Upfit

Location: Columbia, SC

Owner: South Carolina Educational Lottery

Design Professional in Responsible Charge:

This *Statement of Special Inspections* is submitted as a condition for permit issuance in accordance with the Special Inspection and Structural Testing requirements of the Building Code. It includes a schedule of Special Inspection services applicable to this project as well as the name of the Special Inspection Coordinator and the identity of other approved agencies to be retained for conducting these inspections and tests. This *Statement of Special Inspections* encompass the following disciplines:

- Structural       HVAC/Plumbing/Fire Protection  
 Architectural       Other: \_\_\_\_\_

The Special Inspection Coordinator shall keep records of all inspections and shall furnish inspection reports to the Building Official and the Registered Design Professional in Responsible Charge. Discovered discrepancies shall be brought to the immediate attention of the Contractor for correction. If such discrepancies are not corrected, the discrepancies shall be brought to the attention of the Building Official and the Registered Design Professional in Responsible Charge. The Special Inspection program does not relieve the Contractor of his or her responsibilities.

Interim reports shall be submitted to the Building Official and the Registered Design Professional in Responsible Charge.

A *Final Report of Special Inspections* documenting completion of all required Special Inspections, testing and correction of any discrepancies noted in the inspections shall be submitted prior to issuance of a Certificate of Use and Occupancy.

Job site safety and means and methods of construction are solely the responsibility of the Contractor.

Interim Report Frequency: Bi-Weekly

or  per attached schedule.

Prepared by:

Wesley G. Brown, PE  
(type or print name)



Wesley G. Brown  
Signature

08.06.21  
Date

Owner's Authorization:

Building Official's Acceptance:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

# Schedule of Inspection and Testing Agencies

This Statement of Special Inspections / Quality Assurance Plan includes the following building systems:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Soils and Foundations     | <input type="checkbox"/> Spray Fire Resistant Material            |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Cast-in-Place Concrete    | <input type="checkbox"/> Wood Construction                        |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Precast Concrete          | <input type="checkbox"/> Exterior Insulation and Finish System    |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Masonry                   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HVAC/Plumbing/Fire Protection |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Structural Steel          | <input type="checkbox"/> Architectural Systems                    |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Cold-Formed Steel Framing | <input type="checkbox"/> Smoke Control                            |

Special Inspection Agencies	Firm	Address, Telephone, e-mail
1. Special Inspection Coordinator	<i>To Be Determined</i>	
2. Inspector		
3. Inspector		
4. Testing Agency		
5. Testing Agency		
6. Other		

Note: The inspectors and testing agencies shall be engaged by the Owner or the Owner's Agent, and not by the Contractor or Subcontractor whose work is to be inspected or tested. Any conflict of interest must be disclosed to the Building Official, prior to commencing work.

# Qualifications of Inspectors and Testing Technicians

The qualifications of all personnel performing Special Inspection and testing activities are subject to the approval of the Building Official. The credentials of all Inspectors and testing technicians shall be provided if requested.

## Key for Minimum Qualifications of Inspection Agents:

When the Registered Design Professional in Responsible Charge deems it appropriate that the individual performing a stipulated test or inspection have a specific certification or license as indicated below, such designation shall appear below the *Agency Number* on the Schedule.

PE/SE	Structural Engineer – a licensed SE or PE specializing in the design of building structures
PE/GE	Geotechnical Engineer – a licensed PE specializing in soil mechanics and foundations
EIT	Engineer-In-Training – a graduate engineer who has passed the Fundamentals of Engineering examination

### American Concrete Institute (ACI) Certification

ACI-CFTT	Concrete Field Testing Technician – Grade 1
ACI-CCI	Concrete Construction Inspector
ACI-LTT	Laboratory Testing Technician – Grade 1&2
ACI-STT	Strength Testing Technician

### American Welding Society (AWS) Certification

AWS-CWI	Certified Welding Inspector
AWS/AISC-SSI	Certified Structural Steel Inspector

### American Society of Non-Destructive Testing (ASNT) Certification

ASNT	Non-Destructive Testing Technician – Level II or III.
------	---

### International Code Council (ICC) Certification

ICC-SMSI	Structural Masonry Special Inspector
ICC-SWSI	Structural Steel and Welding Special Inspector
ICC-SFSI	Spray-Applied Fireproofing Special Inspector
ICC-PCSI	Prestressed Concrete Special Inspector
ICC-RCSI	Reinforced Concrete Special Inspector

### National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies (NICET)

NICET-CT	Concrete Technician – Levels I, II, III & IV
NICET-ST	Soils Technician - Levels I, II, III & IV
NICET-GET	Geotechnical Engineering Technician - Levels I, II, III & IV

### Exterior Design Institute (EDI) Certification

EDI-EIFS	EIFS Third Party Inspector
----------	----------------------------

### Other

---

# Mechanical & Electrical Systems

Item	Agency # (Qualif.)	Scope
1. Smoke Control		
2. HVAC/Plumbing		<i>Periodic special inspection of mechanical and plumbing components in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F shall be per IBC Section 1705.12.6.</i>
3. Electrical System		
4. Fire Protection		<i>Periodic special inspection is required for seismic restraint systems of fire sprinkler elements as per plans and specifications, NFPA 13 and ASCE 7-16.</i>